



**RANGE ROVER**  
**OWNER'S HANDBOOK**

Publication Part No. LRL 18 02 61 191



## Introduction

### CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 WARNING

First Warning Statement:

#### **WARNING**

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer, and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

#### **WARNING**

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-road vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle).

### ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to read all of the owner literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

### IMPORTANT

*The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which may not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles, this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.*

**Images used in this publication are for illustrative purposes only and may not reflect exactly what is fitted to your vehicle.**

*The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If the vehicle is to be registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.*

## Introduction

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. The digital handbook can be viewed at: [www.ownerinfo.landrover.com](http://www.ownerinfo.landrover.com) and is updated with the latest available information.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment, at any time, without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

### SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK



The safety alert symbol precedes any safety message about a risk of personal injury. The symbol will also have one of the following signal words.

#### **DANGER**

**DANGER** indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.

#### **WARNING**

**WARNING** indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

#### **CAUTION**

**CAUTION** indicates a hazardous situation that, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

#### **NOTICE**

*NOTICE* indicates either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.



The recycling symbol identifies items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.



The disposal symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your retailer/authorized repairer or your local authority.



The personalization symbol identifies features that can be adjusted, disabled, or enabled by a retailer/authorized repairer.

© Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2018.

All rights reserved.

L



## Contents

Introduction.....	2	Hill Descent Control (HDC)....	200
Vehicle stability.....	7	Speed limiter.....	203
Reporting safety defects.....	8	Cruise control.....	207
Controls overview.....	9	Adaptive cruise control.....	209
Entering the vehicle.....	11	Collision avoidance.....	220
Exiting the vehicle.....	23	All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC).....	233
Front seats.....	28	Driving aids.....	238
Rear seats.....	32	4x4i.....	243
Head restraints.....	40	Touchscreen home.....	248
Convenience features.....	45	Touchscreen extra features.....	256
Steering wheel.....	47	Touchscreen settings.....	258
Seat belts.....	49	Media.....	260
Child safety.....	56	AM/FM radio.....	269
Air bags.....	65	HD radio™.....	272
Instrument panel.....	73	Satellite radio.....	274
Warning and information lamps.....	80	Portable media.....	278
Exterior lights.....	91	DVD player.....	289
Interior lights.....	96	Headphones.....	291
Wipers and washers.....	98	Rear seat screens.....	293
Mirrors.....	101	Climate and comfort.....	296
Garage door opener.....	103	Parking features.....	308
Windows.....	107	Cameras.....	319
Storage compartments.....	112	Phone.....	324
Load carrying.....	132	Bluetooth®.....	335
Towing.....	142	Navigation.....	336
Vehicle charging.....	151	Voice control.....	348
Vehicle preconditioning.....	158	InControl.....	350
My Electric Vehicle (EV).....	163	Web browser.....	361
Hybrid system.....	165	Connectivity.....	363
Starting the engine.....	169	Fuel and refueling.....	367
Auto stop/start.....	173	Maintenance.....	377
Transmission.....	176	Vehicle cleaning.....	387
Suspension.....	180	Fluid level checks.....	394
Brakes.....	188	Vehicle battery.....	404
Stability control.....	192	Fuses.....	411
Driving programs.....	195	Tires.....	422



## Contents

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).....	437
Tire repair system.....	441
Wheel changing.....	448
Vehicle recovery.....	458
After a collision.....	465
Vehicle labels.....	466
Technical specifications.....	469
Type approval.....	478
Index.....	479

## Vehicle stability

### VEHICLE STABILITY

#### WARNING

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

#### WARNING

Since this vehicle is designed to be operated off-road, it has a higher ground clearance and hence a higher center of gravity. Such a feature has been associated with an increased risk of vehicle rollover.

The vehicle is not designed for cornering at the same speed as conventional passenger cars any more than a low-slung sports car is designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover.

Another factor shown to significantly increase rollover risk is unauthorized vehicle modifications such as fitting incorrect specification tires, oversize tires, body lifting, incorrect springs/dampers, incorrect vehicle loading/trailer towing.

Many vehicle rollovers occur when a driver attempts to bring a vehicle back onto the road after some or all of the wheels drift onto the shoulder of the road, especially when the shoulder is unpaved. If you find yourself in such a situation, do not initiate any sharp or abrupt steering and/or braking maneuvers to re-enter the roadway. Instead, let the vehicle slow down as much as is safely possible before attempting to re-enter the roadway and keep your wheels as straight as possible while re-entering the roadway.

However, on-road crash data also indicates that driver behavior is a greater factor than a high center of gravity in determining a vehicle's overall rollover rate. The single most effective driver behavior that can reduce the risk of injury or death in all crashes including rollover is to ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SEAT BELT and to properly restrain all child passengers in the rear seat in an age and size appropriate child safety seat or belt positioning booster seat.

#### WARNING

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.



## Reporting safety defects

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (USA)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA)

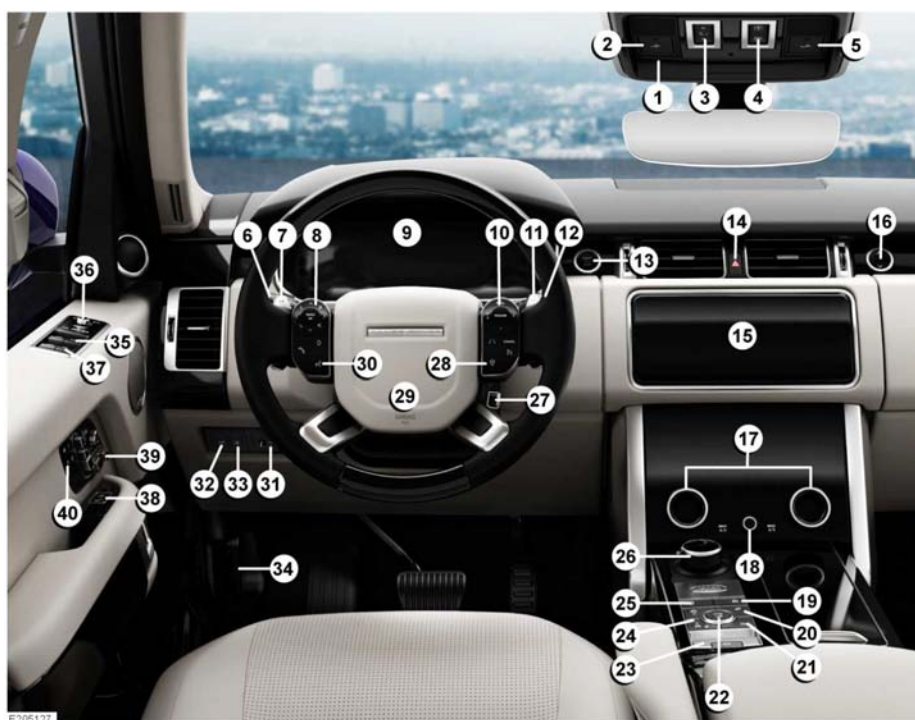
If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada in addition to notifying Jaguar Land Rover Canada ULC.

To contact Transport Canada, call their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510



## Controls overview

### DRIVER CONTROLS



1. Front interior lights (96).
2. Optimized roadside assistance call (350).
3. Panoramic roof (107).
4. Panoramic roof blind (107).
5. SOS emergency call (350).
6. Exterior lights and trip computer controls (91/77).
7. Paddle shift down (176).
8. Instrument panel menu controls (75).
9. Instrument panel (73).
10. Lane departure warning, cruise control, or adaptive cruise control (239/207/210).
11. Paddle shift up (176).
12. Wash/wipe control (98).
13. Engine START/STOP (169).
14. Hazard warning lights.
15. Touchscreen (248).
16. Glovebox release (112).
17. Climate controls, seat temperature and massage, and terrain response operation (296/305/306/306/195).
18. Media power button and volume control (260).
19. All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) or Electric Vehicle (EV) mode (233/165).

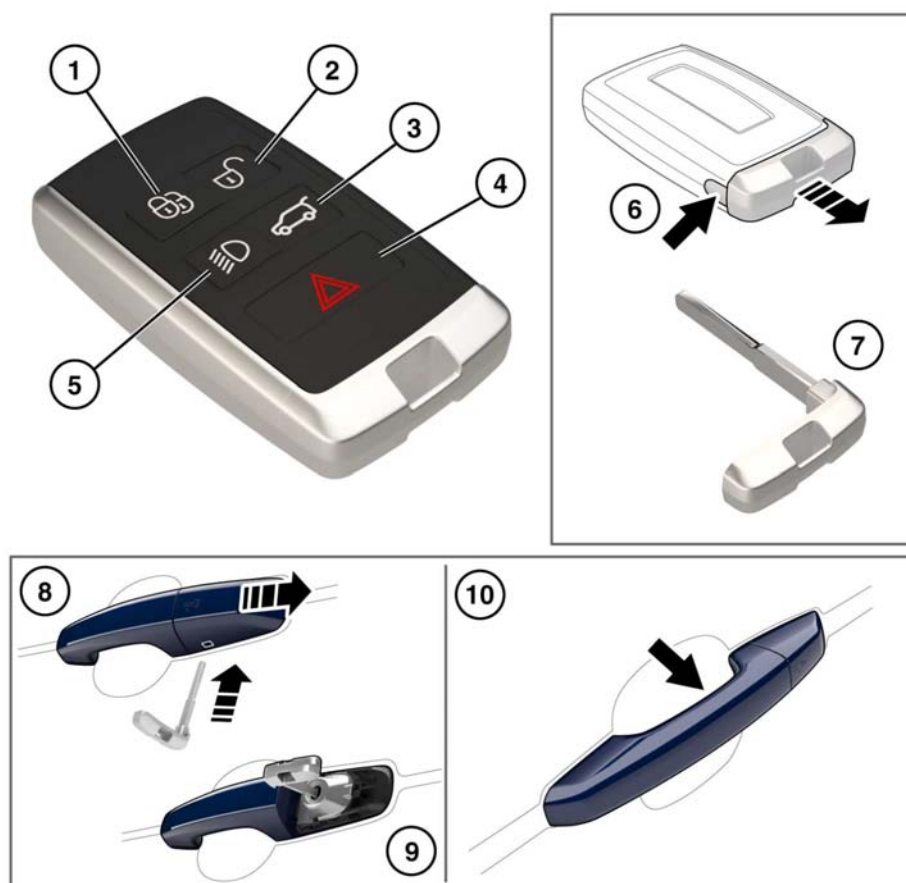


## Controls overview

- 20. Hill Descent Control (HDC) (200).
- 21. Low range transfer case (178).
- 22. Terrain response (195).
- 23. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) (189).
- 24. Electronic air suspension controls (180).
- 25. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) (192).
- 26. Gear selector (176).
- 27. Steering wheel adjuster (47).
- 28. Heated steering wheel (48).
- 29. Horn.
- 30. Phone and voice controls (330/348).
- 31. Interior illumination control: Rotate to adjust.
- 32. Tailgate release (16).
- 33. Fuel filler flap release (374).
- 34. Hood release lever (383).
- 35. Rear window isolator, child safety locks, and access height (107/56/180).
- 36. Mirror adjustment and power-folding mirrors (101).
- 37. Window controls (107).
- 38. Doors lock and unlock (24).
- 39. Driver's seat controls (28).
- 40. Driver's seat position memory (30).

## Entering the vehicle

### UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE





## Entering the vehicle

### **WARNING**

Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 9 in (22 cm) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device. In rare circumstances, interference may cause an implanted medical device to malfunction, potentially resulting in serious injury or death. For more information on the locations of the security system transmitters, see 476, **SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS**.

### **WARNING**

To prevent accidental or unauthorized operation, never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key is inside the vehicle. Doing so may potentially result in accident or unauthorized operation.

**Note:** The operational range of the smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

**Note:** If any door, or the luggage compartment, is unlocked 10 times within a short period, the locking latch is disabled for approximately 1 minute.

The vehicle is supplied with two smart keys. The smart keys act as remote controls for the locking and alarm system. They allow the vehicle to be locked, unlocked, and driven without the use of a conventional key. Each smart key also has an emergency key inserted in the smart key body. See 14, **PASSIVE ENTRY**, 23, **KEYLESS LOCKING** and 169, **STARTING THE ENGINE**.

1. Lock: Press to secure the vehicle. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they fold in. See 24, **LOCK CONFIRMATION**.
2. Unlock: Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm. The hazard warning lights flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm is disarmed. The interior lights illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they unfold. Press and hold to activate global opening. See 15, **GLOBAL OPENING**.
3. Luggage compartment: Press briefly to release, open or close the luggage compartment. If the vehicle is locked and armed, the security system remains active while the luggage compartment is open. When closing, if the vehicle is already locked and armed, the hazard warning lights flash after a few seconds to confirm that the alarm system is re-armed. See 16, **OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE**.

## Entering the vehicle

**Note:** Make sure the smart key does not remain in the vehicle before closing. It may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone. Also, if the vehicle is in an area of localized Radio Frequency (RF) interference, it may not be detected. If the smart key is not detected inside the vehicle, the vehicle locks. The vehicle does not automatically unlock. The vehicle now unlocks only with another valid smart key.

4. Panic alarm: Press and hold for 3 seconds (or press three times within 3 seconds) to activate the horn and the hazard lights. Once active for more than 5 seconds, the alarm can be canceled. Press the button and hold for 3 seconds (or press three times within 3 seconds). The panic alarm also cancels if a valid smart key is present when the **START/STOP** button is pressed.
5. Headlights: When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the approach illumination. Press again to switch approach illumination off. The approach illumination preset delay period is 30 seconds. This delay period can be configured to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 240 seconds. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
6. Emergency key blade access: Push the release button and pull to withdraw the key blade.
7. Emergency key blade.

8. Door lock cover: If the smart key fails to open the vehicle, insert the key blade into the slot at the base of the driver's door lock cover. Apply slight downward pressure to the top of the cover and gently lever the key blade upwards. Carefully rotate the door lock cover upwards, to lever the cover off the retaining lugs.
9. Door lock: Insert the key blade into the exposed lock and turn to operate the lock. The alarm sounds until the smart key is positioned correctly to disarm the alarm. See **170, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

**Note:** When replacing the door lock cover, locate the top retaining lugs first. Press down and inwards to locate the single bottom lug. The lug clicks into the locked position. Check the security of the cover. An insecure cover is likely to fall off while the vehicle is moving.

10. Keyless entry and exit: Exterior door handles have separate unlock and lock sensors. The unlock sensor is located on the inner surface of the handle.

**Note:** Notify your retailer/authorized repairer immediately if a smart key is lost or stolen. A replacement smart key can be obtained only from a retailer/authorized repairer. The retailer/authorized repairer will require proof of identification and ownership.

### SINGLE - AND MULTI-POINT ENTRY

To unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm system, press the smart key's unlock button. The vehicle unlocks in one of two ways:



## Entering the vehicle

1. Single-point entry: Unlocks the driver's door only. A second press is required to unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.
2. Multi-point entry: Unlocks all of the doors and the tailgate on the first press.

To change from single- to multi-point entry, or vice versa, press the smart key's lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm the change.

The feature may also be set via the **Vehicle settings** menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

**Note:** If an audible warning sounds when the vehicle is unlocked, there may be a fault with the alarm sensors. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.

### PASSIVE ENTRY

Passive entry allows the vehicle to be opened if a smart key is within 39 in (1 m) of the door handle or the exterior trunk release button.

**Note:** The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting passive entry, passive locking or push button starting.

**Note:** The smart key needs only to be on the driver's person, or in a non-metallic bag or briefcase. It does not need to be exposed or handled.

The passive entry sensor is located on the inner surface of the door handle. Grip and pull the door handle to open the door. The vehicle unlocks, the alarm system disarms, and the hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm unlocking. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they fold out.

**Note:** When single-point entry is the current security setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all of the doors unlock.

After entering the vehicle, and all of the doors are closed, the vehicle scans the interior for a valid smart key. If a valid smart key is not detected, the message center displays the message, **Smart Key Not Found**. If this situation occurs, use a valid smart key to carry out the keyless start backup procedure. See **170, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

### ACTIVITY KEY

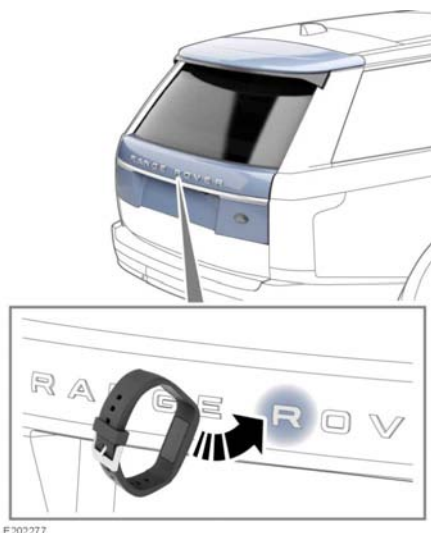
The activity key is a security wrist strap devised to support activities, e.g., swimming, when the smart key would be obtrusive or difficult to keep secure. The activity key is waterproof to a depth of 18 m and is shockproof.

While the activity key is worn on the wrist, the smart key can remain inside the vehicle. When the activity key is activated, the vehicle locks, the alarm system arms, and any smart key remaining inside the vehicle is disabled.

**Note:** Locking preference settings are retained when locking or unlocking the vehicle using the activity key, e.g., single or multi-point entry. See **13, SINGLE - AND MULTI-POINT ENTRY** and **15, GLOBAL OPENING**.

## Entering the vehicle

### Activity key locking



The ignition must be switched off. After exiting the vehicle and closing the last open door, or the tailgate, the antenna for the activity key activates for 30 seconds. The antenna is located behind the letter **R** for the Rover of the tailgate's Range Rover badge. The user has this time to place the activity key wrist strap against the letter **R**. When the security pairing is complete, the vehicle locks and arms the alarm system. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they fold in.

**Note:** If a locking attempt is unsuccessful, an audible alert is given. Check that all of the doors and the tailgate are closed, and that the ignition is switched off.

**Note:** If the tailgate of a locked vehicle is opened using the smart key or the gesture tailgate feature, an audible alert may sound when re-closing the tailgate. Should this occur, fully unlock the vehicle before attempting to close the tailgate.

**Note:** When the vehicle is locked with the activity key, any valid smart key remaining inside the vehicle is disabled. Any valid smart key outside the vehicle remains enabled.

### Activity key unlocking

When returning to the vehicle, press the tailgate release button to reactivate the antenna. The antenna activates for 30 seconds, allowing the user to place the activity key wrist strap against the letter **R**. When the antenna recognizes the activity key, the vehicle unlocks and disarms the alarm system. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm. If the power-fold mirrors are enabled, they unfold.

**Note:** When the vehicle is unlocked with the activity key, any valid smart key inside the vehicle re-enables.

**Note:** Only the activity key initially used to lock the vehicle can re-enable a disabled smart key(s).

### GLOBAL OPENING

To unlock the vehicle and open all of the windows simultaneously, press and hold the smart key's unlock button for 3 seconds.

To cancel global opening, press any of the buttons on the smart key.

**Note:** Global opening of windows can be enabled and disabled via the **Vehicle settings** menu.

## Entering the vehicle

### CONVENIENCE MODE

When the driver's door is opened using either the smart key or keyless entry, the vehicle's electrical system initiates convenience mode. The following systems become functional:

- Seat position memory.
- Seat and steering column adjustment.
- Interior and exterior lighting.
- Instrument panel.
- Auxiliary power sockets.

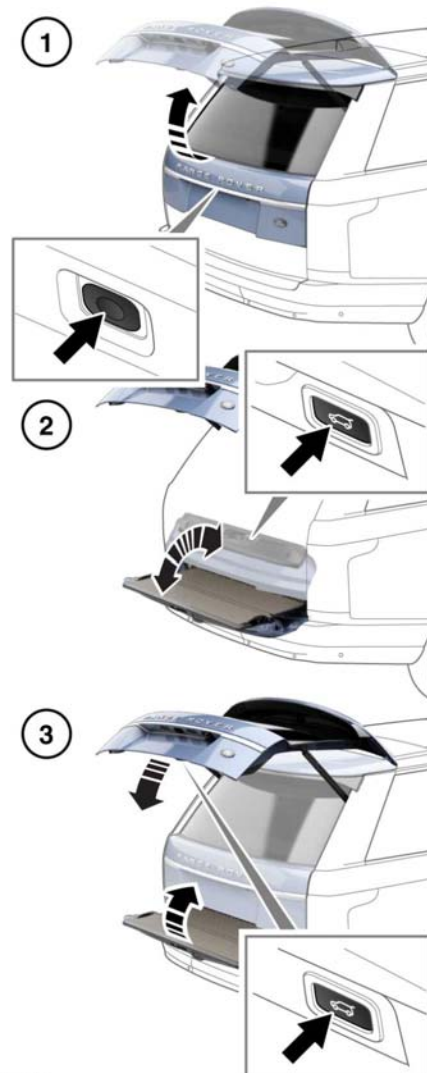
### SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Keep any implanted medical device at least 8.7 in (22 cm) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. Doing so helps avoid any possibility of interference between the system and device. Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, potentially causing serious injury or death.

For more information on the locations of the security system transmitters, see **476, SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS.**

### OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE



E140871



## Entering the vehicle

### **⚠ WARNING**

Before operating the tailgate, make sure that anyone in the vicinity does not have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Note that the soft-close action does not incorporate object detection. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system

### **⚠ WARNING**

While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.

### **NOTICE**

Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle, before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

### **NOTICE**

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles or racks before operating the tailgate. Cycles and/or racks may cause interference in the operation of the tailgate.

1. Upper tailgate open or close: Press to open, stop, reverse direction or close the upper tailgate.
2. Lower tailgate open or close: The button is visible only when the upper tailgate is open. Press to open, stop, reverse direction, or close the lower tailgate.
3. Tailgate close: Press to close both tailgates.

**Note:** The external release button operates if all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park (P) position. The external tailgate release button operates differently when the gear selector is in the Neutral (N) position. Operation begins only if all of the doors are unlocked, and the ignition is in convenience mode or switched off. The button does not operate if the gear selector is in any other position. See **16, CONVENIENCE MODE**.

The powered upper tailgate can also be opened or closed using the following methods:

- The interior tailgate release button. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
- The smart key's tailgate release button. See **11, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

After the tailgate has opened to its set height, it can be manually raised or lowered. If the tailgate fails to open or close correctly, close it manually and then press the tailgate release switch again.

As the closing tailgate approaches the closed position, it soft-closes to the fully closed position. If the vehicle was previously locked, the alarm re-arms. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm the alarm status. An audible confirmation may also be given.

**Note:** If a tailgate switch is pressed while the tailgate is opening or closing, all movement stops. However, if a button is pressed during the soft-close stage, the request is ignored.



## Entering the vehicle

Object detection while opening: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate opening, tailgate movement stops. Remove any obstructions and press the tailgate button again to open.

Object detection while closing: If an object is detected that would interfere with a tailgate closing. The tailgate movement stops and then reverses to the fully open position, if able to do so. An audible warning is given to indicate a mislock. Remove any obstructions and if the tailgate is open, press the tailgate button again to close the tailgate. If the tailgate is not open, press a tailgate release switch to open the tailgate and remove any obstructions. Once the obstructions have been removed, press the tailgate close button to close the tailgate.

**Note:** If a valid smart key cannot be detected within 39 in (1 m) of the rear of the vehicle, the tailgate will not power close. An audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock.

**Note:** If the tailgate is closed manually, the vehicle searches for a valid smart key. If no smart key is detected within 39 in (1 m) of the rear of the vehicle, or a smart key remains inside the vehicle, an audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock. The tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.

**Note:** If the smart key remains inside the vehicle when the vehicle is locked and the alarm is set, a warning is given. The warning indicates a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds. The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example a smartphone or a laptop.

### TAILGATE OPENING HEIGHT

It is possible to set the maximum height to which a powered upper tailgate will open. This is useful in parking areas with very low roofs, or just for ease of use.

1. Open the upper tailgate to the position you want to set as the maximum height. Press either upper tailgate mounted button to stop movement, or position the upper tailgate manually.
2. Make sure the upper tailgate is stationary for at least 3 seconds.
3. To set the opening height: Press and hold the tailgate close button, mounted on the upper tailgate, until you hear a chime.
4. Press and release the tailgate close button to close the tailgate. Open the tailgate again to check the upper tailgate opens to programmed height. See **16, OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE**.

**Note:** If, after performing part 3 of the process, the upper, or upper and lower tailgates close automatically, the required height has not been set. Repeat the process making sure that all of the steps are adhered to.

## Entering the vehicle

To reset the maximum opening height to full, repeat the process. Manually move the upper tailgate to the fully open position before pressing and holding the tailgate close button.

The powered tailgate may lose its position memory if there are multiple object detections or if the battery voltage is low. Powered operation may be inhibited.

To reset maximum tailgate opening height:

1. Manually close the tailgate.
2. Press a tailgate release button.
3. Allow the tailgate to power fully open or to the previously set position.
4. Press and release the tailgate close button.
5. Allow the tailgate to power close fully.

The tailgate's programmed position memory will now be restored.

### GESTURE TAILGATE

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Make sure that the standing area is stable and not slippery before performing the kick movement. Slipping may cause serious injuries or death.

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Do not make contact with the vehicle's exhaust. The vehicle's exhaust may be hot and can cause injury.

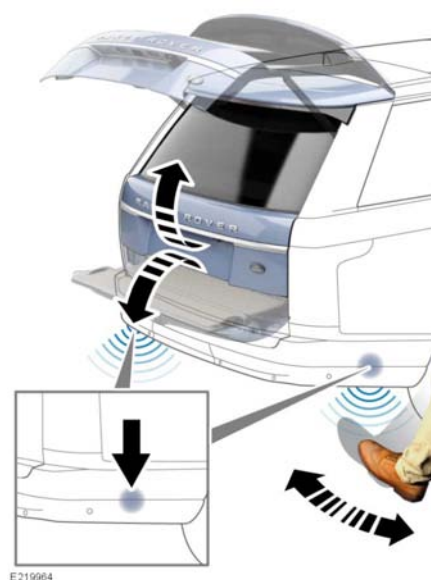
#### NOTICE

Make sure that there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the tailgate if a bicycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any bicycles or racks before operating the tailgate. Cycles and/or racks may cause interference in the operation of the tailgate.

Sensors are positioned within the outer parts of the rear bumper. The sensors recognize movement of a foot below the bumper level and allow automatic opening or closing of the powered tailgate.





## Entering the vehicle

To operate the gesture tailgate, approach the vehicle, and perform a smooth kick and return motion. The kick should last between 1 and 2 seconds and takes place within one of the vehicle's two sensor areas, as illustrated. When a valid kick movement is recognized by the vehicle, the turn signals flash and the tailgate operates.

**Note:** The gesture action is a smooth kick and return motion, not a swipe motion.

**Note:** If the ignition is switched on, the tailgate operates but the turn signals do not flash.

**Note:** A valid smart key must be within 47 in (1.2 m) of the tailgate. The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example a smartphone. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting hands-free operation of the powered tailgate.

**Note:** Certain conditions may affect the performance of the sensors, and movement beneath the bumper may not be detected. If this should happen, use the interior tailgate button or the smart key's tailgate button. Check the operation of the gesture tailgate when the vehicle is in a new location. See **11, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE** and **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Unintentional opening: In exceptional circumstances, and if the smart key is within 47 in (1.2 m) of the tailgate, the powered tailgate may open unintentionally due to the following:

- Car washing or high pressure cleaning.
- Moving objects beneath the rear bumper sensors.
- While changing a rear road wheel.

- While fitting snow chains to the rear wheels.

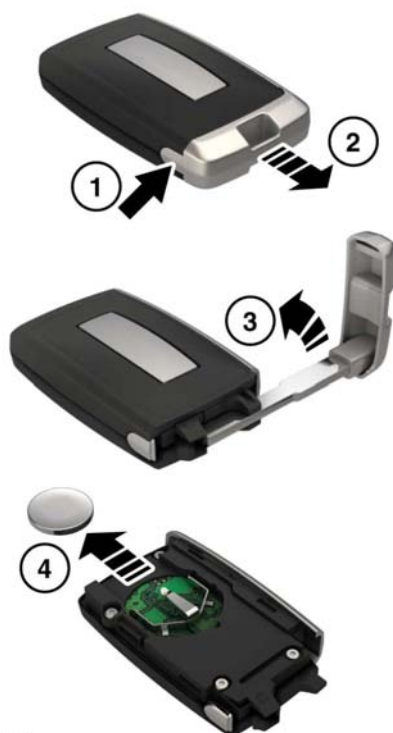
### DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Drive-away locking automatically locks all of the doors when the vehicle reaches a set speed. The drive-away locking feature can be enabled or disabled via **Vehicle settings** in the instrument panel menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

**Note:** After drive-away locking has taken place, press the door unlock or lock button to override the feature for the current trip. The unlock and lock buttons are located inside of the front doors. See **24, DOOR LOCKS AND HANDLES**.

## Entering the vehicle

### SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT



E206149

When the battery needs replacing, there is a significant decrease in the effective range and the instrument panel displays **Smart Key Battery Low**.

1. To remove the emergency key blade, push the button on the smart key.
2. Pull the emergency key blade in the direction of the arrow.
3. Use the emergency key blade to separate the smart key's body.

4. Fit a new and unused CR2032 type battery, available from a retailer/authorized repairer, with the positive (+) side upward.

**Note:** Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture or oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.

**Note:** If the low battery warning does not extinguish, it indicates that the replacement battery is not in a new and unused condition.

Refit the parts in reverse order. Make sure that the parts click securely into place.



**Battery disposal:** Batteries contain harmful substances and must be disposed of correctly. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorized repairer and/or the local authority.

### SMART KEY CARE

#### ⚠ WARNING

To prevent accidental or unauthorized operation, never leave the smart key unattended in the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key remains inside the vehicle. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.



## Entering the vehicle

### **WARNING**

When exiting the vehicle, always make sure of the following: Park (P) gear is selected. The engine is switched off. The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied. The smart key is removed from the vehicle. This is to protect the safety of those inside and outside the vehicle. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

**Note:** The Radio Frequency (RF) used by the smart key may be used by other devices, e.g., medical equipment. Use of such devices may prevent the smart key from operating correctly.

Do not expose the smart key to extremes of heat, dust or humidity. Do not allow the smart key to come into contact with fluids. Do not leave the smart key exposed to direct sunlight.

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label. Peel off the label and keep it safe, but not in the vehicle.

The operational range of the smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

### **NOTICE**

To avoid permanent damage to the smart keys, replace the batteries in all of the smart keys simultaneously when the **Smart Key Battery Low** message is displayed.

## Exiting the vehicle

### SINGLE LOCKING

#### **⚠ WARNING**

When exiting the vehicle, always make sure of the following: Park (P) gear is selected. The engine is switched off. The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied. The smart key is removed from the vehicle. This is to protect the safety of those inside and outside the vehicle.

#### **NOTICE**

No modifications or additions should be made to the security system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

**Note:** Always secure the vehicle when left unattended.

Press the lock button on the smart key, briefly, to lock the vehicle and arm the perimeter (exterior) alarm. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm.

Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from the outside. The doors may still be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle.

Once armed, the alarm activates if:

- The hood, tailgate or a door is opened.
- The engine **START/STOP** button is pressed without a valid smart key present.
- The vehicle's battery is disconnected.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm's siren.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

### KEYLESS LOCKING

**Note:** The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a laptop bag, or a games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, keyless locking, or push button starting.

**Note:** Loose coins, in the same pocket as the smart key, can act as a shield and may affect its detection.

**Note:** Keyless locking activates only if the smart key is detected outside the vehicle. If no smart key is present, locking does not occur.

**Note:** The vehicle does not lock automatically.



E174603

To operate keyless locking:

1. Lock sensor area: To lock the vehicle, only touch the lock sensor once, without grabbing the door handle. The hazard warning lights flash once to confirm locking.

**Note:** Do not grip the door handle while touching the sensor. Doing so prevents the vehicle from locking.

When using keyless locking, the vehicle does not lock when:

- Any door(s) is open.

## Exiting the vehicle

- The hood is open.
- The tailgate is not fully closed.
- The ignition is switched on.

No audible mislock error warning is given. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors, if enabled, do not fold in.

Make sure that the ignition is switched off, and that all of the doors, the hood and the tailgate are closed properly. Lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

### LOCK CONFIRMATION

If uncertain whether the vehicle is locked and armed, press the lock button on the smart key. With keyless entry, touch a lock sensor on an exterior door handle. The hazard warning lights flash once to indicate and confirm the current lock status (One short Flash = Single Locked, One Long Flash = Double Locked).

**Note:** If the vehicle is not already locked and armed, press the lock button or touch a sensor once to single lock the vehicle. Press the lock button or touch a sensor twice within 3 seconds to double lock the vehicle.

### MISLOCK

When locking the vehicle with the smart key, a mislock can occur if:

- One or more of the doors, the hood, or the tailgate is not fully closed.
- The ignition is switched on.
- A smart key is left inside the vehicle.

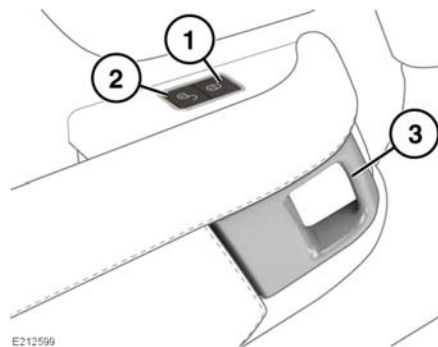
If any of the above are present, the vehicle does not lock and an audible mislock error warning sounds. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors (if enabled) do not fold in. Check that all of the doors, the hood, and the tailgate are closed properly. Make sure the ignition is switched off and lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

**Note:** Operating the interior or exterior door handles, while attempting to unlock, lock, or change the child lock status of the vehicle including drive-away locking, may cause the security system to ignore any unlock, lock, or child lock requests.

### DOOR LOCKS AND HANDLES

#### ⚠ WARNING

While a door is open, the locking latch is exposed. If the latch has the soft-close feature, do not attempt to manually close the latch. It may automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.



1. Lock button: Press to lock. With all of the doors closed, press a lock button to lock all of the doors.



## Exiting the vehicle

2. Unlock button: Press to unlock. Press an unlock button to unlock all of the doors and the tailgate. Alternatively, pull either front door handle (3) once to unlock all of the doors.
3. Door handle: Pull to unlock and open a front door. To unlock a rear door, pull the individual door handle.

**Note:** If the vehicle is locked with the smart key, operating an interior door handle unlocks only that door. If the door is opened, the alarm sounds.

**Note:** The rear door child safety locks inhibit the rear door lock and unlock buttons and the interior door handles. See **56, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS**.

### CLEAR EXIT MONITOR

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Clear exit monitor is a passenger aid only. It remains the responsibility of the user to open the door with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and other road users, to avoid serious injury.

#### **NOTICE**

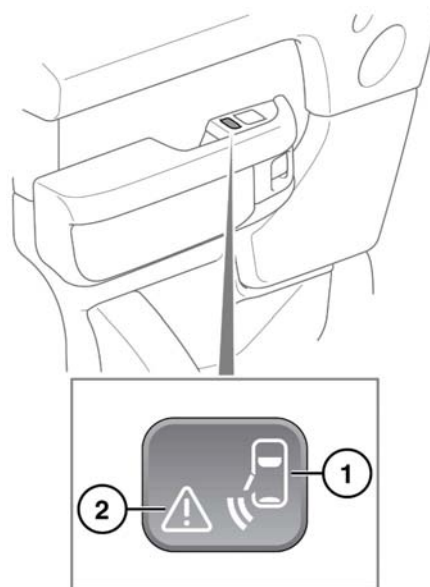
Make sure that the warning icons and indicators on the door handle are not obscured by stickers or other objects. If the icons are not visible, the driver may not notice a warning, which may cause damage to the vehicle.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper that may interfere with the radar sensors. Doing so may cause interfere the operation of the sensors, which may lead to a collision.

Clear exit monitor warns of a possible threat after opening any door from the inside. Sensors in the rear bumper monitor nearby traffic and determine if opening a door could pose a threat.

The clear exit monitor system is being activated only, when the door has been unlatched. The icons illuminate as follows:



E205503

1. Illuminates white to indicate that the system is active.
2. Illuminates amber to warn of a detected threat.

The amber icon illuminates when another vehicle, or moving object, is detected approaching from behind. The system has calculated that opening the door could endanger the occupant, the vehicle, or the other road user. The system does not prevent the door from being opened.

## Exiting the vehicle

The icons extinguish after the door has been closed.

The clear exit monitor system may not be able to detect all approaching traffic in all circumstances. The operation relies on the sensor's ability to detect threats which may be affected by road and weather conditions, but also if:

- Vehicles approach very quickly from behind.
- The sensors are impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, damage, accessories or stickers.
- The range of the sensors is obscured by objects, such as other cars parked wide or close to the vehicle.

Under these circumstances, as well as loss of functionality, reduced warning times may be experienced.

Clear exit monitor is only active below the vehicle speed of 3 mph (5 km/h) and remains active for 3 minutes after the ignition is switched off.

### AUTOMATIC RE-LOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

The security system disarms automatically when the vehicle is unlocked with a smart key. However, if a door is not opened within 40 seconds, the security system re-engages the locks and the alarm re-arms. Automatic re-locking and re-arming is a precautionary action to protect the vehicle when it is unintentionally left unlocked.

### BATTERY BACK-UP SOUNDER

When the security system is armed, the battery back-up sounder activates if:

- The vehicle's battery is disconnected.

- An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm's siren.
- An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

### DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm activates, it can be deactivated by any one of the following methods:

1. Press the unlock button on the smart key. See **11, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.
2. Open a door using keyless entry.
3. Press the **START/STOP** button with a valid smart key positioned correctly. See **170, ENGINE START BACKUP**.

The cause of the last alarm activation can be displayed in the instrument panel. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

### EMERGENCY LOCKING

**Note:** Do not leave the emergency key blade in the vehicle at any point during the emergency locking procedure.

In the event of a fault with the alarm and/or locking system, manually secure the vehicle. Lock all of the doors via the driver's door key barrel.

The emergency key blade is required for this procedure. See **11, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

Using the emergency key:

1. Make sure all apertures are closed and insert the emergency key blade into the key barrel of the driver door.
2. Turn the emergency key blade 90° clockwise.
3. All of the doors single lock and access to the loadspace is inhibited.

## Exiting the vehicle

4. Pull the exterior door handles to check that the doors are locked. When doing so, make sure any valid smart keys are at least 2 m away from the doors.

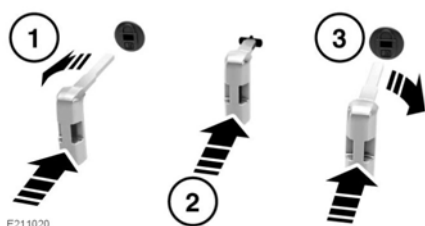
If the issue persists, consult a retailer/ authorised repairer for rectification as soon as possible.

In the event of the battery discharging, each of the doors must be locked manually.

The emergency key blade is required for this procedure. See **11, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

4. Close the door and check that it is locked.

Repeat the procedure for all other unlocked doors.



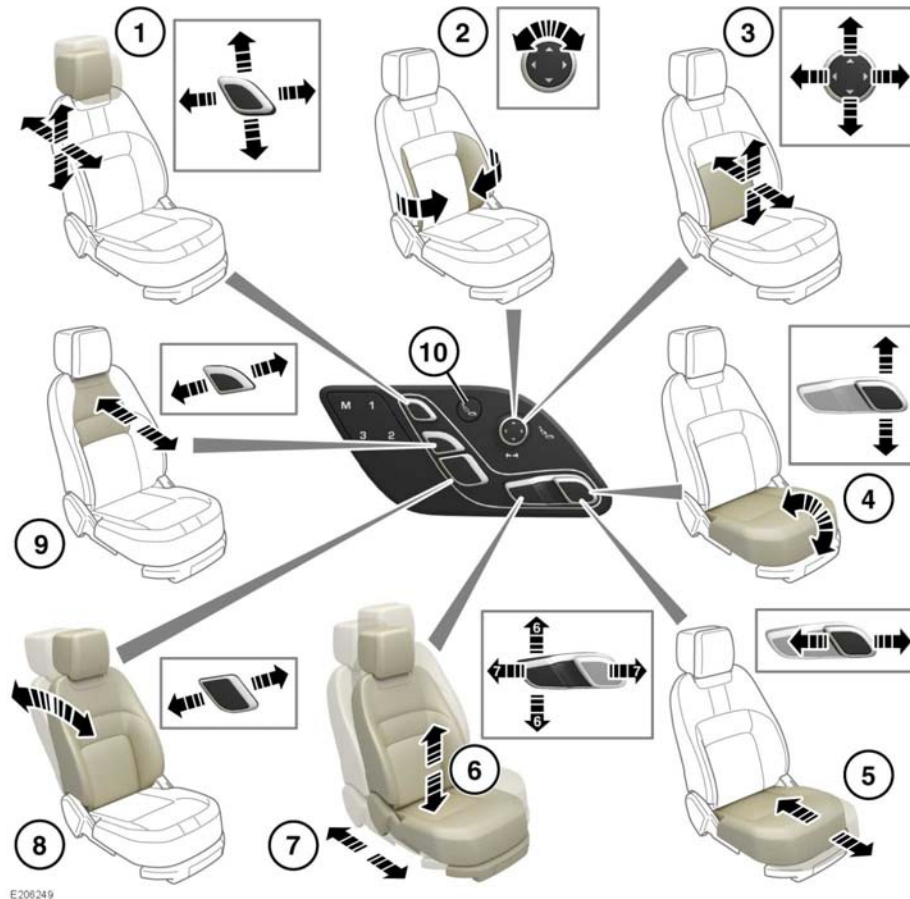
Using the emergency key:

1. Open a door and locate the access cover of the emergency lock on the edge of the door. The cover has an embossed lock icon. Insert the emergency key blade into the cover's slot. Rotate the cover counter-clockwise to first release it. Pull the cover to remove it from the door. Keep the lock's access cover safe.
2. Insert the emergency key blade firmly into the emergency lock. A firm push activates the door's locking mechanism. Remove the emergency key blade.
3. Refit the access cover of the emergency lock. Rotate the cover clockwise to secure it firmly.



## Front seats

### ELECTRIC SEATS



E206249

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front, or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.

## Front seats

**Note:** All electric seat options are covered in the above diagram. Not all of these options apply to all seats.

Electric seat adjustment:

1. Head restraint height and angle.
2. Bolster inflate and deflate.
3. Lumbar support.
4. Cushion tilt.
5. Cushion length.
6. Seat height.
7. Forward and rearward position.
8. Seatback angle.
9. Upper seatback angle.
10. Seat massage. See 306, SEAT MASSAGE.

The front seats may also have heated or climate control. See 296, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL.

### RESTRICTED FRONT SEAT TRAVEL

#### **⚠ WARNING**

If seat movement stops unexpectedly during adjustment, check for, and remove, any obstructions. Obstructions could potentially cause a loss of vehicle control if not appropriately stored, potentially resulting in injury or death.

If front seat travel is restricted or obstructed, remove the obstruction and reset the seat adjustment mechanism, as follows:

1. Operate the seat switch again to continue the stalled adjustment.
2. When seat movement resumes, hold the seat switch until the end of travel in that direction has been reached.

3. Seat adjustment can now be carried out as normal.

**Note:** If no obstructions can be found, and normal seat adjustment still cannot be carried out, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

### SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

#### **⚠ WARNING**

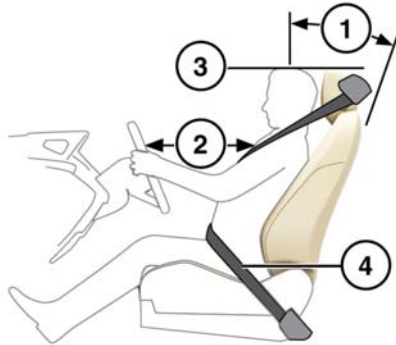
Riding with a reclined seatback increases the chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. Reclining the seat greatly reduces the protection of the restraint system, i.e., the seat belts and air bags. Seat belts must be snug against the hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance of an occupant's hips sliding under the lap section of the seat belt. The occupant's neck could also strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in the seat, be properly belted, and have the seatbacks in an upright position.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Never adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. Any sudden or unexpected movement of the seat could cause a loss of vehicle control, potentially resulting in an accident.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt, and air bags all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components gives greater protection. Therefore, always observe the following points:

## Front seats

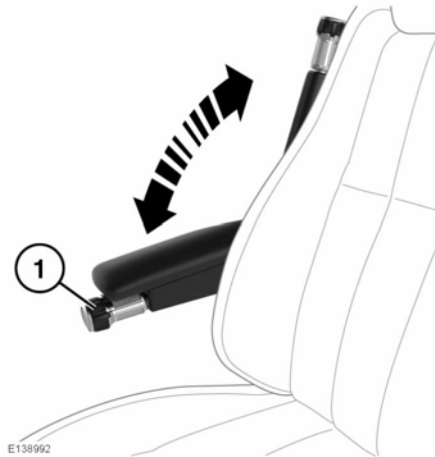


E145130

1. Sit in an upright position, with the base of the spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.
2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 10 in (254 mm) is recommended between the breastbone and the air bag cover of the steering wheel. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centerline of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it is midway between the neck and shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across the hips, not across the stomach.

Make sure that the driving position is comfortable, enabling full control of the vehicle.

### FOLDING ARMREST



E138992

Use the adjuster wheel (1) to set the required height for the armrest. The folding armrest can be stored by moving it to the vertical position.

### SEAT POSITION MEMORY

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Before activating the seat position memory function, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions. All occupants should be clear of moving parts to avoid personal injury.**

When a preferred driving, door mirror, lumbar bolster, shoulder adjust and steering wheel position has been reached, the settings can be stored for future use. See **47, ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL** and **101, DOOR MIRRORS**.

## Front seats



E212030

1. Press the memory store (**M**) button to activate the memory function.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to store the current settings. The message **MEMORY (1, 2 or 3) SETTINGS SAVED** displays in the instrument panel to confirm the settings have been stored.

**Note:** A driving position only stores during the 5 second active period.

**Note:** Any existing settings are overwritten when storing a new memory position.

To recall a stored position: Press the relevant preset button.

The message **MEMORY (1, 2 or 3) RECALLED** displays in the instrument panel.

**Note:** The memory function for all passenger seats does not trigger any messages in the instrument panel.

## FRONT SEATS MASSAGE

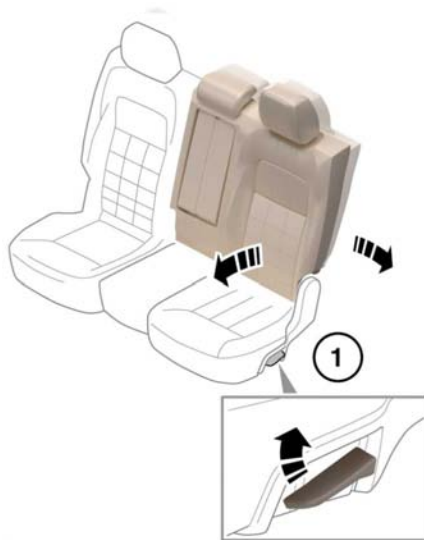


E219966

Press the massage button to turn the seat massage feature on. Seat massage will start using the previously selected settings, if applicable. Press the massage button again to turn the feature off. The seat massage feature retains the most recently selected settings. Seat massage can also be accessed and adjusted via the touchscreen. See **306, SEAT MASSAGE**.

## Rear seats

### MANUAL SEATS



E178071

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.

To adjust the angle seatback angle:

1. Lift the adjustment lever.
2. Adjust the seatback to the desired angle.
3. Release the adjustment lever.

### ELECTRIC SEATS



E206210

Use the switch mounted on the door trim panel to adjust the position of the rear seatback.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

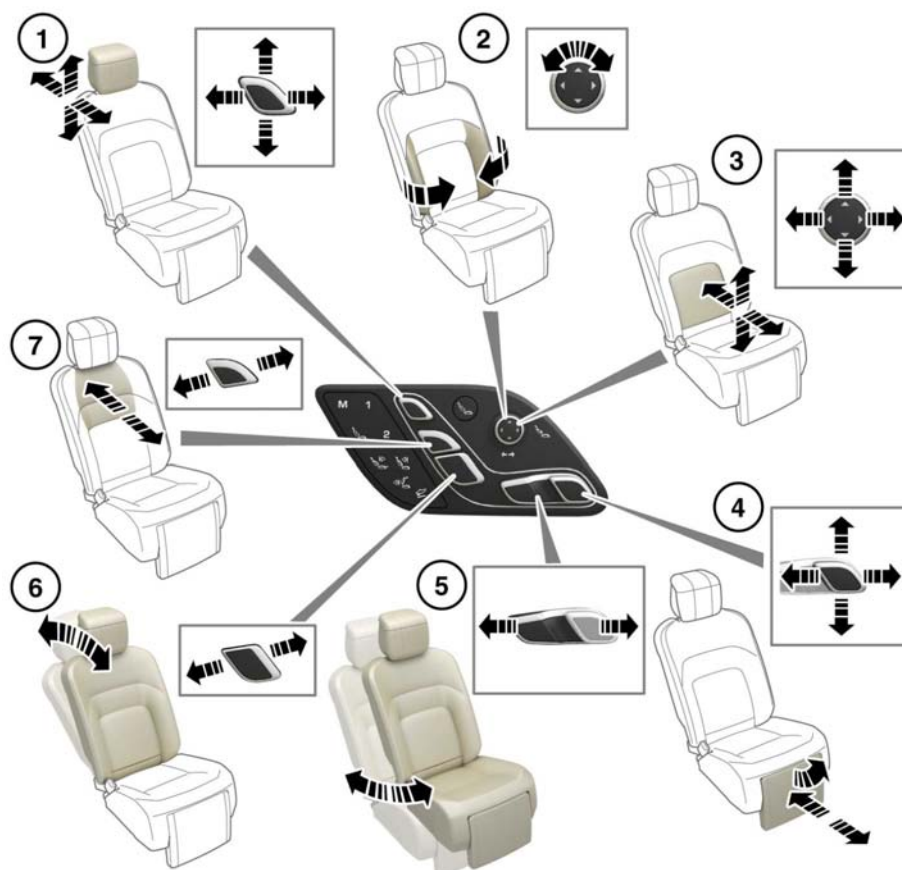
Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.

**Note:** If rear window operation is inhibited, electric rear seat movement is also inhibited. See 107, **ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.



## Rear seats

### EXECUTIVE CLASS SEATS



E206219

The executive class seat controls are located on the door trim panel. Move the appropriate control in the required direction of seat movement.

1. Head restraint height and angle. See **40, HEAD RESTRAINTS OVERVIEW.**
2. Bolster inflate and deflate.

3. Lumber support, and bolster inflate and deflate.

4. Leg rest height and angle.

**Note:** Before deploying the leg rest, make sure the front seat is in a position to allow full movement without clashing.

## Rear seats

5. Seat cushion forward and rearward position.

**Note:** The seat rises as it moves forward.

6. Seatback angle.
7. Upper seatback angle.

When a rear seat is unoccupied, and the vehicle is being driven, the seat resets to the fully reclined position. The seat can be returned to the desired position either manually, by selecting a stored memory setting on the door panel, or via the front touchscreen.

### ⚠ WARNING

Take care when retrieving items that have fallen down the side, back, front, or underneath the seat. Sharp objects may be present in these areas, which could present a risk of injury. Always stop the vehicle before retrieving items.

### NOTICE

Do not use a rear seat entertainment screen as an aid to enter or exit the vehicle. Damage may occur to the screen tilt mechanism.

**Note:** A number of executive class rear seat features described in this Owner's Handbook require interaction with the front seats. Features that require interaction with the front seats are inhibited if the front seats are occupied.

**Note:** Supplementary comfort pillows, where supplied, should only be used when the vehicle is stationary.

The executive class seats also feature:

- Climate control. See **302, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.
- Seat massage. See **35, REAR SEAT MASSAGE**.

## REAR SEAT POSITION MEMORY

### ⚠ WARNING

Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions. All occupants should be clear of moving parts. Personal injury may result if any part of the body is caught in a moving seat.



E206211

1. Press the memory store button to activate the memory function.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to store the current seat settings.

Press the relevant preset button to recall a saved position.

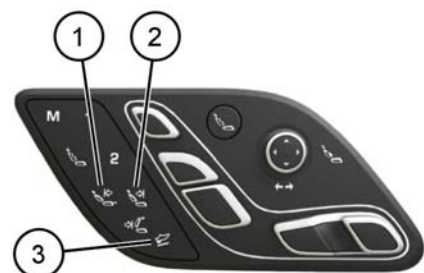
## REAR SEAT COMFORT POSITION

The executive class rear seats can be adjusted to provide a more comfortable position.

**Note:** The rear seat comfort feature does not operate if the front passenger seat is occupied.

**Note:** The rear seat comfort feature is only available on vehicles fitted with executive class seats.

## Rear seats



E206220

1. One-touch recline.
2. One-touch raise.
3. Foot rest.

Press the recline button (1) to move the executive class rear seat to the comfort position. Simultaneously, the front passenger's seat moves forward to provide more leg room for the rear seat occupant. The front seat seatback also moves to an upright position, and the head restraint folds forward.

Press the raise button (2) to return the front and rear seats to their original positions.

Press the foot rest button (3) to adjust the position of the foot rest, if required.

### REAR SEAT MASSAGE



E206212

Press the massage button to turn the seat massage feature on. Seat massage will start using the previously selected settings, if applicable. Press the massage button again to turn the feature off. The seat massage feature retains the most recently selected settings.

Seat massage can also be accessed and adjusted via the touchscreen. See **306, SEAT MASSAGE**.

### PASSENGER SEAT AWAY

The front passenger seat can be adjusted to provide more leg room for the rear seat occupant.

**Note:** The passenger seat away feature does not operate if the front passenger seat is occupied.

#### Bench seats

The passenger seat away feature is accessed via the touchscreen. See **38, REMOTE SEATS**.

#### Executive class seats



E206221

1. Front seat selection.
2. Passenger seat away.

Press the button (2) to move the front passenger seat fully forward.



## Rear seats

The rear seat occupant can also adjust the position of the front passenger seat manually. Press the button (1) to gain control of the front passenger seat. The button illuminates to confirm the front seat is being controlled. Use the rear seat switches to move the front passenger seat to the required position.

**Note:** Front seat control is stopped automatically after 2 minutes.

The passenger seat away feature can also be accessed via the touchscreen. See 38, REMOTE SEATS.

### FOLDING AND RAISING THE REAR SEATS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Never allow passengers to ride in the loadspace. In a collision, people riding in the loadspace are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow anyone to travel in any area of the vehicle that is not equipped for passengers. Be sure that everyone in the vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

In a collision or sudden stop, unsecured objects could be thrown inside the vehicle, striking and injuring occupants. Always properly store and secure cargo and other objects in the vehicle.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure that when a seatback is raised, the locking mechanism is fully engaged. An unsecured seatback may not properly support an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

When raising the rear seats, make sure the seat belts are correctly routed into the seat belt guides and not trapped behind the seats. An incorrectly routed seat belt may not properly restrain an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure the head restraints are raised to the correct position before the seats are used by a passenger. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision.

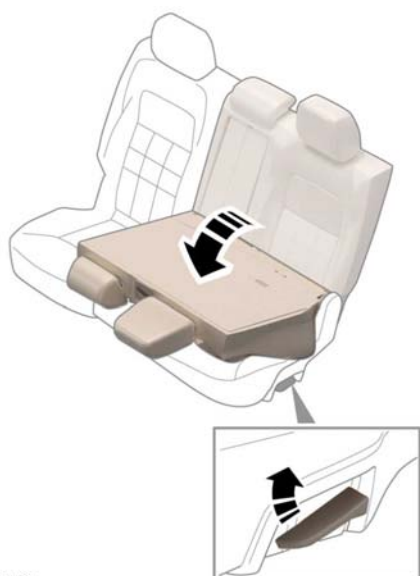
#### **NOTICE**

Before folding or raising rear seats, make sure any rear fitted screens are not in the movement path of the folding seat. Damage may occur to the seat or the screen as a result of the two colliding.

The split-fold rear seat can be folded completely to accommodate large loads, or partially folded to accommodate loads while retaining seating for passengers.

## Rear seats

### Manual seats

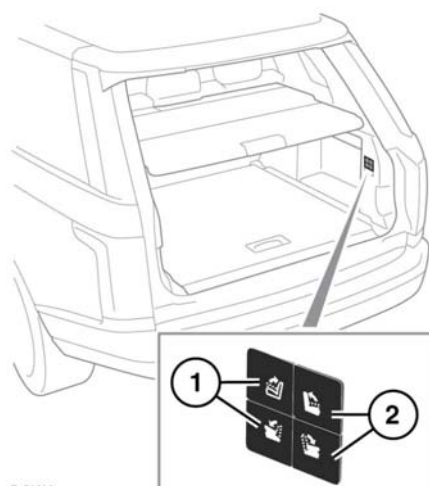


E176091

To fold the seatback: Raise the release lever. The seatback folds down against the seat cushion.

To raise the seatback: Lift the seatback and raise it to the upright position. Make sure the seatback is locked firmly into position.

### Electric seats



E176092

**Note:** It is not possible to fold the left-side rear seat on vehicles with a rear fridge.

**Note:** Before folding or raising executive class rear seats, make sure the rear seat belts are stored between the seat bolster and the D pillar. See **51, SEAT BELT STORAGE**.

A set of seat buttons is located in the loadspace. For vehicles with standard electric rear seats:

1. Press and hold to fold or raise the left-side seatback.
2. Press and hold to fold or raise the right-side seatback.

For vehicle's with executive class rear seats, press and release the appropriate button.

**Note:** Standard electric rear seats are disabled if the rear seatbacks are moved through a full fold and raise sequence more than three times in quick succession. The feature is re-enabled after 2 minutes.



## Rear seats

If the feature detects the rear seatbacks will clash with the front seats, it automatically moves the front seats. The anti-clash feature is called intelligent seat cargo mode. See **38, INTELLIGENT SEAT CARGO MODE**.

The electric rear seats can also be folded using a smartphone app and the touchscreen. See **350, INCONTROL OVERVIEW** and **38, REMOTE SEATS**.

### INTELLIGENT SEAT CARGO MODE

#### WARNING

**Before activating intelligent seat cargo mode, make sure that the area surrounding the seats is clear of obstructions. All occupants should be clear of moving parts. Personal injury may result if any part of the body is caught in a moving seat.**

Intelligent seat cargo mode automatically moves the front seats if it detects a clash will occur when folding the electric rear seatbacks. In order for intelligent seat cargo mode to operate, the following conditions must be in place:

- Vehicles with standard electric rear seats: The loadspace button is kept pressed.  
Vehicles with executive class rear seats: The loadspace button is pressed and released.
- The vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle is in Park (P).

When the fold sequence is completed, intelligent seat cargo mode moves the front seats back to their original positions. If this causes a clash, intelligent seat cargo mode attempts to get as close as possible to the original positions.

**Note:** On vehicles fitted with executive class rear seats, center rear seat belt buckles may become lodged in between the seat cushions following intelligent seat cargo mode operation. If the seat buckles become lodged, retrieve them from the lodged position in between the seat cushions to make sure they are correctly repositioned for seat belt operation. If a buckle cannot be retrieved manually, move the seat cushions electronically to dislodge the buckle. **33, EXECUTIVE CLASS SEATS**.

### REMOTE SEATS

The touchscreen allows the user to remotely adjust the position of, or fold and raise, the passenger seats.

**Note:** Before folding or raising executive class rear seats, make sure the rear seat belts are stored between the seat bolster and the D pillar. See **51, SEAT BELT STORAGE**.

**Note:** Seat comfort settings, e.g. massage, heating, etc., can be controlled remotely via the lower touchscreen. See **302, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

To adjust the position of a passenger's seat using the touchscreen:

1. From the **HOME SCREEN**, swipe left to select the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen.
2. Select **Seats**.

## Rear seats

The **SEATS** screen allows the user to fold or raise a passenger's seat. Touch the appropriate seat image on the touchscreen, then touch the **Fold** on to lower the seat. After the seat is lowered, the **Fold** soft key is replaced with an **Unfold** soft key.

To lower all seats, touch the **Fold all** soft key. After the seats are lowered, the **Fold all** soft key is replaced with an **Unfold all** soft key.

The **SEATS** screen also presents a number of other features:

- Convenient seat fold can be used to prepare the vehicle to receive a large amount of luggage. Touch the seat soft key to activate the feature. When touched, all rear seats lower, and the tailgate opens.
- **Chauffeur Mode:** Touch to open the **CHAUFFEUR MODE** screen. Chauffeur mode allows the driver to carry out the following functions via the touchscreen:
  - Raise and recline any passenger's seat.
  - Recall a front passenger's seat memory settings.
  - Activate the passenger seat away function. See **35, PASSENGER SEAT AWAY**.

**Note:** When a seat returns to the upright position, it should lock into place automatically. If lock mode is not detected, the seat will move forward three times and attempt to lock. Keep clear from the seat during this process. If the seat does not lock after the third attempt, it folds fully down into cargo mode. Check for any obstructions and attempt to fold again. If the seat does not return to the fully upright position after this procedure, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

**Note:** If any items are grayed out on the touchscreen, operation is inhibited. Refer to, and follow, the on-screen instructions.

### RESTRICTED REAR SEAT TRAVEL

#### **NOTICE**

Check for and remove any obstructions should electric seat movement stop unexpectedly during folding or raising.

Once any obstructions have been removed, continue the seat movement by pressing the appropriate button.

**Note:** If no obstruction can be found, and seat movement cannot be carried out, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

## Head restraints

### HEAD RESTRAINTS OVERVIEW

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Head restraints are designed to support the head, not the back of the neck. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

While stationary, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centerline of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from occupied seats. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so could potentially cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

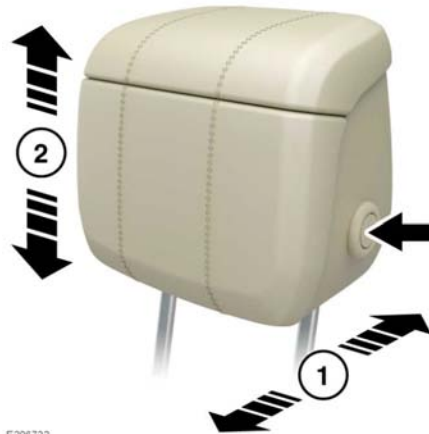
#### **⚠ WARNING**

Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could potentially cause serious injury or death.

Head restraints are fitted to all front and rear seats.

### FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

#### Manual head restraints



E208722

To adjust the manual head restraints: Press the locking button on the side of the restraint. Simultaneously, move the restraint horizontally (1) and vertically (2) until the desired position is achieved.

#### Electric head restraints

To adjust the electric head restraints, see **28, ELECTRIC SEATS**.

#### **NOTICE**

*Only executive electric head restraints can be removed. All other electric head restraints cannot be removed. Attempting to remove non-executive head restraints may result in damage to the vehicle.*

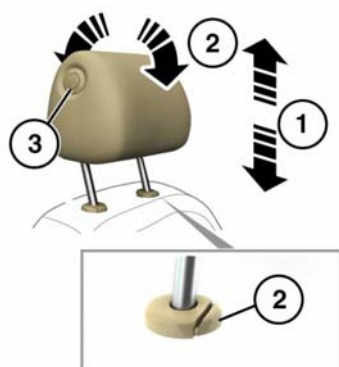
**Note:** There is no angle adjustment on front head restraints.



## Head restraints

### REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

#### Manual head restraints



E139115

To adjust the manual head restraints:

1. To raise, pull the head restraint upwards. The head restraint clicks and locks into position.
2. To lower, press the locking button and push down on the head restraint.
3. To adjust the angle of the head restraint, press the locking button on the side of the restraint and tilt to the desired position.

#### Executive head restraints

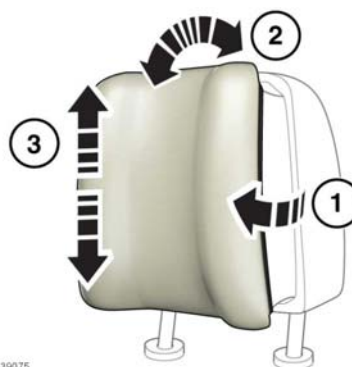
To adjust the executive head restraints, see 28, **ELECTRIC SEATS**.



E210766

To tilt the rear executive head restraints: Pull the head restraint forward and upward using the lower edge, until the desired position is achieved.

### WINGED HEAD RESTRAINTS



E139075

To adjust the winged head restraints:

1. Pull the wings forward into the first or second position.



## Head restraints

2. Tilt the head restraint to adjust the angle.
3. For front height, see **28, ELECTRIC SEATS**.  
For rear height, see **33, EXECUTIVE CLASS SEATS**.

**Note:** Supplementary comfort pillows, where supplied, should only be used when the vehicle is stationary.

### FRONT HEAD RESTRAINT REMOVAL

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could potentially cause serious injury or death.

**Note:** Manual head restraints may be removed, if required. See **56, CHILD SEATS**.

Two people are required when removing a front head restraint.

To remove a front head restraint:

1. Move the head restraint to its uppermost position.
2. Using two hands, press down on each of the collars located on top of the seat, to engage hidden buttons inside the seat.

3. While the collars are pressed down, the second person should lift out the head restraint.

Make sure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger.

To refit the front head restraint:

1. Press the button on the side of the head restraint. While holding the button, push the stems into the head restraint as far as they will go.
2. Line the stems up with the collar holes on the seatback. Push the head restraint down until both stems engage into a locked position.

### REAR HEAD RESTRAINT REMOVAL

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraints removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Always store a removed head restraint securely. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury or death.

**Note:** Manual head restraints may be removed, if required. See **56, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS**.

#### **Manual head restraint removal**

To remove a manual head restraint:

1. Raise the head restraint to its uppermost position and press the button on the locking collar.
2. Lift the restraint out of the seatback.

## Head restraints

Make sure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger.

To refit a manual head restraint:

1. Make sure the restraint is facing the correct direction.
2. Insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets on the seatback.
3. Push the restraint downward until at least the first click.

### Executive head restraint removal

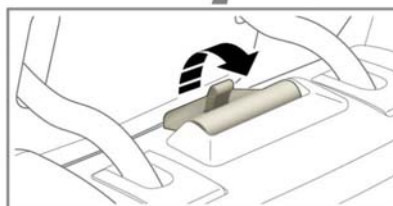
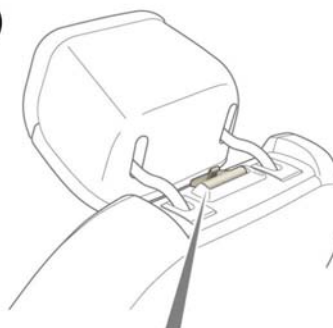
#### **NOTICE**

*Only executive electric head restraints can be removed. All other electric head restraints cannot be removed. Attempting to remove non-executive head restraints may result in damage to the vehicle.*

①



②



E209646



## Head restraints

To remove an executive head restraint:

1. Tilt the head restraint fully forward.  
See **28, ELECTRIC SEATS**.
2. Pull the latch, located between the head restraint and the seatback, and lift the head restraint out of the seatback.

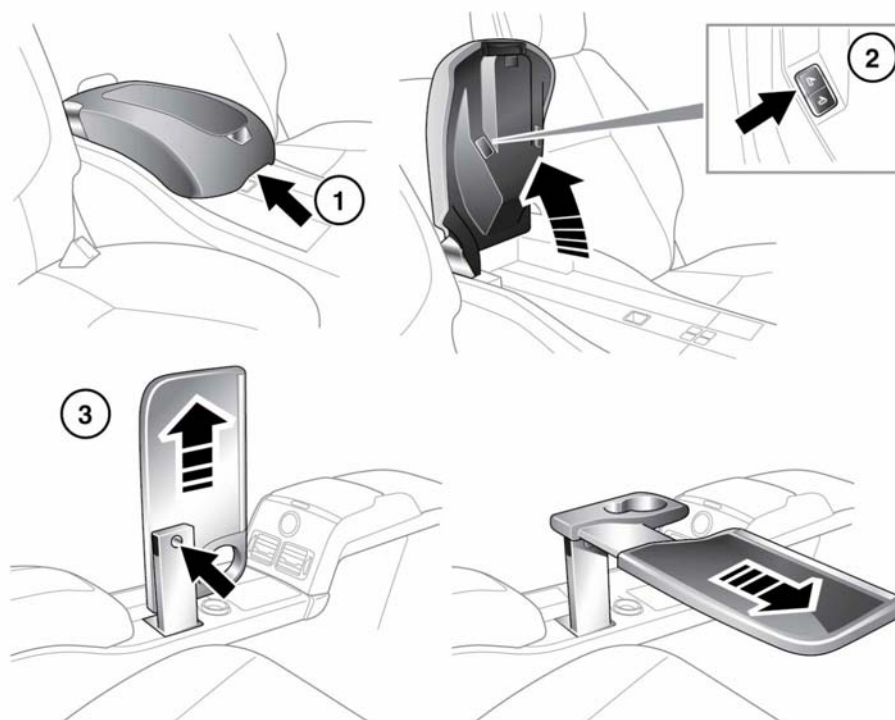
Make sure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger.

To refit an executive head restraint:

1. Make sure the restraint is facing the correct direction.
2. Insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets on the seatback.
3. Push the restraint downward and back, until it clicks into position.
4. Rotate the head restraint to a fully upward position. See **28, ELECTRIC SEATS**.

## Convenience features

### CENTER CONSOLE TABLES



IE216923

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure that any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or is subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.**

To access the tables:

1. Press the button to release the center armrest. Lift the armrest.
2. Raise and lower button: Press and release the button to activate the table.

The table's cover panel opens and the table hinges forward. The cover panel closes.

3. Press the button on the table column, while lifting the table top vertically. When in position, lower the table top into the horizontal position. The table top can be extended, if required.

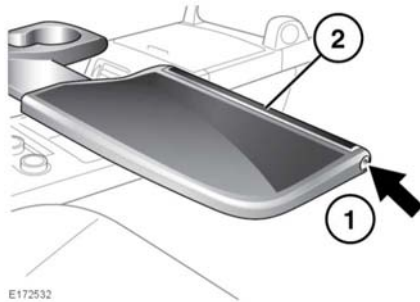
**Note:** The front seats have restricted movement when the center console tables are deployed.

To store the tables:

## Convenience features

1. If extended, retract the table top to the normal position.
2. Move the table top to the vertical position. Press the button on the column and lower the table.
3. Press and hold the lower button until the cover door opens. The table moves back into the fully stored position. The cover door closes.

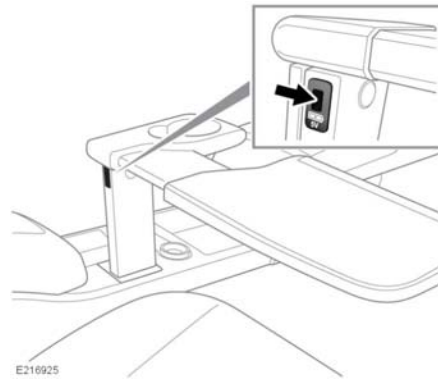
### TABLET HOLDER



A tablet holder is located on each of the center console tables.

1. Press the button on the end of the tablet holder, and rotate the tablet holder into position.
2. Position a tablet into the slot. The two corner holders rise and hold the tablet in place.

### AUXILIARY DEVICE SOCKET



A USB charging socket is located in each of the center console's table columns.

## Steering wheel

### ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

#### ⚠ WARNING

Never adjust the steering column while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause a loss of control, potentially resulting in an accident.



IE150758

Move the steering column control up or down to adjust the tilt/height position. Move the steering column control forward or rearward to adjust reach. Rotate the control to **AUTO** for automatic operation. Rotate to the manual position for manual operation.

#### ENTRY AND EXIT MODE

With the steering column control in the **AUTO** position, the steering column and driver's seat moves to provide easier entry and exit from the vehicle.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not use steering wheel mounted security devices on vehicles with electrically adjustable steering columns. Movement of the steering column in entry or exit mode could result in damage to the vehicle or possible serious injury or death to the occupant.

On opening the driver's door, the system raises the steering column to the highest position and lower the driver's seat to a lower position. This operation assists exiting from the vehicle. When the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on, the system returns the driver's seat and steering column to the previous position.

**Note:** If the driver's seat or steering column are adjusted during entry or exit operation, automatic movement stops.

## Steering wheel

To prevent automatic movement of the driver's seat and steering column, turn the control clockwise to the manual position.

**Note:** If the steering column control is moved away from **AUTO** when the driver's seat and steering column is in the exit position. The driver's seat and steering column move back to their previous positions when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on.

### POWER STEERING

A fault with the power steering system is indicated by a message in the message center, accompanied by an amber warning lamp. See **87, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.

Power assistance may be reduced to protect the system. The requirement for this may be due to overheating, caused by extensive steering inputs or high ambient temperature, or both.

Full steering assistance should return when the system has been allowed to cool. If full steering assistance does not return, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

### HEATED STEERING WHEEL



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button. Press again to switch off.



## Seat belts

### USING THE SEAT BELTS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not use comfort clips or other devices that create slack in the seat belt system. A slack seat belt offers a greatly reduced level of occupant protection in an impact.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack. No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. A slack seat belt offers a greatly reduced level of occupant protection in an impact.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body. Seat belts should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack seat belt greatly reduces the protection afforded to the wearer. Make sure that any seat belt positioning sliders are adjusted so as not to introduce slack. A slack seat belt offers a greatly reduced level of occupant protection in an impact.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Belts should not be worn with the straps twisted. A twisted belt may increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant. Placing a seat belt around a child being carried on an occupant's lap is dangerous.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Travelling with a reclined seatback increases the chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. By reclining the seat, the protection offered by the restraint system, i.e., the seat belts and air bags, is greatly reduced. Seat belts must be snug against the hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt. The occupant's neck may also strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in the seat, be properly belted, and have the seatbacks in an upright position.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The air bag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) is designed to add to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts. The SRS does not replace the seat belts. Seat belts must always be worn. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

## Seat belts

### ⚠ WARNING

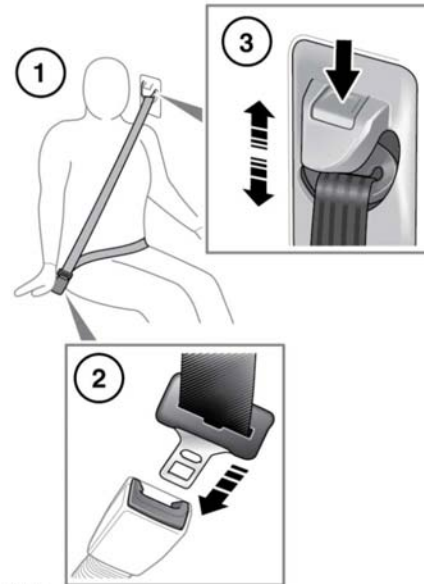
Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

### ⚠ WARNING

Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap and shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase the risk of injury.

### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure the seat belt height is correctly adjusted and the mechanism is locked into place before driving. Maladjustment of the seat belt could reduce its effectiveness in a crash. Do not attempt to adjust the seat belt height once the vehicle is in motion. Adjusting the height while the vehicle is moving may cause loss of control of the vehicle, or incorrect adjustment of the seat belt.



E185634

1. Putting on a seat belt: Draw the belt out smoothly. Make sure that the seat position and the occupant's position on the seat are correct.  
When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and the end of the shoulder.  
Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust the seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.
2. Fastening a seat belt: With the seat belt correctly positioned, place the metal tongue into the nearest buckle. Press it in until a click is heard. Pull on the belt to confirm the buckle is latched correctly.  
To release the seat belt, press the red button.

## Seat belts

**Note:** When releasing the seat belt, it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. Doing so prevents the belt from retracting too quickly.

3. Seat belt height adjustment: Press to release the catch.

With the catch pressed move the mechanism slide up or down to the required height. Make sure the locking mechanism has engaged. When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and end of the shoulder.

Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust their seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.

When a seat belt is not in use, the belt slider can be used to position the metal tongue on the seat belt. The slider allows the user to position the metal tongue for ease of use, and to minimize contact with adjacent trim.

### SEAT BELT STORAGE



E209270

1. D pillar.
2. Seat bolster.
3. Seat belt.

Before folding or raising executive class rear seats, make sure the rear seat belts are stored between the seat bolster and the D pillar.

### SEAT BELT USE DURING PREGNANCY

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child. Never wear just the lap strap, and never sit on the lap strap while using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous, and may increase the risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.

## Seat belts

### **⚠ WARNING**

Never place anything between an occupant and the seat belt in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. An object placed in this position can be dangerous, and reduces the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.



E104191

Seat belt adjustment during pregnancy:  
Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips and beneath the abdomen. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

### SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The seat belt pre-tensioners only activate once, and then must be replaced. Failure to replace the pre-tensioners reduces the effectiveness of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) in the event of an accident. The risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident is then increased. The seat belts and pre-tensioners must be checked and, if necessary, replaced by a retailer/authorized repairer after an impact.

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the SRS to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact, not rear impact. The seat belt pre-tensioners automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt. As a result, forward movement of a front seat occupant or an outboard rear seat occupant is reduced.

**Note:** The rear center seat is not fitted with a seat belt pre-tensioner.

### SEAT BELT SAFETY

#### **⚠ WARNING**

A seat belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated, or damaged. Damage to the seat belt can greatly reduce its effectiveness in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Even if damage is not obvious, it is essential to replace the entire seat belt assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact. Damage to the seat belt can greatly reduce its effectiveness in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Take the vehicle to a retailer/authorized repairer immediately if any seat belt damage, wear, cuts, or impaired operation is noticed. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly. In an impact, the seat belts cannot be relied upon and may present an increased risk of serious injury or death.

## Seat belts

### **⚠ WARNING**

Seat belts should be inspected or replaced by qualified personnel only. All replacement parts should be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. Replacement parts not of the same specification cannot be relied upon and present an increased risk of serious injury or death in a severe impact. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any part of the vehicle's seat belts. Doing so may render the seat belts ineffective and increase the risk of serious injury or death in a severe impact.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Care must be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Contaminated seat belts may not operate correctly in an impact and cannot be relied upon.

### **⚠ WARNING**

If using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, make sure the belts are not damaged or exposed to sharp edges. Damage to the seat belt can greatly reduce its effectiveness in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Hard, fragile, or sharp items should not be placed between the occupant and the seat belt. In an impact, pressure on such items can cause them to break, which in turn may cause death or serious injury.

Each seat in the vehicle has a dedicated seat belt. Each seat belt is designed for an individual seat occupant, aged older than 12 years or with a body mass greater than 80 lb (36 kg). Occupants with a lower age, or a lower body mass, should use an appropriate child restraint. See **58, CHILD SEAT POSITIONING**.

The front row seat belts and all outboard rear seat belts are equipped with a load limiter. A load limiter helps to regulate the over-tension of a seat belt in a severe impact. By regulating the tension of the seat belt, the possibility of injury to the occupant in the event of an accident is reduced.

## SEAT BELT CHECKS

### **⚠ WARNING**

Contact a retailer/authorized repairer immediately if any of the seat belts fail to meet the following criteria. A damaged or incorrectly operating seat belt presents an increased risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

**Note:** If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. The locking mechanism is a safety feature. The belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.



## Seat belts

Regularly inspect the seat belts to check for fraying, cuts, or wear to the webbing. Also check the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters, and mounting points.

To inspect the condition of the seat belts:

1. With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.
2. With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
3. Partially unreel the seat belt. Hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

### SEAT BELT LOCKING MECHANISM

The rear seat belts and the front passenger seat belt have a locking mechanism which improves the retention of child seats.

The procedure to fit a child seat is as follows:

1. Place the child seat in the vehicle. Attach the seat belt, and secure the buckle in accordance with the manufacturer's fitting instructions.
2. Pull on the shoulder section of the belt to unreel all of the remaining webbing to the limit of its travel. The automatic locking feature now engages. The locking feature acts as a ratchet, only allowing the webbing to retract.

3. Allow the seat belt to retract onto the child seat, while firmly pushing the child seat into the vehicle's seat. A clicking sound confirms that the ratchet has engaged.
4. Make sure there is no slack in the seat belt, by pulling upward on the shoulder belt immediately above the child restraint.

When the child seat is removed, and all of the seat belt webbing is allowed to retract, the seat belt locking mechanism reverts to normal operation.

### SEAT BELT REMINDER

An audible warning sounds, and a warning lamp will illuminate when the following conditions occur:

- The driver seat, or the front seats are occupied.
- The front seatbelts have not been fastened.
- The vehicle accelerates from a low speed.
- A front seatbelt is unfastened while the vehicle is moving.

If a front seatbelt has not been fastened, the audible and visual warnings turn off after a short period of time.

**Note:** There may be a short delay at the start of the journey, before passenger side reminder operates.

**Note:** If a heavy object is placed on the front passenger seat, it may activate the seat belt reminder system. If any objects are placed on the front passenger seat, make sure they are secured using the seat belt.

## Seat belts

### SEAT BELT MONITOR

The instrument panel displays a graphic to indicate which seat belts are fastened at the start of a journey. The graphic also indicates when a seat belt is fastened or unfastened during a journey.

**Note:** *In all cases the graphic covers all rear seating positions and may also display front row positions.*

Seating positions are represented by an icon. The icon's color and symbol indicate the seat belt status:

1. Green: The seat belt is fastened.
2. Red: The seat belt has been unfastened while the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The indicator turns gray after a period.
3. Gray / blank : Indicates that the seat belt is not fastened.

**Note:** *The indicators are displayed when there is a status change. For example, a seat belt is unfastened or fastened, or a door is opened and then closed. In addition, an audible warning sounds when a rear seat belt is unfastened. The warning sound may be delayed if the belt was unfastened at low speed.*

## Child safety

### CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



The rear door interior handles should be disabled if children are to be carried in the rear seat positions.

Press the button located on the driver's door to activate the child door locks and inhibit the rear windows. The LED indicator illuminates when active. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message.

To switch off, press the button again. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message.

### CHILD SEATS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. The air bags alone will not prevent children from being seriously injured or killed. Never place a child in any type of child restraint or booster seat in the front passenger seat. All children under 13 years of age, should always ride in the back seat.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure the child seat fits the child properly. Always check the seat manufacturer's instructions and labels for height and weight limits. For more specific guidance, consult a pediatrician.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child. At all times, children should be restrained in age and size appropriate child seats to reduce the risk of death or serious injury in a crash.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Children could be endangered in a crash if the child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. Always follow the instructions that accompany the child seat carefully.



## Child safety

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by use of the lap belt portion of a lap and shoulder belt. Children could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured.

The seat belts fitted to the vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For safety purposes, it is very important for infants and children under 12 years of age to be restrained in a suitable child safety seat. The child safety seat should be appropriate to the age and size of the infant or child.

A child should only travel in the front passenger's seat if it is essential and national or state legislation permits it. If this is the case, it is recommended that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint:

- Adjust the seatback to an upright position to support the child restraint.
- Adjust the front passenger's seat fully rearward.
- Adjust the lumbar support to its minimum support position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to its highest position. If cushion front tilt adjustment is possible, adjust it to its lowest position.

### **WARNING**

**Extreme Hazard! Never place a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat.**

**The infant could be seriously injured or killed if the air bag deploys.**



E156334

The above label is affixed to the passenger's side sun visor. The label warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat, when a front passenger air bag is fitted and operational.



E187568

The above label is affixed to both pillars. The label warns against a child sitting too close to the side air bag of a front seat..

### **WARNING**

**Never let a child's head rest near to a front seat side air bag. An inflating air bag can cause serious or fatal injury.**

## Child safety



E132397

The above label is affixed to the end of the dashboard on the passenger's side. The label warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger's seat, when a front passenger air bag is fitted and operational.

### CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

#### ⚠ WARNING

Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly secured in a child restraint system. The child restraint system should be appropriate for the age and weight of the child. Failure to use an appropriate child restraint system greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Seat belts, or suitable child restraints, should be used by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Even with advanced air bags, children can be killed or seriously injured. Never place a child in any type of child restraint or booster seat in the front passenger seat. Children under the age of 13 should always travel in a rear seat.

When using a seat belt to secure a non-LATCH rearward-facing, convertible or forward-facing type of child seat, make sure the seat belt's locking mechanism is used. See **54, SEAT BELT LOCKING MECHANISM**. Also see **59, CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST**.

When fitting a child seat in the rear, the front seat must be moved forward and upwards to fit any rear-facing child seats.

Care must be taken not to load any part of the child seat when repositioning the front seat. The space available for front seat occupants is reduced by the fitment of any rearward facing child seat.

If a head restraint has been removed to fit a child seat, make sure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger. See **42, FRONT HEAD RESTRAINT REMOVAL**.

### VEHICLE SPECIFIC INFORMATION

#### ⚠ WARNING

Extreme hazard! Never place a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat. The infant could be seriously injured or killed if the air bag deploys.

## Child safety

### **WARNING**

**Do not fit child restraints on front passenger seats when seat cushion is fully extended. Failure to do so could result in serious injury in the event of an accident.**

### **WARNING**

**All children under the age of 13 should ride in the rear seats. Failure to do so could result in serious injury in the event of an accident.**

**Note:** Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

**Note:** Make sure the child seat fits the child properly. Always check the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions and labels for height and weight limits.

#### **Vehicles with executive class rear seats**

When fitting a child seat to the executive class rear seats, the rear seats should be adjusted as follows:

- Adjust the seatback to an upright position to support the child restraint.
- Adjust the seat to the rearmost position.

**Note:** The center rear seating position is only suitable for use with forward-facing child restraints.

### **CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST**

Every time a child travels in the vehicle, observe the following:

#### **Non-LATCH child restraints**

- Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the restraint system.
- Always use the appropriate child restraints and adjust the harnesses for every child, every trip.
- Make sure that a child falls into the correct weight range for the seat.
- Avoid dressing a child in bulky clothing. Do not place any objects between the child and the restraint system.
- Regularly check the fit of a child seat. Replace child seats or harnesses that show signs of wear.
- Make sure that all the slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Make sure that any belt positioning sliders on the seat belts are adjusted such that there is no slack in the lap belt after fastening.
- No child seat is completely child-proof. Encourage a child not to play with the buckle or harness.
- Never leave a child unsupervised in the vehicle.
- Activate the rear door child safety locks. See **56, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS**.
- Set a good example and always wear a seat belt.

## Child safety

### LATCH child restraints

- Always attach the top tether when fitting the LATCH seat.
- Carefully follow the instructions supplied with the child seat. Always give the LATCH seat a final pull, to make sure that the lower anchors are secure.
- Always use the appropriate child restraints and adjust the harnesses for every child, every trip.
- Make sure that a child falls into the correct weight range for the seat.
- Avoid dressing a child in bulky clothing. Do not place any objects between the child and the restraint system.
- Regularly check the fit of a child seat. Replace child seats and harnesses that show signs of wear.
- No child seat is completely child-proof. Encourage children not to play with the buckle or harness.
- Never leave a child unsupervised in the vehicle.
- Activate the rear door child safety locks. See **56, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS**.
- Set a good example and always wear a seat belt.

### BOOSTER SEATS

A child may be too large to fit into a child safety seat, but too small to safely fit the vehicle's seat belt. In these circumstances, it is recommended that a booster seat is used for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the fitting and use of the booster seat. Adjust the vehicle's seat belt to suit.

If the booster seat is fitted with LATCH connectors, the connectors should be used to secure the seat in conjunction with the seat belt.

### FITTING LATCH CHILD RESTRAINTS

All vehicles

#### WARNING

**Do not attempt to fit LATCH restraints to the center rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold a LATCH restraint in this position. The child could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.**

#### WARNING

**If the child restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking maneuver.**

#### WARNING

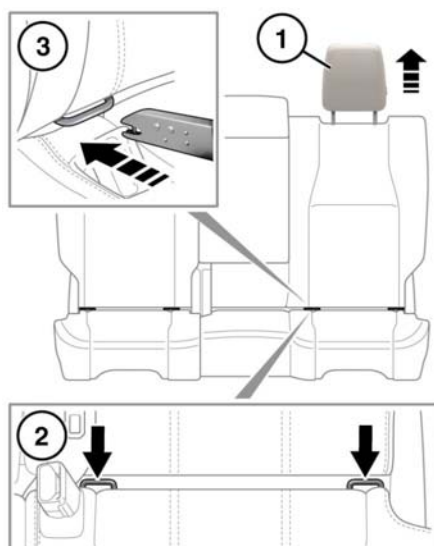
**WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.**

LATCH anchorages are provided at the outer seat positions on the second row seats.



A label displaying the LATCH symbol is sewn into the seats to indicate the position of the LATCH lower anchorages.

## Child safety



E176034

To fit a LATCH child seat without a top tether strap:

1. Raise or remove the head restraint.
2. The LATCH anchor points are located in the fold of the seats.
3. Slide the child seat locking mechanism into the anchor point.

**Note:** Always make sure that if a top tether strap is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.

For child seats fitted with non-rigid LATCH connectors, connect the lower tether strap hooks to the anchor points, and tighten the straps.

Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, the anchor points should be checked visually, to make sure they are correctly attached.

**Note:** For child restraints fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.

### Vehicles with rear bench seats

To fit a LATCH child seat with a top tether strap:

1. Move the front seat fully forward.
2. Place the child restraint as far forward as possible on the seat cushion of the rear seat.
3. Release the rear seatback. See **36, FOLDING AND RAISING THE REAR SEATS**.
4. With the rear seatback remaining partially folded, attach the top tether strap. Do not add tension to the top tether strap at this point. See **62, FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS**.
5. Return the rear seatback to the fully raised position.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Make sure the locking mechanism is fully engaged when the rear seatback is raised. An unsecured seatback may not properly support an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.**

6. Slide the child seat locking mechanism into the anchor points.
7. Return the front seat to its original position.
8. Tension the top tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

**Note:** Always make sure that if a top tether strap is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.

## Child safety

To test the security of the child restraint, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, the anchors should be checked visually to make sure they are correctly attached.

### Vehicles with executive class rear seats

**Note:** LATCH anchorage points are covered by sewn flaps in executive seats. Uncover the anchorages to access and fit child restraints.

To fit an LATCH child seat with a top tether strap:

1. Fit the child restraint securely in one of the rear seating positions.
2. Pass the tether strap over the seatback and beneath the head restraint for the outer seat positions.

**Note:** For the center seat position, make sure that the center head restraint is at its lowest position. Then pass the tether strap over the fixed head restraint.

3. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor point on the back of the seat. Make sure that the tether strap hook is facing toward the back of the seat.
4. Tighten the tether strap, according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

**Note:** Always make sure that if a top tether strap is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.

To test the security of the child restraint, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, the anchors should be checked visually to make sure they are correctly attached.

**Note:** For child restraints fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.

## FITTING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

All vehicles

### ⚠ WARNING

Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps. The child could be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

### ⚠ WARNING

When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seatback and beneath the head restraint. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury.

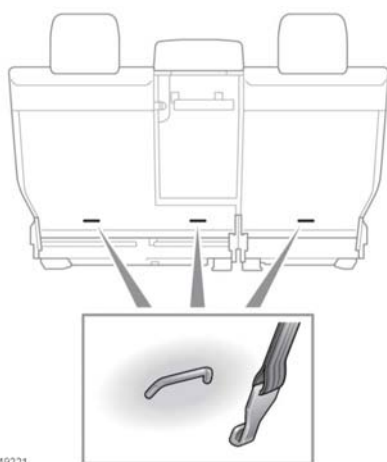
### ⚠ WARNING

If removing a head restraint in order to fit a child restraint, always secure the head restraint when storing it. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury.

## Child safety

### **⚠ WARNING**

Before fitting a child seat or restraint system to the center rear seating position, the center armrest must be raised (stored) into the seatback. In the event of an accident, an unsecured object could cause serious injury.



The vehicle is equipped with anchorage points on the back of the second row seat frames. The anchorage points should be used to attach straps from child seats or restraint systems.

**Note:** Anchorage point locations on the back of the seat frames may vary depending on the specification of the vehicle.

#### **Vehicles with rear bench seats**

To attach a child restraint to an anchorage point:

1. Move the front seat fully forward.

2. Place the child restraint on the rear seat. Place the child restraint as far forward as possible on the seat cushion.
3. Release the rear seatback. See **36, FOLDING AND RAISING THE REAR SEATS**.
4. With the rear seatback semi-folded against the child restraint, attach the top tether strap. For the outboard seats, attach the top tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. For the center seat, pass the top tether over the fixed head restraint. Make sure that the tether strap hook is facing toward the back of the seat. Do not tension the top tether strap at this point.
5. Return the rear seatback to the fully raised position.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure the locking mechanism is fully engaged when the rear seatback is raised. An unsecured seatback may not properly support an occupant during a collision or sudden stop.

6. Tension the top tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
7. Return the front seat to its original position.

**Note:** A tether anchorage is provided for the center seat position. Do not use this anchor position with a LATCH anchorage child seat.

#### **Vehicles with executive class rear seats**

To attach a child restraint to an anchorage point:

1. Fit the child restraint securely in one of the rear seating positions.



## Child safety

2. Pass the tether strap over the seatback and beneath the head restraint for the outer seat positions.

**Note:** For the center seat position, make sure that the center head restraint is at its lowest position. Then pass the tether strap over the fixed head restraint.

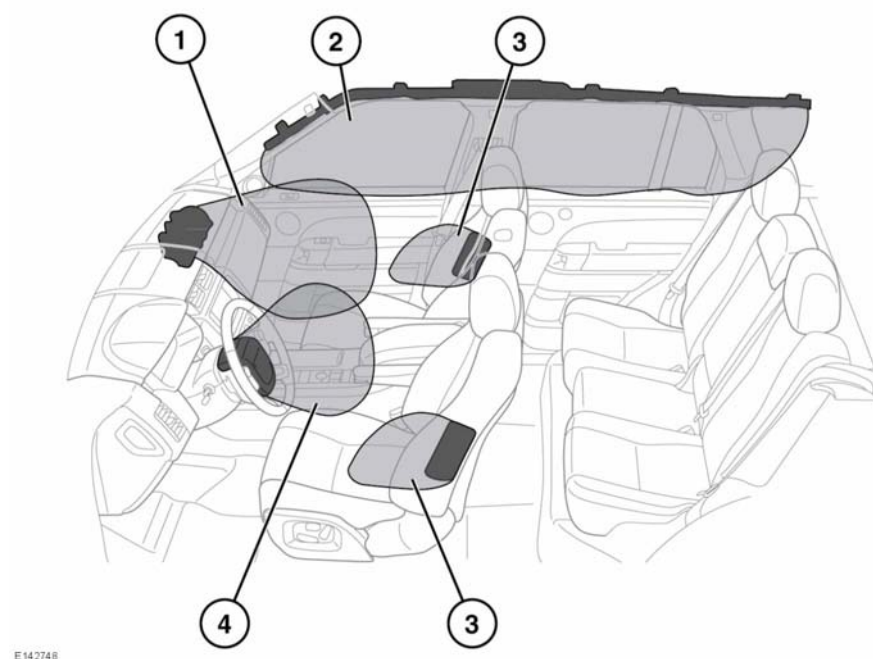
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor point on the back of the seat. Make sure that the tether strap hook is facing toward the back of the seat.
4. Tighten the tether strap, according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

**Note:** A tether anchorage is provided for the center seat position. Do not use this anchor position with a LATCH anchorage child seat.



## Air bags

## AIR BAGS



Air bag locations:

1. Front passenger's air bag.
2. Curtain air bags.
3. Front seat side air bags.
4. Driver's air bag.

**⚠ WARNING**

High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death irrespective of safety features fitted to the vehicle. Always drive with caution and consideration for the vehicle's characteristics, road and weather conditions, and do not exceed any speed limits in force.

**⚠ WARNING**

Seat belts should be worn at all times, by the driver and passengers in all seating positions. The air bag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

**Note:** The general location of air bags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word AIR BAG.

Always contact your retailer/authorized repairer if:

- An air bag inflates.

## Air bags

- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the air bag system shows signs of cracking or damage, including the trim covering the air bags.
- The amber air bag warning lamp illuminates.

### AIR BAG OPERATION

#### **⚠ WARNING**

For the air bags to operate correctly, the roof lining and door pillar trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect fitment should be referred to a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible for examination and repair. An air bag system not operating correctly could result in serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Air bags inflate at high speeds and can cause facial abrasions and other injuries. To minimize the risk of injury, make sure all vehicle occupants, including the driver, wear correctly positioned seat belts. All vehicle occupants, including the driver, must sit correctly in the seats and should position the seats as far back as practical.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Air bag inflation takes place instantaneously and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances, the only protection is provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle.**

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The air bag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver's air bag module.

Air bags provide additional protection in certain types of collision only. Air bags do not replace the need to wear a seat belt. All occupants, in all seating positions, should always wear a seat belt, whether or not an air bag is present in that seating position.

Air bag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following a collision. Collision circumstances, i.e., vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc., vary considerably and affect the rate of deceleration accordingly.

The air bags and SRS are not designed to operate as a result of:

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

## Air bags

Therefore, it follows that considerable superficial damage to the vehicle can occur, without causing the air bags to deploy.

**Note:** *If, as a result of an impact, you believe the air bags should have deployed and they failed to do so, please call: 1-800-637-6837. A Jaguar Land Rover representative will offer advice or arrange to inspect the vehicle.*

### AIR BAG OBSTRUCTION

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not obstruct air bag operation by placing any part of the body or any objects in contact with, or close to, an air bag module. If an air bag inflates, objects or any part of an occupant could interfere with the inflation of the air bag. Objects, or any part of the body, could also be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury to the occupants.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not allow passengers or objects to obstruct the operation of the air bags. Do not place objects, or any parts of the body, e.g., feet or knees, in contact with, or in close proximity to, an air bag module. If the air bag inflates, obstructions could interfere with the inflation of the air bag. Any obstructions could also be propelled inside the vehicle, potentially causing injury to the occupants.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not place objects between an air bag module and a seat occupant. Objects placed in this position could interfere with the inflation of the air bag or be propelled inside the vehicle, potentially causing injury to the occupants.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not use non-approved or accessory seat covers that have not been designed for use with air bags. Non-approved seat covers or accessories could interfere with air bag operation. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure that a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle and the head and torso. The gap enables unobstructed inflation of the curtain and seat-mounted side air bags. Failure to maintain a gap may result in injury to the occupant in the event of an accident.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not attach or position items on, or close to, the roof lining, front seatbacks, or to an air bag cover. Items in these positions could interfere with the inflation of the air bag or be propelled inside the vehicle, potentially causing injury to the occupants.

**Note:** *Unauthorized modifications of the vehicle or parts may invalidate the vehicle's warranty.*

Air bags cannot deploy correctly if obstructed. Examples of obstructions are:



## Air bags

- Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an air bag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an air bag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions, or other material covering seat-mounted air bags.
- Seat covers which are not approved or specifically designed for use with seat-mounted air bags.

The above list is not exhaustive. The driver and passengers are responsible for making sure that the air bags are not obstructed in any way.

### DRIVER'S AIR BAG

The single stage driver's air bag deploys, depending on the severity of the frontal impact.

### FRONT PASSENGER'S AIR BAG

The front passenger's air bag is able to deploy in two stages, depending on the severity of the frontal impact. In a severe impact, the front passenger's air bag inflates fully to offer maximum protection. In a lesser impact, full deployment is not required, so the air bag only partially inflates.

### SIDE AIR BAGS

The side air bags are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso. In general, the side air bags deploy in the event of a side impact, and then only on the side of the impact.

### CURTAIN AIR BAGS

#### WARNING

**For the curtain air bags to deploy correctly, the roof lining and A pillar trim must be undamaged and fitted correctly. Any damage or suspect fitting should be referred to a retailer/ authorized repairer for examination. An air bag system not operating correctly could result in serious injury or death in the event of an accident.**

The curtain air bags deploy in side impact and rollover events, providing greater protection from serious head injuries.

**Note:** *Curtain air bags do not only inflate as a result of side impacts and rollover events. The curtain air bags may deploy in some frontal impacts.*

### AIR BAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS

#### WARNING

**When an air bag inflates, a fine powder is released. Release of fine powder is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. The powder can cause breathing difficulties for asthma sufferers or other people with respiratory problems. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, or get fresh air by opening a window. If breathing problems persist, seek medical attention.**

## Air bags

### **⚠️ WARNING**

Air bag deployment is accompanied by a very loud noise, which may cause discomfort and temporary loss of hearing.

### **⚠️ WARNING**

After inflation, some air bag components are very hot. Do not touch the air bag components until the components have cooled sufficiently, as this may result in an injury.

After inflation, the front and seat-mounted side air bags deflate immediately. Deflation provides a gradual cushioning effect for the occupants and also makes sure the driver's forward vision is not obscured.

### **AIR BAG WARNING LAMP**

### **⚠️ WARNING**

Even with advanced air bags, children can be seriously injured or killed. Never place a child in any type of child restraint or booster seat in the front passenger seat. Children under the age of 13 should always travel in a rear seat.

### **⚠️ WARNING**

The warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle's restraint system, which could result in serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

### **⚠️ WARNING**

If the warning lamp indicates that a fault is present in the system, do not use a child restraint on the front passenger seat. In the event of an accident, serious injury or death could result.

The instrument panel displays an air bag warning lamp and illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. See **84, AIR BAG (AMBER)**.

If any of the following warning lamp conditions occur, consult a retailer/authorized repairer immediately:

- The warning lamp fails to illuminate when the ignition is switched on.
- The warning lamp fails to extinguish within 6 seconds of the ignition being switched on.
- The warning lamp illuminates at any time other than the bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

When the ignition is switched on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. The elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) being monitored include:

- SRS warning indicator.
- Rotary coupler.
- Air bag modules.
- Front and outboard rear seat belt pretensioners.
- Front seat buckle switches.
- Front seat track position sensor.
- Air bag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash and rollover sensors.
- Air bag wiring harness.
- Seat occupancy sensor.
- Front passenger belt tension sensor.
- Air bag status indicator.

## Air bags

### OCCUPANT SENSING

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child restraint system. Children should be placed in an age and weight appropriate child restraint system and should be secured in a rear seating position.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Extreme hazard! Never place a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat. The infant could be seriously injured or killed if the air bag deploys.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

For optimum safety, children under the age of 13 should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times. Front passenger seat travel is not recommended. An inflating air bag could cause injury or death to children traveling in the front passenger seat.

The front passenger seat is fitted with an occupancy sensor system that determines if:

- The seat is unoccupied.
- The seat is occupied by a person or object of low weight, or a child seat.
- The seat is occupied by a heavier person or object.

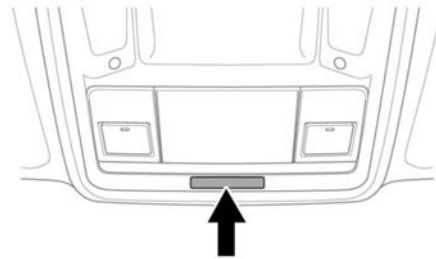
The system consists of:

- A weight sensing pressure pad fitted under the front passenger seat cushion. The sensor measures downward pressure and weight on the seat cushion.

- A seat belt tension sensor integrated into the anchor point of the front passenger seat belt.
- A control unit fitted under the front passenger seat.
- An air bag status indicator lamp, mounted in the roof console.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure the ignition is switched on when checking the operational status of the front passenger air bag.



E163315

## Air bags

### Operational states

There are three operational states. The operational states are shown in the following table:

Occupancy status	Passenger air bag status	Status indicator display
Completely empty.	Deactivated.	PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF *
Child restraint, or low weight occupant or object.	Deactivated.	PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF
Heavy occupant or object.	Activated.	ON PASSENGER AIRBAG **

\* If the status lamp shows that the air bag is off with a seated adult in the front passenger seat, contact a retailer/authorized repairer immediately.

\*\* Displays for 60 seconds, followed by no display.

### AIR BAG SERVICE INFORMATION

#### WARNING

Phone systems should only be fitted by qualified persons familiar with the operation of, and requirements for, vehicles fitted with a Supplementary Restraint System (SRS). Incorrect modifications may result in death or serious injury in the event of an accident. If in any doubt, seek advice from a retailer/authorized repairer.

#### WARNING

Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any part of the SRS. Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with any wiring or components in the vicinity of the SRS. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative, either of which may result in serious injury or death.

#### WARNING

Do not use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of any SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative, either of which may result in serious injury or death.



## Air bags

### **WARNING**

For personal safety reasons, all of the following operations should only be carried out by a retailer/authorized repairer or a suitably qualified person:

- Removal, or repair, of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any SRS components.
- Fitment of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.
- Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle's exterior.
- Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

Always contact a retailer/authorized repairer if:

- An air bag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the air bag SRS shows signs of cracking or damage, including the trim covering the air bags.

### **DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS**

#### **WARNING**

Occupants, with disabilities that may require the vehicle to be modified, must contact a retailer/authorized repairer before any modifications are made. Failure to do so could result in the vehicle being rendered unsafe, potentially leading to personal injury. Modifications may adversely affect the vehicle, which can lead to a loss of control, resulting in a crash.

**USA only:** If you are considering modifying the vehicle in any way to accommodate a disability, e.g., by altering or adapting the driver's or passenger's seat(s) or air bag system, please contact:

**Jaguar Land Rover North America LLC**  
**Customer Relationship Center**  
**555 MacArthur Blvd**  
**Mahwah**  
**New Jersey 07430-2327**  
**1-800-637-6837, option #9.**



## Instrument panel

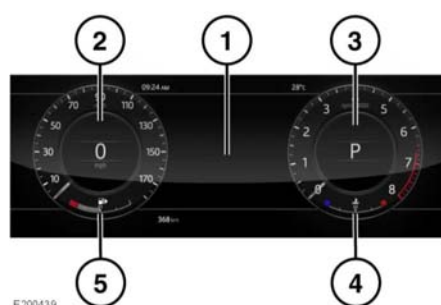
### INSTRUMENT PANEL

The instrument panel displays information, warnings, and menu options to the driver. See **82, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**.

To configure the interactive driver display layout to suit personal preferences, select the **Display** and **Display layout** instrument panel menus. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

**Note:** The displayed information automatically changes position, format, and content amount for each display layout option.

Select the **Display** and **Units** instrument panel menus to configure the instrument panel to display in miles or km. The temperature and tire pressure units can also be configured.



The components of the instrument panel are as follows:

1. Information panel: Displays information and menu selection options. To configure the information panel display to suit personal preferences, select the **Display** and **Info panel** instrument panel menus.
2. Speedometer: Displays the current vehicle speed. The speedometer displays can be configured to use mph or km/h. Select the **Speedometer** option via the **Display** and **Units** instrument panel menus.
3. Tachometer: Displays the current engine speed, i.e., revolutions per minute (rpm).
4. Temperature gauge: Displays the current engine temperature. If the pointer moves onto the red line, the engine is overheating. In this event, the instrument panel illuminates the engine temperature warning lamp. See **84, ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)**. If the engine overheats, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If the temperature does not reduce after several minutes, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.
5. Fuel gauge: Displays the current fuel tank level.

#### NOTICE

Serious engine damage occurs if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

**Note:** In the event of the engine overheating, a reduction in engine performance may occur. The Air Conditioning (A/C) system may also cease operation, to reduce the load on the engine and assist with engine cooling.

## Instrument panel

An arrowhead symbol, next to the fuel pump symbol, indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located. If the instrument panel illuminates the low fuel warning lamp, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. See **87, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.

To view the approximate driving distance for the current fuel level, press the trip button to select the **Range** trip content option. See **77, USING THE TRIP COMPUTER**.

### NOTICE

*Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. Doing so may cause serious damage to the vehicle's fuel system.*

### INSTRUMENT PANEL: HYBRID VEHICLES

To configure the hybrid content display, select the **Display** and **Hybrid content** instrument panel menus. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Select the required menu option display:

- **Full hybrid display:** The power gauge for the hybrid system is displayed, replacing the tachometer gauge.
- **Reduced hybrid display:** The tachometer is displayed, replacing the hybrid power gauge.

The power gauge and the tachometer only display in the **Two dial** or **One dial** display layout options. If required, select the **Display** and **Display layout** instrument panel menus.

The tachometer automatically replaces the power gauge display in the event that:

- The dynamic driving program is selected. See **195, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

- The steering wheel paddle-shifts are used to change gear with Sport (S) selected. See **176, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION**.

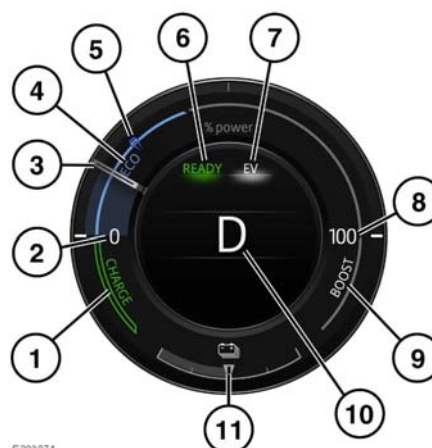
Some information displays in both of the hybrid display options, as follows:

- The **OFF** and **READY** status.
- Gear selector status display.
- The hybrid battery charge gauge.
- The temperature gauge, if the current engine temperature exceeds normal operating temperatures.

The instrument panel displays the current hybrid battery charge and the total driving distance. The position and format changes for some **Display layout** instrument panel options.

The instrument panel displays hybrid information and the battery charge status when the vehicle is charged via an external power source. For example, connected to a charging station using the vehicle's charging cable. See **152, CONNECTING A CHARGING CABLE**.

### Hybrid power gauge



E203074

## Instrument panel

The hybrid power gauge displays information for the operation of the hybrid system.

The following information is displayed:

1. **CHARGE** zone: When the vehicle is decelerating during braking or overrun, the electric motor regenerates energy and supplies a charge to the hybrid battery. The charge zone indicates the instantaneous amount of the regenerated energy.
2. **0% POWER**: Indicates when there is no energy being consumed or regenerated.
3. Power gauge marker: Moves to indicate the current power being delivered by the engine and the electric motor.
4. **ECO** zone: Driving in this zone helps to reduce energy consumption.
5. Engine start marker: Displays when the Electric Vehicle (EV) mode is active and indicates the maximum power output of the electric motor. If the current power demand exceeds the start marker position, the engine is started for temporary use. In this event the EV mode is suspended and the engine start marker illuminates gray. If the EV mode is deselected or canceled the engine start marker extinguishes.
6. **READY** or **OFF** status: Indicates when the vehicle is ready to be driven.
7. **EV**: Illuminates to confirm selection of the EV mode via the center console button. See **166, ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV) MODE**.  
If selected, **SAVE** replaces **EV**. See **163, SAVE**.

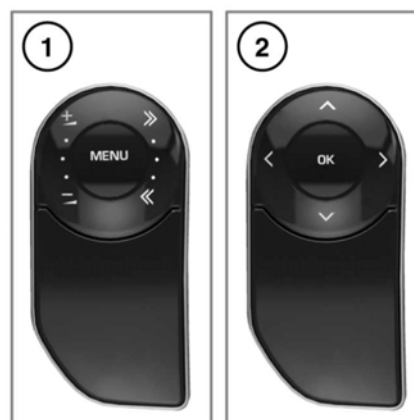
8. **100% POWER**: Indicates the maximum power output for the engine.
9. **BOOST** zone: Indicates when the engine and the electric motor are combined to increase the total power output.
10. Gear selector status display.
11. Hybrid battery charge gauge: Indicates the state of charge.

### INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Do not operate the instrument panel controls while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction, potentially resulting in an accident and causing serious injury or death.**

Use the instrument panel menus to configure the instrument panel display and some vehicle features. Use the controls mounted on the left side of the steering wheel to display and navigate through the instrument panel menus.



E200493



## Instrument panel

Operate the instrument panel menus as follows:

1. **MENU** button: Press and release to display the instrument panel menus. The instrument panel displays the menu list. The **MENU** button extinguishes and the **OK** button illuminates. The **MENU** button does not illuminate if the instrument panel displays any warning or information messages. In this event, the **OK** button illuminates instead of the **MENU** button. Press the **OK** button to clear each message after reading and taking any required action. See **76, WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES**.
2. Operate the buttons as follows:
  - **OK** button: Press and release to select a highlighted menu item.
  - **▲** button: Press and release, or press and hold, to scroll up a menu list to highlight the required menu.
  - **▼** button: Press and release, or press and hold, to scroll down a menu list to highlight the required menu.
  - **>** button: Press and release to view the sub-list for the highlighted menu. Alternatively, press the **OK** button. Scroll up or down to the required option.
  - **<** button: Press and release to return to the previous menu.
  - **<** button: Press and hold to close and exit the instrument panel menus. The **OK** button extinguishes and the **MENU** button illuminates to confirm deselection.

The displayed menu options are as follows:

- **Phone:** Only available when a phone is connected.
- **Media.**
- **Driver assistance.**
- **Trip.**
- **Display.** The interactive driver display is configurable. Use the **Display layout** menu to select a **Two dial**, **One dial**, **Full map**, **Media**, or a **Driver assistance** view.
- **Head-up display.**
- **Vehicle settings.**

### **WARNING**

Before making any changes to the **Vehicle settings**, make sure to read and fully understand the relevant sections and topics of the **Owner's Handbook**. Failure to do so can lead to serious injury or death.

- **Vehicle info:** Some options are only available before the engine starts.

### **WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES**

#### **WARNING**

Do not ignore any warning or information messages displayed in the instrument panel. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in death, serious injury, or serious damage to the vehicle.

The instrument panel displays warning messages if specific driver action is required, or to accompany illuminated warning lamps. For example, in the event that a vehicle system fault is detected.

## Instrument panel

The instrument panel displays information messages if specific driver action is required, or for driver information. For example, to confirm and assist with the selection or deselection of some vehicle features.

To extinguish an instrument panel warning or information message, press the **OK** button on the steering wheel controls.

**Note:** *Extinguishing displayed warning and information messages does not clear or rectify a detected fault.*

**Note:** *If a warning message is manually extinguished, the instrument panel illuminates an amber or red warning lamp until the cause of the message is rectified.*

If a persistent fault is detected, the warning message displays each time the ignition is switched on. In this event, follow any on-screen instructions or seek qualified assistance.

Instrument panel messages are displayed in order of importance. If more than one instrument panel message is active, each message is displayed in turn for 2 seconds. High importance warning messages are displayed first. The displayed warning messages can also be accompanied by an audible tone.

Some warning messages can also display the handbook symbol. For information regarding warning messages and any action required, refer to the warning and information lamps section of the Owner's Handbook. Follow any on-screen instructions, if displayed. The instrument panel displays a warning message until the detected fault is rectified.

### USING THE TRIP COMPUTER

The trip computer displays information and stores data for a series of trips.

A trip is the distance traveled since the last memory reset via the trip computer. The maximum trip distance display is 9 999.9 (km or miles). The trip distance then automatically resets to zero.

Select the **Trip** and **Trip bank** instrument panel menus to display the required trip, i.e., **Trip A**, **Trip B**, or **Trip Auto**. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The trip computer can be configured to display the trip units in miles or km. Select the **Trip** and **Units** instrument panel menus.

To configure the trip content options to be available for display in the instrument panel, select the **Trip** and **Content** instrument panel menus.



E197183

Press and release the trip button to change the trip content option displayed in the instrument panel.

The available trip content options are as follows:

- **Date.**
- **Average speed.**
- **Average economy.**
- **Instantaneous economy.**
- **Range.**

## Instrument panel

- **Battery range:** Hybrid vehicles only.
- **Driving style.**
- **Trip distance.**

Some of the trip content values can be reset to zero. Select and display the relevant trip content option. Press and hold the trip buttons for 2 seconds.

The distance, average speed, and average fuel economy values for the trips can be reset. Set the trip computer display to show the required trip to reset. Press and hold the trip button until the instrument panel displays the **Resetting** message.

Select the **Trip** and **Trip Auto** instrument panel menus to automatically reset **Trip Auto** each time the ignition is switched on.

Select the **Trip bank** and **Trip Auto** instrument panel menus to add, or remove, another trip figure to the **Trip Auto** figure. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second, when the **Trip Auto** values for distance, average speed, and average fuel economy are displayed. The instrument panel displays either the **Adding last journey** or **Removing last journey** message. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second to select the desired option. The previous trip information is added to, or removed from, the **Trip Auto** value. The new total is displayed. There is no limit to the number of times this can be done before the ignition is switched off.

### RANGE

The **Range** and **Battery range** displays show the predicted distance in miles or km that the vehicle can travel. See **77, USING THE TRIP COMPUTER**.



**Range:** Displays the total predicted driving distance for the current fuel tank level and the amount of charge in the hybrid battery.



**Battery range:** Displays the predicted driving distance for the amount of charge in the hybrid battery.

### DRIVING STYLE

The driving style display shows an instantaneous rating for the accelerator pedal position, engine and vehicle speed, and braking behavior compared to economical driving principles.

The ECO data feature consists of various information display screens that provide extra vehicle efficiency data and guidance. Select **Eco Data** from the touchscreen's **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

### SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

The next oil service interval can be displayed via the **Vehicle info** and **Next service** instrument panel menus. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

**Note:** *Dependent on the vehicle's specification, other fluid intervals and capacities may also be displayed.*

The oil service interval displays as a distance left until the service is due. If the distance is exceeded, the display shows a negative (-) value to indicate that a service is overdue.

## Instrument panel

### HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)

#### WARNING

**Do not operate or adjust the Head-Up Display (HUD) system while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction, potentially resulting in an accident and causing serious injury or death.**

**Note:** The HUD system may take more time to display in extreme temperatures, allowing the system to operate at the correct temperatures.

**Note:** The full HUD image may not be viewed correctly while wearing polarized sunglasses.

**Note:** Do not place anything over the HUD unit, which is located above the instrument panel, next to the windshield.

**Note:** In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the HUD system when it is safe to do so.

The HUD system projects some of the information currently displayed in the instrument panel onto the inside of the windshield.

Use the **Head-up display** and **Enable HUD** instrument panel menus to switch the HUD system **On** or **Off**. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The HUD system also displays some instrument panel warning lamps. See **82, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS**.

Use the **Head-up display** and **HUD content** instrument panel menus to view a list of vehicle features for the HUD system to display. Select the required **On** or **Off** option for each feature. The HUD system only displays the vehicle features that are currently displayed in the instrument panel.

**Note:** The position and format of the displayed HUD information varies due to priority and the number of features currently switched on or off.

Setting the correct HUD position is important. The correct position is dependent on a number of conditions, including the height of the driver and the seat position.

**Note:** Before setting the position of the HUD, make sure that the driver's seat is correctly positioned. The HUD level should be set horizontally, within the driver's vision.

Use the **Head-up display** and **Position** instrument panel menus to set the HUD position. Follow the on-screen instructions to adjust the HUD position using the steering wheel controls. Press the **OK** button to confirm and exit the menu. Preferences are stored using the driver's seat memory store button. See **30, SEAT POSITION MEMORY**.

The brightness of the HUD display is set automatically to suit the current ambient light conditions. To manually adjust the brightness, use the **Head-up display** and **Brightness** instrument panel menus. Follow the on-screen instructions to adjust the HUD brightness using the steering wheel controls. Press the **OK** button to confirm and exit the menu.

The speedometer units displayed in the HUD system are the same as the instrument panel's speedometer units.

If cleaning is required, follow the cleaning instructions. See **392, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS**.

## Warning and information lamps

### OVERVIEW

The following warning and information lamps may illuminate in the instrument panel:



See 82, BATTERY CHARGE (RED).



USA: See 83, BRAKE (RED).



See 83, CHARGING STATUS (RED).



Canada: See 83, BRAKE (RED).



See 83, CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED).



See 83, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED).



USA: 83, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED).



Canada: See 83, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED).



See 84, ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED).



See 83, EXHAUST FILTER (RED).



See 84, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED).



See 84, LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED).



See 84, SEAT BELT (RED).



See 84, AIR BAG (AMBER).



See 85, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER).



See 85, ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER).



See 85, AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER (ASL) (AMBER).



USA: See 85, BRAKE (AMBER).



Canada: See 85, BRAKE (AMBER).



85, CHARGING STATUS (AMBER).



See 85, CHECK ENGINE (AMBER).



See 86, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER).



See 86, DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (AMBER).



See 86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER).



See 86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER).



See 86, EXHAUST FILTER (AMBER).



## Warning and information lamps

	See 86, EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER).		See 88, GEARSHIFT (GREEN).
	See 87, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER).		See 88, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN).
	See 87, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER).		See 88, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN).
	See 87, GLOW PLUGS (AMBER).		See 89, LOW RANGE (GREEN).
	See 84, SPEED LIMITER (AMBER).		See 88, STEERING ASSIST ACTIVE (GREEN).
	See 87, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER).		See 89, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN).
	See 87, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER).		See 89, TRAILER TURN SIGNALS (GREEN).
	See 87, TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW).		See 89, TURN SIGNALS (GREEN).
	See 87, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (GREEN).		See 89, HIGH BEAM (BLUE).
	See 87, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN).		See 89, TIMED CHARGING (BLUE).
	See 87, CHARGING STATUS (GREEN).		See 89, PARK ASSIST AUTO SEARCH (BLUE).
	See 88, CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN).		See 90, FOLLOW MODE OFF (WHITE).
	See 88, EXHAUST FILTER (GREEN).		See 86, DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (AMBER).

## Warning and information lamps



See **89, STEERING ASSIST NOT ACTIVE (GRAY)**



See **90, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)**.



See **90, CHARGING STATUS (WHITE)**.



See **90, REMAINING CHARGE TIME (WHITE)**.

### WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Do not ignore warning lamps or indicators. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury, or serious damage to the vehicle.**

Red warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance before continuing.

Amber and yellow warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is in operation, and others indicate that the driver must take action and then seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

Green and blue lamps within the instrument panel indicate a system's status.

### LAMP CHECK

A bulb check is initiated for some warning lamps when the ignition is switched on. The check lasts for 3 seconds, except for the air bag warning lamp which remains on for 6 seconds. If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed in the instrument panel.

**Note:** Not all warning lamps are included in the check, e.g., high beam headlights and turn signals.

**Note:** If a trailer with LED lights is connected to the trailer socket, the bulb check may not be performed.

### BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



The battery charge warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

The lamp extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on, or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system. The instrument panel displays a warning message. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

## Warning and information lamps

### BRAKE (RED)

#### WARNING

Do not drive if the message **LOW BRAKE FLUID** is displayed. Check the brake fluid level and top up as necessary. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing. Driving with low brake fluid can cause increased braking distance or brake failure, and can result in a collision, leading to serious injury or death.



USA.



Canada.

The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the braking system.

Stop the vehicle, as soon as safety permits. Check and top up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

### CHARGING STATUS (RED)



The charging status warning lamp illuminates red and flashes to indicate a charging fault.

In this event, check for correct connection of the charging cable. If the fault persists consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

### CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



The critical warning message lamp illuminates when a relevant message displays in the instrument panel.

### DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) warning lamp illuminates to warn the driver that the level of DEF is seriously low.

The warning lamp also illuminates if the incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or if there is a fault with the system.

The lamp is accompanied by messages in the instrument panel. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

### EXHAUST FILTER (RED)



The exhaust filter warning lamp illuminates when the exhaust filter is full or there is a fault with the exhaust filter system.

Depending on severity, the lamp may be accompanied by a chime and a message in the instrument panel. Seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity.

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)



USA.



Canada.

## Warning and information lamps

The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) warning lamp illuminates if the EPB is correctly applied.

If the lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

### ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)



The engine temperature warning lamp illuminates when the engine's temperature is too high.

The instrument panel also displays the message **ENGINE OVERHEATING**.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

### LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)



The red lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the vehicle crosses a lane marking without the appropriate turn signal being operated.

Illumination of the lamp is accompanied by a vibration, through the steering wheel.

The left or right lane illuminates, depending on which lane boundary being crossed.

### LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



If the low oil pressure warning lamp flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits. Switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top up the oil level, if necessary. Start the engine. If the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately. Seek qualified assistance before continuing.

### SEAT BELT (RED)



The seat belt warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a chime, when the vehicle is in motion and an occupied seat belt is unbuckled.

The lamp extinguishes when the relevant seat belt is buckled.

**Note:** Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See **49, USING THE SEAT BELTS**.

### SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)



The speed limiter lamp illuminates when the speed limiter is active.

### AIR BAG (AMBER)



The air bag warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on. The lamp extinguishes after 6 seconds.

If the lamp illuminates again, after the bulb check or when driving, there is a fault with the air bag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

## Warning and information lamps

### ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER)



The All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) lamp illuminates to confirm that the ATPC system is enabled.

### ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)

#### ⚠ WARNING

If the ABS and brake warning lamps are illuminated at the same time, do not drive the vehicle until the fault is rectified as the brake system may not be functioning correctly. This may, in turn, lead to loss of control causing an accident, potentially resulting in serious injury or death. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

#### ⚠ WARNING

It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.



The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on, or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the ABS. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

### AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER (ASL) (AMBER)



The Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL) lamp illuminates when the ASL is active.

### BRAKE (AMBER)



USA.



Canada.

The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates after starting the engine or while driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the braking system. The vehicle can still be driven with care. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

### CHARGING STATUS (AMBER)



The charging status warning lamp illuminates amber to indicate that the hybrid battery is charging.

### CHECK ENGINE (AMBER)



The check engine warning lamp illuminates when the ignition is switched on.

## Warning and information lamps

The lamp remains illuminated until the engine starts. If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, an emissions-related fault has been detected. The vehicle remains safe to drive with the lamp illuminated, although qualified assistance should be sought as soon as possible. With the lamp illuminated, the engine may enter limp-home mode. Limp-home mode reduces vehicle performance to safeguard against any further damage to the vehicle. If the check engine warning lamp flashes when the engine is running, reduce the vehicle's speed as soon as it is safe to do so. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

### DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) warning lamp illuminates to warn the driver that the level of DEF is starting to run low.

The warning lamp also illuminates if the incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or if there is a fault with the system.

The lamp is accompanied by messages in the instrument panel. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so.

### EXHAUST FILTER (AMBER)



The exhaust filter warning lamp illuminates when the exhaust filter has failed to regenerate and is starting to become full.

The lamp is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel. Follow the on-screen messages, if safe to do so.

### DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (AMBER)



The driver condition monitor warning lamp illuminates when the driver condition monitor system determines that the driver is presenting signs of tiredness.

The lamp is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel.

### DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) lamp flashes when the system is active.

If there is a fault with the system, it remains illuminated and the instrument panel displays **DSC NOT AVAILABLE**.

The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

### DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) OFF lamp illuminates when the system is switched off.

The lamp is accompanied by a chime and a confirmation message in the instrument panel.

### EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)



The external temperature lamp illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

## Warning and information lamps

### FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)



The follow mode lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is in follow mode.

### GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



The general warning and information message lamp illuminates when a non-critical warning message or an information message is displayed in the instrument panel.

### GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)



The glow plug lamp illuminates when the ignition is switched on, to indicate that the diesel engine glow plugs are active.

### LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)



The low fuel warning lamp illuminates when the fuel level is low. Refuel at the earliest opportunity.

The arrow shows which side of the vehicle to locate the fuel filler cap.

### REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)



The rear fog lights lamp illuminates when the rear fog lights are switched on.

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)



The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) lamp illuminates to warn that one or more tires are significantly under-inflated.

The lamp is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel.

Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, when safe to do so. Check the tire pressures.

Inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp flashes to indicate a system fault.

### AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (GREEN)



The Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) lamp illuminates when the AHBA feature is active.

### AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)



The auto stop/start lamp illuminates when the engine is shut down by the auto stop/start system.

**Note:** Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown do not illuminate during an engine shutdown enabled by the auto stop/start system.

### CHARGING STATUS (GREEN)



The charging status lamp illuminates green and flashes to indicate that the hybrid battery is charging.

The lamp constantly illuminates when the hybrid battery is fully charged.

## Warning and information lamps

### STEERING ASSIST ACTIVE (GREEN)



The instrument panel illuminates the adaptive cruise control with steering assist active lamp when the feature is active.

### CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)



The cruise control lamp illuminates when cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.

### EXHAUST FILTER (GREEN)



The exhaust filter lamp illuminates briefly when a successful exhaust filter regeneration process has been carried out.

### DIPPED BEAM (GREEN)



The dipped beam lamp illuminates when the dipped beam headlights are switched on.

### FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)



The front fog lights lamp illuminates when the front fog lights are switched on.

### GEARSHIFT (GREEN)

#### ⚠ WARNING

**The warning indicator is only a guide. It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions, otherwise an accident can happen, potentially causing serious injury or death.**



The gearshift indicator lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (up-shift).

The gearshift indicator lamp does not illuminate while cruise control is active and is not being overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal.

### HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)



The Hill Descent Control (HDC) lamp illuminates continuously when the HDC system is selected and HDC operating conditions are met.

If the lamp flashes, HDC has been selected, but the operating conditions are not being met or HDC fade-out is occurring.

### LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)



The green lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the feature is enabled and the system is tracking the lanes.



## Warning and information lamps

### LOW RANGE (GREEN)



The low range lamp illuminates when low range has been selected.

### SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)



The side lights lamp illuminates when the side lights are switched on.

### TRAILER TURN SIGNALS (GREEN)



The trailer turn signals lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on. The lamp extinguishes when the engine is started.

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp flashes in conjunction with the turn signal warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the turn signal bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

**Note:** If the attached and connected trailer is fitted with LED lights, the bulb check may not be performed.

### TURN SIGNALS (GREEN)



The appropriate turn signals lamp, left or right, flashes when the column control is moved up or down to signal a turn.

If a turn signal bulb fails, the audible ticking sounds and the warning lamp flashes at twice the normal rate, when that turn signal is selected.

### HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



The high beam lamp illuminates when the high beam headlights are switched on or flashed.

### TIMED CHARGING (BLUE)



The timed charging lamp illuminates and flashes to indicate that a timed charging event is scheduled.

### PARK ASSIST AUTO SEARCH (BLUE)



The **park assist auto-search** icon provides information to the driver that valid parking spaces are being searched for. **314, USING PARK ASSIST**

### STEERING ASSIST NOT ACTIVE (GRAY)



The instrument panel illuminates the adaptive cruise control with steering assist not active lamp when the feature is not active because Lane Keep Assist is not active.

### AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)



The auto stop/start inhibit lamp illuminates when the auto stop/start system is active but a vehicle system requires the engine to run.

## Warning and information lamps

### AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)



The auto stop/start off lamp illuminates when the auto stop/start system is switched off by the driver.

### CHARGING STATUS (WHITE)



The charging status lamp illuminates white to indicate that the vehicle is connected to an external charger and the charging process is initiating, or if charging is paused.

### REMAINING CHARGE TIME (WHITE)



The remaining charge time lamp illuminates to indicate the remaining charge time for the current charging session.

### FOLLOW MODE OFF (WHITE)



The follow mode OFF lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is disabled.

### DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR (WHITE)

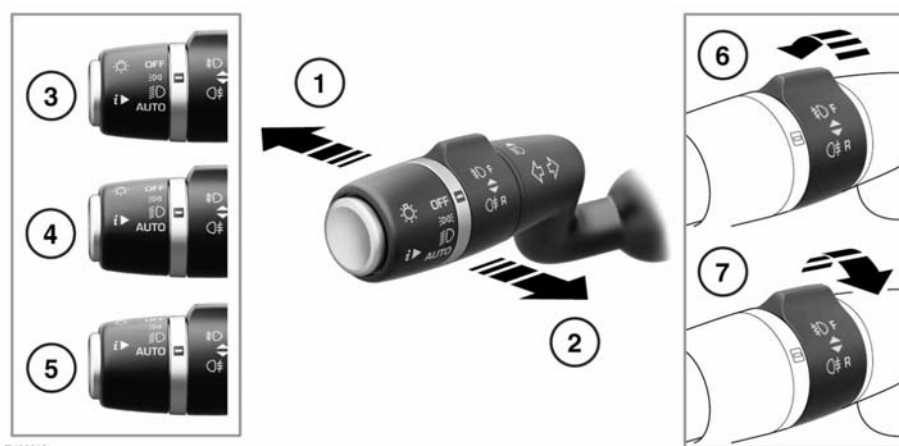


The driver condition monitor warning lamp illuminates when the driver condition monitor system determines the driver is presenting signs of tiredness.

The lamp is accompanied by a message in the instrument panel.

## Exterior lights

### LIGHTING CONTROL



Lighting control operation:

1. With the headlights on, push the lighting control away from the steering wheel to select high beam. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **89, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**.

**Note:** Do not use high beam where it may distract other road users.

2. Pull the lighting control towards the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. High beam remains on for as long as the lighting control is held.
3. Side lights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the side lights on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **89, SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)**.
4. Headlights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the headlights on.

5. **AUTO:** Rotate the lighting control to this position to select auto lights. When ambient light fades and the ignition is switched on, the side lights, rear lights, dipped beam headlights, and license plate lights switch on automatically. Headlight courtesy delay, Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) may also be activated.

**Note:** Low exterior light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause the auto lights to activate.

6. Front fog lights: Operate only while the side lights, headlights, or auto lights are selected. Turn the collar away from the steering wheel and release to switch on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **88, FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)**. To switch off the front fog lights, turn the collar away from the steering wheel again, and release.

## Exterior lights

7. Rear fog lights: Operate only while the side lights, headlights, or auto lights are selected. Turn the collar towards the steering wheel and release to switch on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See **87, REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)**.

To switch off the rear fog lights: Turn the collar towards the steering wheel again, and release.

In the event of a bulb failure, please note that some bulbs are replaceable only by a retailer/authorized repairer. See **385, CHANGING A BULB**.

### DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS (DRL)

With the lighting control in the **OFF** position, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) switch on automatically under the following conditions:

- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is not in Park (**P**).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is not applied. Market dependent.
- Auto lights are selected and high ambient light levels are detected.



Unless required or prohibited by law, the DRL can be disabled or enabled by a retailer/authorized repairer.

### HEADLIGHT COURTESY DELAY

The headlight courtesy delay feature operates whenever the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position and the ignition is switched off. The headlights remain illuminated for up to 240 seconds.

**Note:** The time delay may be changed via the **Vehicle settings** menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

To switch off courtesy delay, press the headlight button on the smart key.

### AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA)

**Note:** It is not recommended that AHBA is used while driving off road.

**Note:** Make sure to defrost the windshield during winter conditions.

**Note:** The system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all possible circumstances. It remains the driver's responsibility to use the headlights correctly at all times.

**Note:** Make sure that the forward-facing sensors on the back of the rear-view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.

AHBA feature can be disabled or enabled via the **Vehicle settings** menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The AHBA feature automatically selects and deselects high beam under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle's lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level.

Auto high beam sensitivity can be adjusted via the **Vehicle settings** menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

To adjust the auto high beam sensitivity, press **Vehicle settings** and select the **Exterior lighting** menu item. Select the **Auto High Beam Sensitivity** menu item.

**Note:** The **Auto High Beam Sensitivity** menu item is only available when the ignition is switched on and the engine is not running. The sensitivity resets to normal after a power cycle.

## Exterior lights

**Note:** The auto high beam system is prone to unintended beam switching when not in normal sensitivity.

For AHBA to become operational, the lighting control must be in the **AUTO** position (5), with dipped beam headlights selected.

The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates when AHBA is selected. See **87, AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (GREEN)**.

AHBA only activates when the vehicle's speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h). The system deactivates when the vehicle's speed drops below 15 mph (24 km/h).

To manually select high beam, move the lighting control to the high beam position as normal. To return to AHBA, move the lighting control back to the central position.

To manually override to dipped beam from high beam, pull the lighting control to the flash position (2). The AHBA feature cancels. To return to AHBA, push the lighting control to the high beam position (1) and then return it to the central position.

To switch AHBA off, turn the lighting control from **Auto** to headlights.

The following may affect the operation of AHBA:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, e.g., cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, e.g., rain or fog.
- Dirty or obscured sensors.
- A dirty, damaged or fogged windshield.

- Oncoming vehicles partially obscured by a central highway barrier.
- An icy or frosted windshield.

The driving side can also be selected within the instrument panel menu. As default, this is set to be opposite the hand of drive, so if the vehicle is Left Hand Drive (LHD), the selection is driving on the right.

**Note:** For vehicles fitted with a navigation system, in each ignition cycle the hand of traffic resets according to the region in which the vehicle is being driven.

### ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS)

The Adaptive Front lighting System (AFS) is active when the lighting control is in the **AUTO** position and dipped beams are switched on.

The AFS is deactivated when high beam is selected or dipped beam is not operating in **AUTO** mode, or when the vehicle is in Park (P).

While operating as an AFS the dipped beams are automatically adjusted to suit the vehicle speed and weather conditions.

- Country mode: A standard headlight beam that operates at vehicle speeds between 0 and 70 mph (0 to 110 km/h), when urban environment is not detected. If urban environment is detected country mode operates from 30 mph (48 km/h).
- City mode: A wider headlight beam that operates at vehicle speeds up to 30 mph (48 km/h), when urban environment is detected.
- Highway mode: A raised headlight beam that operates at vehicle speeds above 70 mph (110 km/h).

## Exterior lights

- Adverse weather mode: Operates when the windshield wipers are active for more than 2 minutes and the vehicle's speed is below 64 km/h (40 mph).

To manually override to normal low beam operation, rotate the collar to the low beam symbol manually switches on low beam headlight irrespective of the ambient light condition or weather conditions. The instrument panel warning lamp turns off. **89, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**

### ADAPTIVE DRIVING BEAM (ADB)

**Note:** The Adaptive Driving Beam (ADB) system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all possible circumstances. The driver remains responsible for the correct use of the headlights at all times.

**Note:** Make sure that the forward-facing sensors on the rear of the rear-view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.

ADB is activated automatically once the vehicle's speed reaches 25 mph (40 km/h) and the camera does not detect an urban environment. ADB automatically deactivates when the vehicle's speed slows to 15 mph (24 km/h), when ambient light exceeds a predetermined level or when the gear selector is in Reverse (R).

The ADB is defined as a system to evaluate the road scene ahead of the vehicle and automatically adapts the light distribution according to the position of the preceding and oncoming traffic. The ADB is enabled when the lighting control is in **AUTO** position and ambient light level is below a predetermined level.

**Note:** When ADB is active, the blue High Beam Indicator remains lit, as the Headlights will deploy partial or full High Beam at this time.

The driver can disable and re-enable the ADB at any time:

- Select **Exterior Lighting** in the **Vehicle Settings** menu via the instrument panel.
- Select **Headlights High Beam**.
- Select **Adaptive Driving Beam ON** or **OFF**.

Push and release the lighting control to manually override to low beam from adaptive driving beam. Rotate the lighting control to **AUTO** to return to ADB. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. **89, HIGH BEAM (BLUE)**

Push and release the lighting control to manually select normal high beam. Rotate the lighting control to **AUTO** to return to AHBA.

Rotate the lighting control to the low beam to switch the ADB system off.

The following may affect the operation of the ADB system:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly-lit road users, e.g., cyclists or pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, e.g., rain or fog.
- Dirty or obscured sensor.
- Dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles, partially obscured by a central highway barrier.
- An icy or frosted windscreen.

## Exterior lights

### TURN SIGNALS

The animated turn signal feature is in place to improve the turn signal function by a sequential activation of their light sources. This is achieved by switching on consecutive segments of lights from inboard to outboard and during a defined period of time, creating a sweeping effect. Only lights with LED are able to reproduce any dynamic effect.

The driver can disable and re-enable the animated turn signal feature at any time:

- Select **Exterior Lighting** in the **Vehicle Settings** menu via the instrument panel.
- Select **Turn Signals**.
- Select **Animated ON** or **OFF**.

### LASER HEADLIGHTS



Laser Supplementary High Beam (LSHB) emits highly concentrated visible light, which can cause irritation or damage to the retina in the back of the eye. Do not deliberately stare into the beam. In normal operation, a headlight equipped with a LSHB light source does not present a hazard potential. The LSHB modules used in these headlights are classified by legislation as Class 2M LED.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources whilst low or high beam functions are operating. Doing so may result in serious injury.**

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Do not attempt to disassemble or modify the headlight. Doing so may result in serious injury or death.**

The LSHB is an additional light which operates as part of the high beam system and extends its range. The LSHB system is enabled only when the lights are in **AUTO** position and the Adaptive Driving Beam (ADB) system is also enabled.

To enable or disable the LSHB:

1. Select **Exterior Lighting** via the instrument panel.
2. Select **Headlights High Beam**.
3. Select **Laser High Beam ON** or **OFF**.

LSHB is activated automatically once the vehicle's speed reaches 50 mph (80 km/h) and the camera is not detecting other vehicle or street lights. LSHB automatically deactivates when the vehicle's speed slows to 47 mph (75 km/h).

### HEADLIGHT CONDENSATION

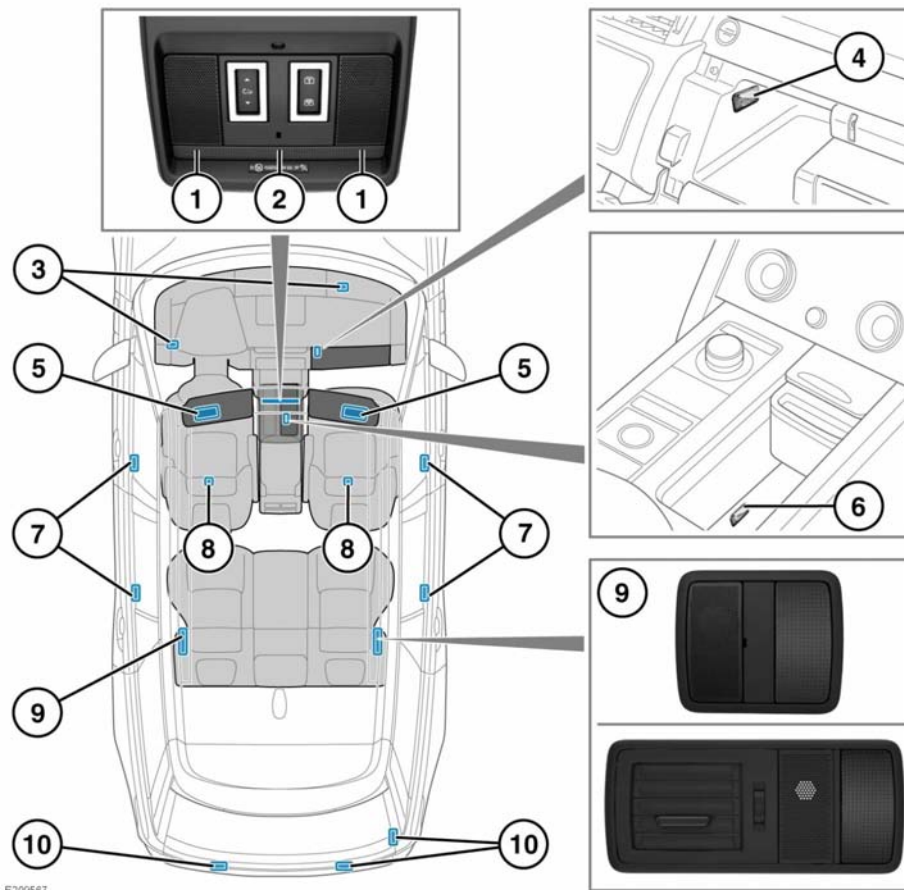
Misting of headlight lenses can occur under some atmospheric conditions or after washing the vehicle. Performance of the lights is not affected. Any misting clears during normal operation.

Contact a retailer/authorized repairer for advice if any of the following occur regularly:

- Condensation is present in the form of large droplets with streaks or drip marks.
- Condensation is present in the form of large droplets that cover more than 50% of the lens.
- Pools of water are visible inside the lens.

## Interior lights

### INTERIOR LIGHTS



Interior lighting locations and operation:

1. Front reading lights: Touch the left or right side of the sensor lens briefly to switch on or off.

**Note:** To complete the operation, move the finger at least 20 mm from the lens.

2. Front courtesy light: Touch the center of the sensor lens briefly to switch on or off. To switch automatic illumination on or off, hold the finger on the lens until the light flashes. In auto mode, the light illuminates when a door is opened.



## Interior lights

**Note:** To complete the operation, move the finger at least 20 mm from the lens.

3. Front seat footwell lights: Automatically illuminate when the doors are opened or the courtesy lights are switched on manually.
4. Glovebox light: Open the glovebox lid to illuminate.
5. Vanity mirror lights: Slide the cover open or shut to switch on or off.
6. Deep storage light.
7. Puddle lights: Automatically illuminate when the doors are opened.
8. Rear seat footwell lights: Automatically illuminate when the doors are opened.
9. Task lights: The task lights have two functions which can be operated with the rear door switch pack. To select the work function, press the work function button. The work function provides cool white light with two intensity levels. To select the relax function, press the relax function button. The relax function provides warm white light with two intensity levels.  
**Note:** The task lights also have touch operation. Touch the center of the sensor lens briefly to switch on or off.  
**Note:** The task lights also provide additional courtesy lighting.
10. Loadspace lights: Automatically illuminate when the tailgate is opened.

### INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY

Use the interior illumination control to adjust the intensity of the instrument illumination. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

### AMBIENT INTERIOR LIGHTING

**Note:** Vehicles without configurable interior mood lighting illuminate the standard white light for the interior lights.

The configurable interior mood lighting can be adjusted for color and intensity via the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

### STEALTH MODE

Stealth mode lowers the level of interior illumination to aid with night time driving. Stealth mode can be enabled through the touchscreen's **Screensaver** menu. See **258, GENERAL SETTINGS**.

Once enabled, stealth mode is activated by switching the touch screen off, using the on and off button. If night time conditions exist when the touch screen is switched off, interior switch illumination and instrument panel back-lighting automatically reduces to the minimum light levels. Stealth mode is deactivated if night time conditions no longer exist, or if the touch screen is switched back on. See **248, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

## Wipers and washers

### WIPER OPERATION

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the windshield wipers on a dry windshield, as it may inhibit the operation of the wipers.

#### NOTICE

In freezing or very hot conditions, use the winter park position to allow the wiper blades to be lifted from the windshield should they become stuck. See **385, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.

#### NOTICE

Remove any snow, ice or frost from the windshield, around the wiper arms and blades, and from the cowl area before operating the wipers.

#### NOTICE

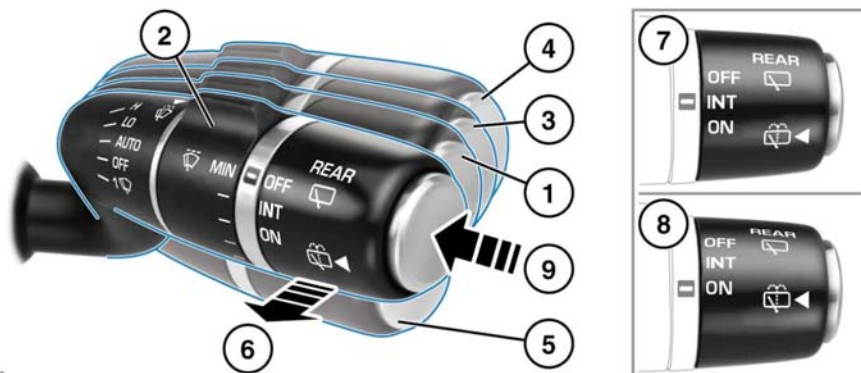
To avoid damage to the wiper blade, do not lift the wiper by the wiper blade. Always lift the wiper by the wiper arm.

#### NOTICE

Make sure the wipers are not in automatic rain sensing mode and are switched off before entering a car wash. If the wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

**Note:** The windshield is no longer wiped effectively and the automatic rain sensing function degrades if the wipers become worn. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible.

**Note:** If the wiper blades become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out temporarily halts the wiper's operation. If this happens, switch off the wipers and vehicle ignition, when safe to do so. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades before attempting to switch on the ignition.



E152297

## Wipers and washers

1. Automatic rain sensing mode: The front wipers respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions, selecting the appropriate wiper frequency for the prevailing conditions. The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by rotating the collar (2).
2. Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the automatic rain sensing mode when position (1) is selected. The higher the sensitivity position the more responsive the system becomes. When automatic rain sensing mode is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the system performs a single wipe.
3. **LO**: Low speed continuous wipe.
4. **HI**: High speed continuous wipe.
5. Single wipe of the windshield. Hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Windshield wash and wipe. Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. After a few seconds, a drip wipe clears any residual washer fluid from the windshield. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the wash/wiper control position.  
**Note:** The front wipers do not operate while the hood is open.
7. **INT**: Rear wiper intermittent operation. Wiper frequency increases with vehicle speed.
8. **ON**: Rear wiper continuous operation.
9. Rear window wash and wipe: Press and release to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper operates in a set cycle to minimize drips when the button is released. If more washer fluid is required, push and hold the button.

**Note:** When reverse (R) gear is selected and the front wipers are operating, the rear wiper activates.

**Note:** The rear wiper does not operate while the tailgate is open.



Drip wipe on the windshield can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorized repairer.



Rear wiper road speed related frequency can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorized repairer.

**Note:** If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the car has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with the recommended windshield washer fluid. See **469, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

The service position moves the wipers to allow wiper blade replacement. See **385, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.

### RAIN SENSOR

The rain sensor is mounted on the inside of the windshield, behind the rear-view mirror. The sensor is able to detect the presence and amount of water on the windshield, and automatically activates the windshield wipers, accordingly.

**Note:** Static droplets may not be detected on initial start-up. A single wipe should be used to clear the windshield.

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wash/wipe control to the **AUTO** position (1). The behavior of the system may be adjusted to the driver's preference by rotating the collar (2).

**Note:** If the wash/wipe control is in the **AUTO** position, the wipers do not operate if either of the front doors are open.

## Wipers and washers

**Note:** In dry and often sunny conditions, optical influences and dirt accumulation on the windshield may result in the windshield wipers activating inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that, under these conditions, the wash/wipe controls are returned to the **OFF** position.

The rain sensor feature can be enabled and disabled via the **Vehicle Settings** menu in the instrument panel. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

### SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

#### Front wipers

If the vehicle's speed drops below 5 mph (8 km/h) with the wipers operating, the wipers switch to the next lowest speed. When the vehicle's speed increases to over 5 mph (8 km/h), the original wiper speed setting is restored automatically.



The feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorized repairer.

#### Rear wiper

The frequency of the rear wiper, when set to intermittent, increases with the vehicle's speed.



The feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorized repairer.

### WINTER PARK POSITION

#### NOTICE

Make sure that the wiper arms are in the winter park position before lifting the wiper blades away from the windshield. Failure to do so, may result in damage to the hood.

When the vehicle is parked, the wipers can be set to park in a higher position than normal. The wiper blades can be lifted from the windshield to limit the effects of freezing to the glass. Lifting the wiper blades from the windshield aids the removal of snow, mud, and leaves, etc. The wiper's winter park position can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle Settings** menu in the instrument panel. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The wipers move to the winter park position when the ignition is switched off. The wipers remain in the winter park position until one of the following occurs:

- The vehicle's speed is above 8 km/h (5 mph).
- The wipers are operated.

### HEADLIGHT WASHERS

**Note:** The headlight washers are inhibited when the washer fluid reservoir level is low.

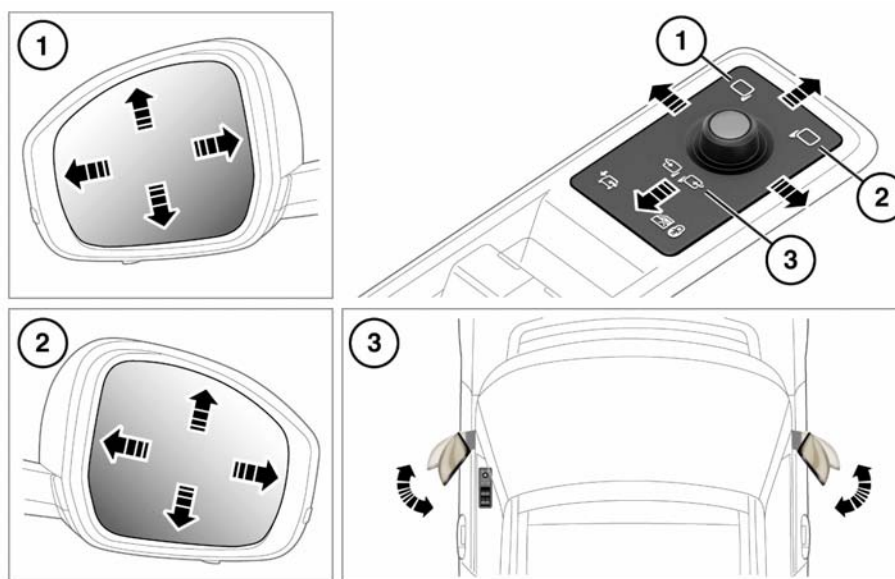
If the headlights are switched on, and there is sufficient liquid in the washer reservoir, operating the windshield washer also power washes the headlight.

The headlight power wash operates on every fifth operation of the windshield washer. The headlight wash feature operates if the headlight are switched on and approximately 10 minutes has elapsed since the last headlight wash.

Switching the headlights or ignition off and back on again resets the cycle.

## Mirrors

### DOOR MIRRORS



E208006

**Note:** An amount of knock protection is designed into the door mirrors. If a door mirror is accidentally knocked inwards or manually folded inwards, the mirror head disengages from the folding mechanism. To re-engage the mechanism, fold, then unfold the mirror using the button.

**Note:** A thermal cut-out temporarily disables the power-fold feature if the buttons are operated repeatedly.

**Note:** The door mirror heaters operate automatically, according to the external temperature and the heated rear screen operation.

**Note:** If the door mirrors are folded using the buttons, the mirrors do not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. The mirror unfolds when the vehicle exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h).

1. Left door mirror adjustment.
2. Right door mirror adjustment.
3. Press the button to fold and unfold the mirrors.

**Note:** Power-folding is a vehicle specific feature. The power-fold feature operates only if the vehicle's speed is below 70 mph (113 km/h).

Press the appropriate button to select the relevant door mirror to be adjusted. The button's LED indicator lamp illuminates to confirm which side is active. Use the joystick control to adjust the mirror's glass.

The door mirrors can be configured by a retailer/authorized repairer to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked, and unfold when it is unlocked.



## Mirrors

The door mirrors can be adjusted for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

### Garage mode

If the mirrors are folded in before the vehicle is locked, the mirrors do not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Garage mode prevents the mirrors being damaged when unfolding. For example in a tight garage spot.

### MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

Mirror dip can be enabled or disabled via the **Vehicle settings** menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Selecting Reverse (**R**) causes the door mirrors to automatically adjust, providing an improved viewing angle for reversing.

The dipped position of the door mirrors is a preset position. In **R**, the door mirrors can be adjusted and the new position can be saved.

**Note:** *The new door mirror dip position can only be saved in **R**.*

When the vehicle is in **R**, press the memory save button (**M**). Select either memory **1**, **2**, or **3** to save the reverse mirror dip position to the corresponding memory position. See **30, SEAT POSITION MEMORY**.

Using the memory save button allows three different reverse mirror dip positions to be saved. Use the memory recall feature to recall the saved positions.

When the gear selector is moved out of **R**, the door mirrors return to the previous position.

**Note:** *If the vehicle's speed exceeds 7mph (12 km/h) in **R**, the mirrors return to the normal position for enhanced visibility.*

## Garage door opener

### RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) TRANSCEIVER

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using the garage door opener. Failure to use the garage door opener safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not use the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature, as required by safety standards. Doing so may compromise personal safety or cause damage to the vehicle.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

When programming the RF transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, make sure that the area is clear of people and objects. Potential harm or damage may occur as the gate or garage door activates during programming.

#### **NOTICE**

*The device may suffer from interference if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. Interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter, as well as the RF transceiver, which can cause damage to the vehicle.*

In some countries, the RF transceiver is also known as the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver.

The RF transceiver is located in the rear-view mirror. The RF transceiver can be programmed to transmit the signals of up to three different hand-held transmitters. The transceiver can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems, or other RF-operated remote devices.

The transceiver RF approval numbers for the USA and Canada are shown below:

USA and Puerto Rico FCC ID: NZLJLRHL4.

Canada IC: 4112A-JLRHL4.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

### BEFORE PROGRAMMING

#### **NOTICE**

*Unplug the remote device during programming of the remote device if repeated operation of the remote control is required. Repeated operation of the remote control during programming may result in damage to the remote device.*

**Note:** HomeLink® is compatible with a wide range of remote devices. For information on compatible devices and instructional videos, visit:

**[www.HomeLink.com](http://www.HomeLink.com).**

For the best results, fit a new battery to the remote control before programming. If the remote device's receiver is equipped with an antenna, make sure the antenna is extended.

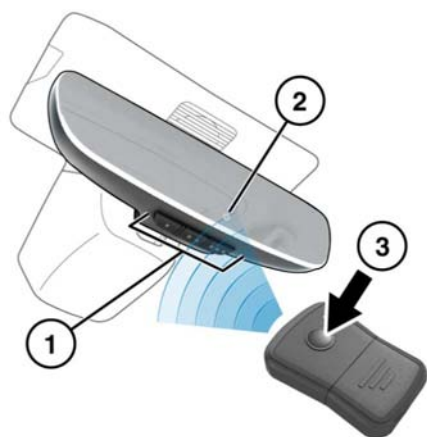
HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

## Garage door opener

### PROGRAMMING

**Note:** The instructions below apply to the majority of HomeLink compatible systems. However, there are some HomeLink applications, or HomeLink compatible systems, that require slightly different instructions. For more information and instructional videos, visit: [www.HomeLink.com](http://www.HomeLink.com).

**Note:** Garage door openers manufactured after 1995 may be equipped with rolling code protection. If this is the case, a stepladder or other sturdy, safe device, may be required to reach the learn or smart button on the garage door opener.



E195770

1. HomeLink buttons.
2. LED indicator.
3. Remote control for the device, e.g., garage door.

If required, erase the previous programming from the HomeLink device. See **105, TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING**. To program the HomeLink device:

1. With the vehicle's electrical system switched on, press and release the HomeLink button chosen to be programmed (1) on the rear-view mirror. The LED in the rear-view mirror's glass (2) flashes orange.
2. Position the end of the remote control (3) 1 to 3 inches (2 to 8 cm) from the HomeLink button.
3. Press and hold the button on the remote control. Release the button when the LED indicator on the rear-view mirror changes from flashing orange to flashing or solid green.
4. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button up to three separate times to activate the device. If the device activates, programming is complete. If the device does not activate, continue with steps 5 to 7.
5. Locate the **learn** or **smart** button on the garage door opener motor-head unit.

**Note:** The **learn** or **smart** button can usually be found directly on the motor-head unit. If in doubt, refer to the garage door opener manual to identify the button.

6. Firmly press and release the **learn** or **smart** button. There are typically 30 seconds to initiate Step 7.



## Garage door opener

7. Return to the vehicle. Firmly press and release the programmed HomeLink button up to three separate times to activate the device. If the device activates, programming is complete.

### Gate operator and Canadian programming

Canadian Radio Frequency (RF) laws require remote device systems to have a remote control signal that only operates for a short period of time. The signal times-out before programming is complete. The operator is required to cycle the remote control button every 2 seconds during programming. Some U.S. gate operators also have this type of signal.

If in Canada, or experiencing difficulties while programming the remote device, carry out the following:

During programming of the remote device, replace programming step 3 with the following:

- Press and hold the HomeLink button. Simultaneously, press and release the remote control button every 2 seconds, until the LED indicator rapidly flashes green or continuously illuminates green. Release the HomeLink and remote control buttons.
- Continue the programming process from step 4.

If the HomeLink LED indicator does not rapidly flash green or continuously illuminates green after performing these steps, contact HomeLink at:

**www.HomeLink.com.**

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

### REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To program a remote device to a previously programmed HomeLink® memory button:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the required HomeLink memory button. After approximately 20 seconds, the LED starts to flash orange.
3. Release the button.
4. Follow the programming instructions from step 3 onwards, as described in **PROGRAMMING**.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

### TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

**Note:** *If the vehicle is sold, it is recommended that all programming is erased from the HomeLink device.*

To erase all programming from the HomeLink® device:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press and hold the outer two HomeLink buttons until the LED on the rear-view mirror changes from continuously illuminated orange to flashing green.

**Note:** *Do not press and hold the buttons for longer than 20 seconds.*

3. Release the buttons. HomeLink is initialized and the previous settings of all three buttons are erased.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.



## Garage door opener

### RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

#### United States of America

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

### INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE

#### **NOTICE**

*If the vehicle is sold, it is recommended that all programming is erased from the HomeLink® device. Previously stored programming may mismatch with new settings, which may damage the vehicle.*

**Note:** Retain the original remote device's remote control handset for future programming requirements.

**Note:** The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

For information on the range of compatible remote devices, or for assistance, contact a retailer/authorized repairer. Alternatively, visit the HomeLink® website: **www.HomeLink.com**, or call the toll-free helpline at: 1-800-355-3515.

For Genie and Sommer garage door openers, go directly to the HomeLink website.

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

## Windows

### ELECTRIC WINDOWS

#### ⚠ WARNING

If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the windows. If the windows are operated by young children, there is a risk of serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

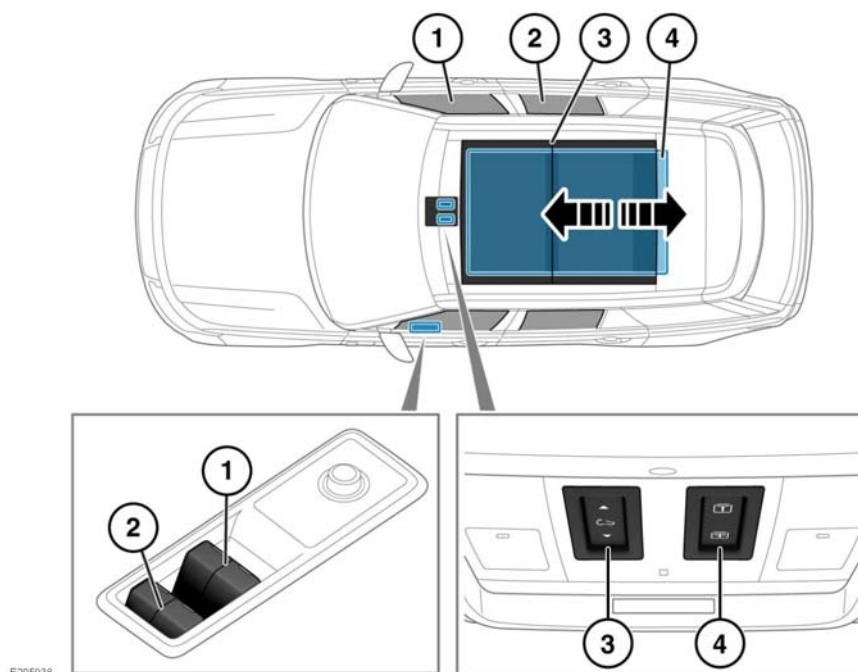
Make sure that you remove the smart key when leaving the vehicle. This will prevent unsupervised operation of the windows and sunroof, which may result in an injury.

#### NOTICE

Wherever possible, remove any snow, ice, dirt, or leaves etc., from the panoramic roof mechanism before closing. Failure to do so may damage the panoramic roof mechanism.

#### NOTICE

To prevent accidental damage, make sure that any roof rack load will not interfere with the opening of the panoramic roof.



1. Window switches:

- To open a window: Press lightly at the front of the switch and release.

## Windows

- To close a window: Pull up lightly at the front of the switch and release.
- For one-touch open and close operation, press or pull firmly at the front of the switch and release.

**Note:** The windows will operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.

### 2. Rear window switches.

### 3. Panoramic roof blind switch:

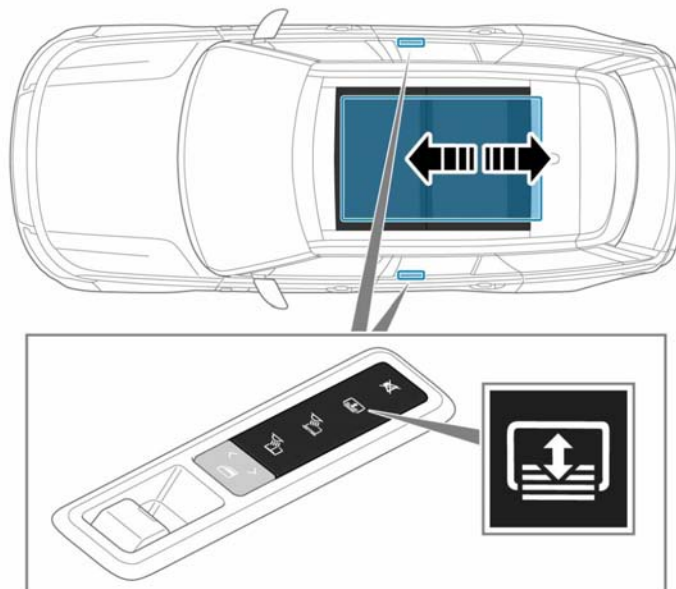
- To open the blind: Press lightly at the rear of the switch and release.
- To close the blind: Press lightly at the front of the switch and release.
- For one-touch open and close operation, press firmly at the front or rear of the switch and release.

**Note:** Long Wheel Base (LWB) vehicles, fitted with standard rear seats, feature an additional roof blind switch. The switch is located on the rear face of the center console.

### 4. Panoramic roof switch:

- Press lightly at the rear of the switch to tilt the roof. Once tilted, lightly press again to open the roof.
- From the fully open position, press lightly at the front of the switch to close to the tilt position, then press lightly again to close fully.
- For one-touch open and close operation, press firmly at the front or rear of the switch and release.

The panoramic roof blind can be controlled via the button located on the rear door panels.



E211121

## Windows

Press the button to open the roof blind.  
Press the button for a second time to close the roof blind.

**Note:** The rear door panel's roof blind button triggers an opening movement, unless the blind is fully open.

**Note:** Pressing the button during the opening movement causes the roof blind to close. When the movement is initiated from the front overhead console, the rear buttons have no effect until the movement stops.

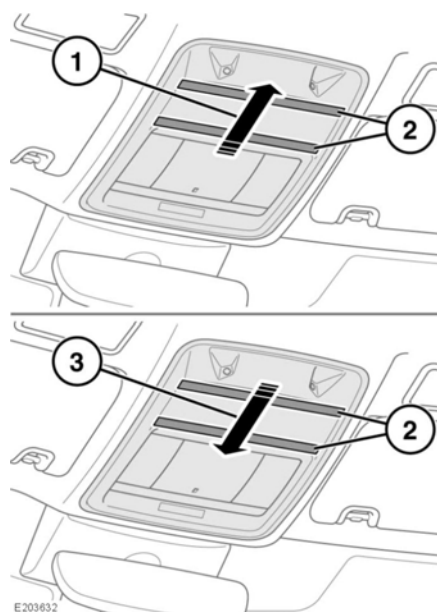
For information on isolating the rear windows, refer to child safety locks. See **56, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS**.

### Automatic roof blind

The automatic operation of the roof blind can be adjusted via the climate settings screen on the touchscreen display.

When the feature is selected and the doors are locked, the roof blind closes automatically. When the engine is running, the roof blind returns to the previous open position.

### GESTURE ROOF BLIND



**Note:** The gesture roof blind feature works only when the ignition is switched on, or when the engine is running.

**Note:** The feature works in parallel with the overhead console's roof blind buttons.

The feature is fitted to all vehicles with a panoramic roof system. There is a sensor system behind the overhead console which has two operating zones.

- To open the blind, make a rearward swipe gesture with the hand, as illustrated at **1**. Repeat the motion to stop movement of the roof blind.
- To close the blind, make a forward swipe gesture with the hand, as illustrated at **3**.

## Windows

**Note:** The swipe gesture must pass through both sensor zones, as illustrated at **2**. A valid gesture cannot start or finish between the zones.



The gesture roof blind feature can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorized repairer.

### SIDE WINDOW BLINDS

#### **NOTICE**

Before operating the side window blinds, make sure that no objects or parts of the body are in a position to obstruct its operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the operating mechanism.

Before operating the side window blinds, it is important to note the following:

- The rear window buttons also operate the respective side window blind.
- A side window blind will only operate if the window is fully closed.
- The side window blinds can only be fully raised or fully lowered. There is no part-way position.
- The side window blinds feature an anti-trap function. If movement is restricted while being raised, the side window blind will stop and return to the lowered position.
- The side window blinds also feature an anti-play function. If a side window blind is operated repeatedly in a short space of time, operation will be inhibited for approximately 60 seconds.

To raise the side window blind, pull and release the rear window button.

To lower the side window blind, push and release the rear window button.

**Note:** The side window blinds will operate for 5 minutes after the engine has been switched off, provided the windows are fully closed.

### ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Closing a window or roof blind onto any part of the body can result in serious injury.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Before closing a window or the panoramic roof, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The anti-trap mechanism does not operate when closing the panoramic roof from the tilted position. The panoramic roof can cause serious injury should a body part become trapped. Always make sure that the panoramic roof is free from obstructions before closing.

Anti-trap protection will stop window or panoramic roof movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window or panoramic roof and its aperture, and remove any obstructions (e.g., ice, etc.).

If it is still necessary to raise the window or close the panoramic roof, the override procedure is as follows:

1. Attempt to close the window or panoramic roof. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window or opens the panoramic roof slightly.

## Windows

2. Within 10 seconds, attempt to raise the window or close the panoramic roof again. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window or opens the panoramic roof slightly.
3. Attempt to close the window or panoramic roof for a third time. Hold the button in the close position. Hold until closed.

**Note:** If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, the window operation may need to be reset. See **386, WINDOW RESET**.

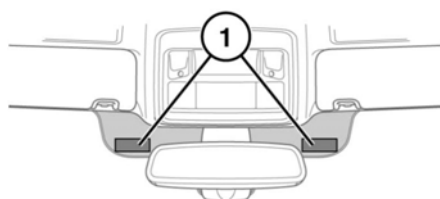
**Note:** The panoramic roof's anti-trap mechanism works differently and does not require reset if activated. See **386, PANORAMIC ROOF RESET**.

The optimal fixing location is at the top of the windshield, as shown at (1), close to the interior rear-view mirror.

**Note:** The electronic device should be in the size appropriate location on the driver's side of the windshield.

**Note:** Transponders, mounted on the front license mount plinth, can be used as an alternative, dependent on the market and availability.

### SOLAR ATTENUATING GLASS



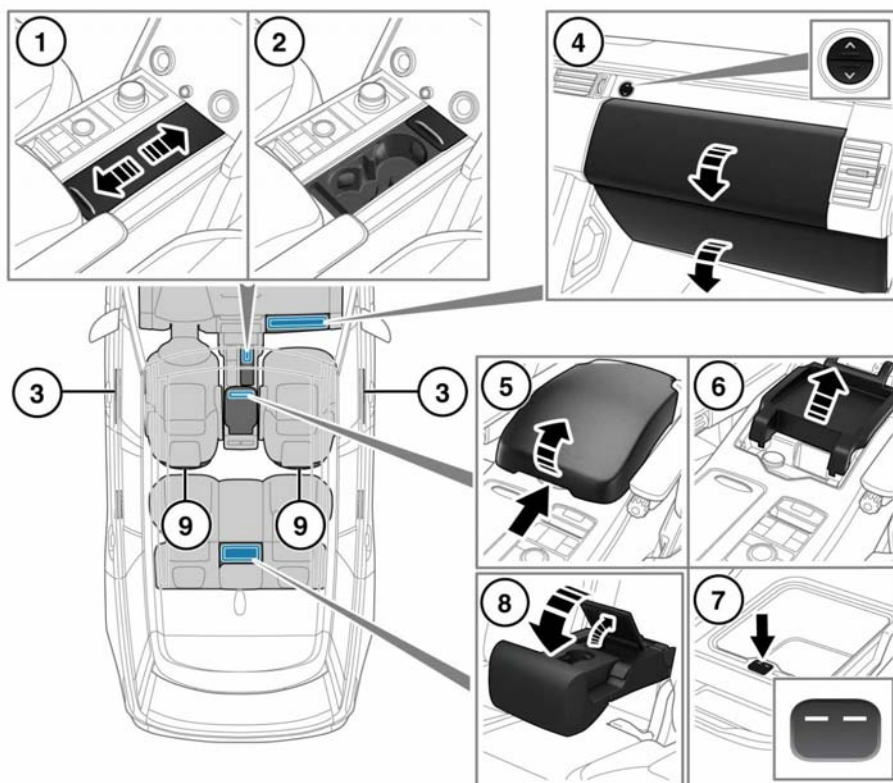
E198893

The solar attenuating glass windshield filters sunlight passing through a special laminated layer.

Electronic devices, such as toll road payment tags or Radio Frequency (RF) ID tags, can be attached at the indicated locations. The locations are on the inside of the windshield. If the tags are located at any other part of a solar attenuating windshield, the electronic scanners may not recognize them.

## Storage compartments

### STORAGE COMPARTMENTS



E211410

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure that any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or is subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not drink while driving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.



## Storage compartments

### **WARNING**

**Do not remove items from, or place items in, the cup holders while driving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

1. Front cup holders: Slide open the panel to access. Pull the panel to close.
2. Deep storage area: Slide the cup holder forward to access the area.
3. Door storage bins.
4. Upper and lower glovebox: Press the upper glovebox release button to open the upper glovebox. Press the lower glovebox release button to open the upper glovebox.
5. Armrest: Press the release button to lift up the lid.
6. Tray: Press the release button to lift up the tray and the armrest lid at the same time.
7. Cool box or refrigerator: The vehicle can be fitted with a cool box or a refrigerator depending on the vehicle's specification. To access the cool box or refrigerator, press the release button on the underside of the armrest lid. Press the button on the inside front lip to switch on or off. The refrigerator has two cooling modes. The cooling modes can be activated by pressing the same button multiple times. Press the button once for fast cool down. The fast cool down mode is indicated by two lights illuminating on the button. Press the button twice for normal mode. The normal mode is indicated by one light illuminating on the button. If fast cooling mode is selected, the refrigerator automatically switches to normal mode when the operating temperature is reached. The refrigerator takes approximately 30 minutes to reach the operating temperature of approximately 40°F (5°C). The refrigerator returns to the latest settings when the ignition is switched on.

**Note:** The cool box is not a refrigerator and does not reach the low temperatures attained by a refrigerator. Repeated or prolonged opening of the cool box reduces its ability to maintain temperature.

**Note:** The refrigerator or cool box only operates with the ignition switched on.

**Note:** The rubber mat at the bottom of the refrigerator can be removed for cleaning.

**Note:** Liquids spilt in the refrigerator need to be removed immediately.



## Storage compartments

### **NOTICE**

*Switch off the cool box or refrigerator when it is not needed. Failure to do so can discharge the vehicle's battery.*

### **NOTICE**

*Do not use abrasive cleaning agents while cleaning the cool box or refrigerator. The use of such agents may cause damage to the cool box or refrigerator.*

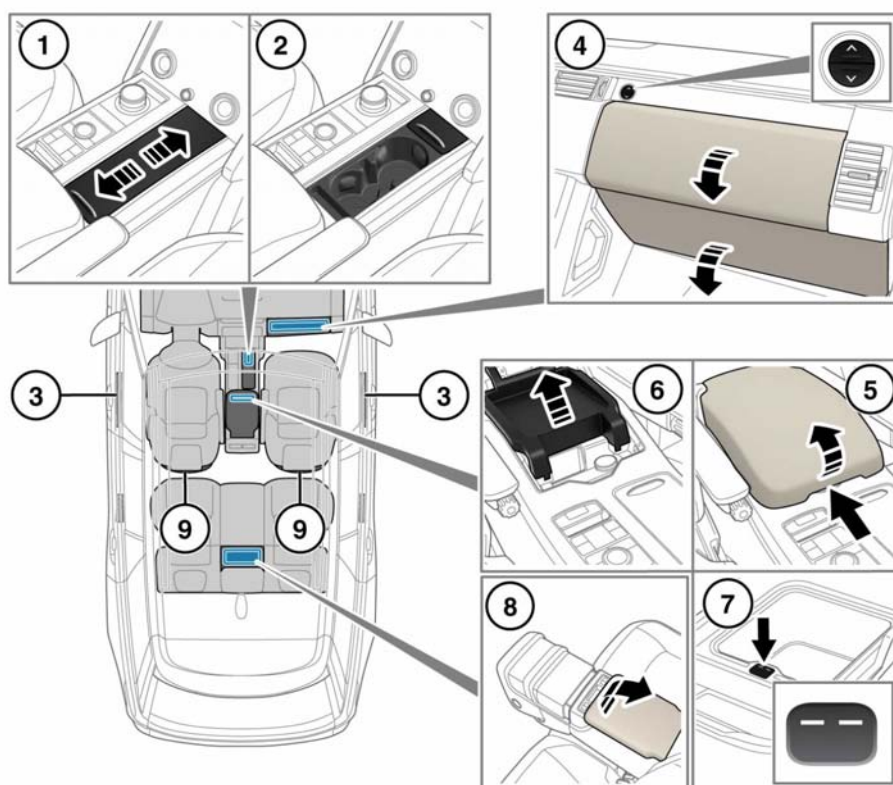
8. Rear seat cup holders and storage:  
Fold the center armrest down.

**Note:** *The center armrest storage is not available on vehicles fitted with a rear media system.*

9. Map pockets.

## Storage compartments

### Executive class rear seats



E211413

1. Front cup holders: Slide open the panel to access. Pull the panel to close.
2. Deep storage area: Slide the cup holder forward to access the area.
3. Door storage bins.
4. Upper and lower glovebox: Press the upper glovebox release button to open the upper glovebox. Press the lower glovebox release button to open the upper glovebox.
5. Armrest: Press the release button to lift up the lid.
6. Tray: Press the release button to lift up the tray and the armrest lid at the same time.
7. Lower storage bin: Press the release button to open the lower storage bin.
8. Side storage bin: Press the release button to open the side storage bin.
9. Side storage bin: Press the release button to open the side storage bin.



## Storage compartments

7. Cool box or refrigerator: The vehicle can be fitted with a cool box or a refrigerator depending on the vehicle's specification. To access the cool box or refrigerator, press the release button on the underside of the armrest lid. Press the button on the inside front lip to switch on or off. The refrigerator has two cooling modes. The cooling modes can be activated by pressing the same button multiple times. Press the button once for fast cool down. The fast cool down mode is indicated by two lights illuminating on the button. Press the button twice for normal mode. The normal mode is indicated by one light illuminating on the button. If fast cooling mode is selected, the refrigerator automatically switches to normal mode when the operating temperature is reached. The refrigerator takes approximately 30 minutes to reach the operating temperature of approximately 40°F (5°C). The refrigerator returns to the latest settings when the ignition is switched on.

**Note:** The cool box is not a refrigerator and does not reach the low temperatures attained by a refrigerator. Repeated or prolonged opening of the cool box reduces its ability to maintain temperature.

**Note:** The refrigerator or cool box only operates with the ignition switched on.

**Note:** The rubber mat at the bottom of the refrigerator can be removed for cleaning.

**Note:** Liquids spilt in the refrigerator need to be removed immediately.

### NOTICE

Switch off the cool box or refrigerator when it is not needed. Failure to do so can discharge the vehicle's battery.

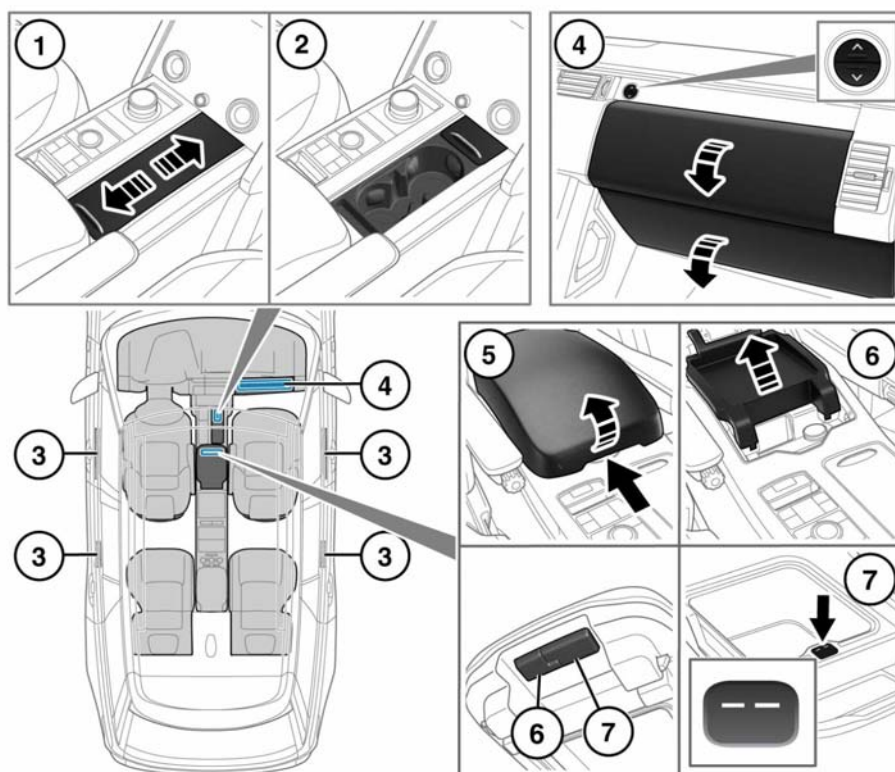
### NOTICE

Do not use abrasive cleaning agents while cleaning the cool box or refrigerator. The use of such agents may cause damage to the cool box or refrigerator.

8. Rear seat cup holders: Press the deploy button to fold the rear seat console down. Press the cup holder deploy button to access the cup holders. Press the button on the underside of the console lid to lift the console lid to expose the tray. Press both release buttons to open and reveal the storage bin.
9. Map pockets.

## Storage compartments

### Long wheelbase vehicles



E211415

1. Front cup holders: Slide open the panel to access. Pull the panel to close.
2. Deep storage area: Slide the cup holder forward to access the area.
3. Storage bins.
4. Upper and lower glovebox: Press the upper glovebox release button to open the upper glovebox. Press the lower glovebox release button to open the upper glovebox.
5. Armrest: Press the release button to lift up the lid.
6. Tray: Press the release button to lift up the tray and the armrest lid at the same time.
7. Lower glovebox: Press the release button.

## Storage compartments

7. Cool box or refrigerator: The vehicle can be fitted with a cool box or a refrigerator depending on the vehicle's specification. To access the cool box or refrigerator, press the release button on the underside of the armrest lid. Press the button on the inside front lip to switch on or off. The refrigerator has two cooling modes. The cooling modes can be activated by pressing the same button multiple times. Press the button once for fast cool down. The fast cool down mode is indicated by two lights illuminating on the button. Press the button twice for normal mode. The normal mode is indicated by one light illuminating on the button. If fast cooling mode is selected the refrigerator automatically switches to normal mode when the operating temperature is reached. The refrigerator takes approximately 30 minutes to reach the operating temperature of approximately 40°F (5°C). The refrigerator returns to the latest settings when the ignition is

switched on.

**Note:** The cool box is not a refrigerator and does not reach the low temperatures attained by a refrigerator. Repeated or prolonged opening of the cool box reduces its ability to maintain temperature.

**Note:** The refrigerator or cool box only operates with the ignition switched on.

**Note:** The rubber mat at the bottom of the refrigerator can be removed for cleaning.

**Note:** Liquids spilt in the refrigerator need to be removed immediately.

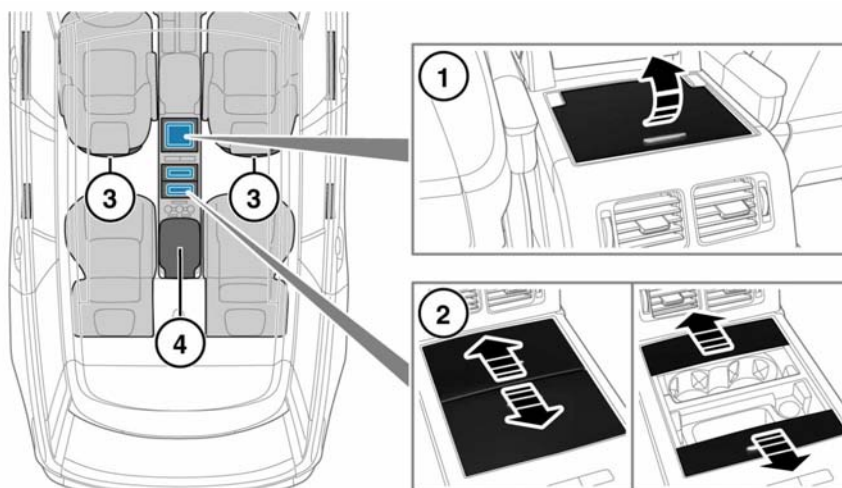
### NOTICE

Switch off the cool box or refrigerator when it is not needed. Failure to do so can discharge the vehicle's battery.

### NOTICE

Do not use abrasive cleaning agents while cleaning the cool box or refrigerator. The use of such agents may cause damage to the cool box or refrigerator.

## Storage compartments



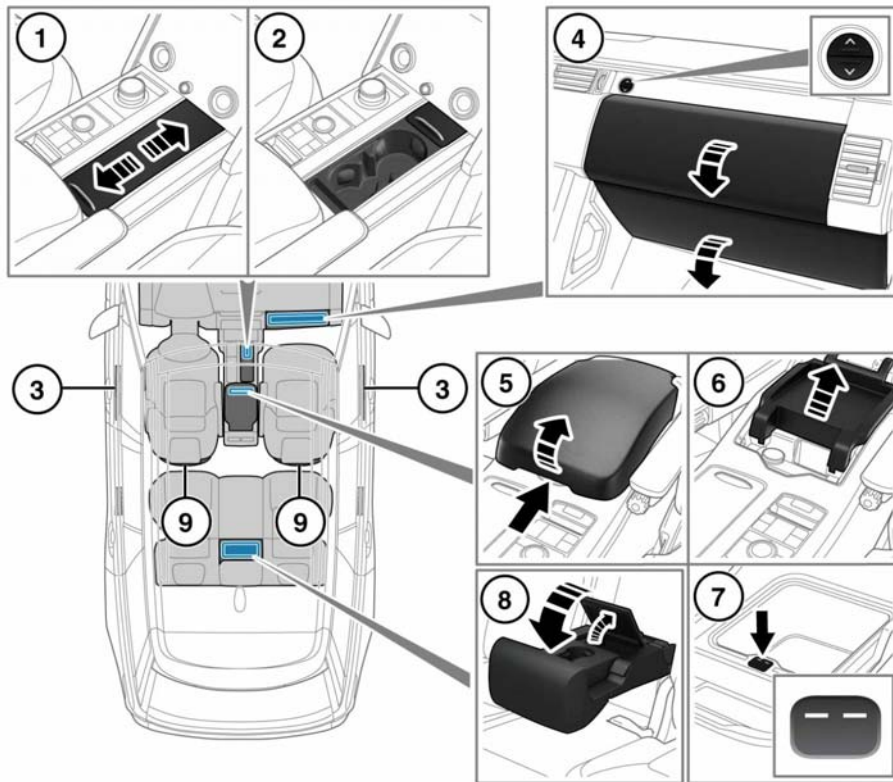
E213612

1. Tablet PC and headphone storage:  
Press and release to open.
2. Rear seat cup holders and rear media remote control storage: Slide open the panels to access. Press and release to close.
3. Map pockets.
4. Rear cool box.



## Storage compartments

### SV Autobiography vehicles



E211410

1. Front cup holders: Slide open the panel to access. Pull the panel to close.
2. Deep storage area: Slide the cup holder forward to access the area.
3. Door storage bins.
4. Upper and lower glovebox: Press the upper glovebox release button to open the upper glovebox. Press the lower glovebox release button to open the upper glovebox.
5. Armrest: Press the release button to lift up the lid.
6. Tray: Press the release button to lift up the tray and the armrest lid at the same time.
7. Center console storage bin.
8. Armrest storage bin.
9. Rear seat storage bins.



## Storage compartments

7. Cool box or refrigerator: The vehicle can be fitted with a cool box or a refrigerator depending on the vehicle's specification. To access the cool box or refrigerator, press the release button on the underside of the armrest lid. Press the button on the inside front lip to switch on or off. The refrigerator has two cooling modes. The cooling modes can be activated by pressing the same button multiple times. Press the button once for fast cool down. The fast cool down mode is indicated by two lights illuminating on the button. Press the button twice for normal mode. The normal mode is indicated by one light illuminating on the button. If fast cooling mode is selected the refrigerator automatically switches to normal mode when the operating temperature is reached. The refrigerator takes approximately 30 minutes to reach the operating temperature of approximately 40°F (5°C). The refrigerator returns to the latest settings when the ignition is switched on.

**Note:** The cool box is not a refrigerator and does not reach the low temperatures attained by a refrigerator. Repeated or prolonged opening of the cool box reduces its ability to maintain temperature.

**Note:** The refrigerator or cool box only operates with the ignition switched on.

**Note:** The rubber mat at the bottom of the refrigerator can be removed for cleaning.

**Note:** Liquids spilt in the refrigerator need to be removed immediately.

### **NOTICE**

Switch off the cool box or refrigerator when it is not needed. Failure to do so can discharge the vehicle's battery.

### **NOTICE**

Do not use abrasive cleaning agents while cleaning the cool box or refrigerator. The use of such agents may cause damage to the cool box or refrigerator.

8. Rear seat cup holders and storage: Fold the center armrest down.

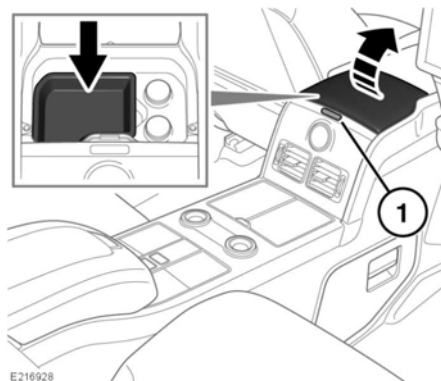
**Note:** The center armrest storage is not available on vehicles fitted with a rear media system.

9. Map pockets.

## Storage compartments

### SV Autobiography vehicles LWB

Long wheel base SV Autobiography vehicles are fitted with additional storage compartments in the rear console.

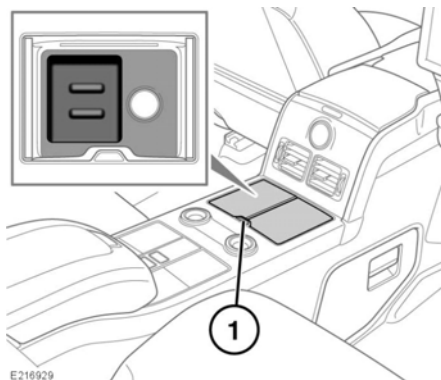


The storage compartment at the front of the rear console has a hidden storage compartment.

To access the hidden storage compartment:

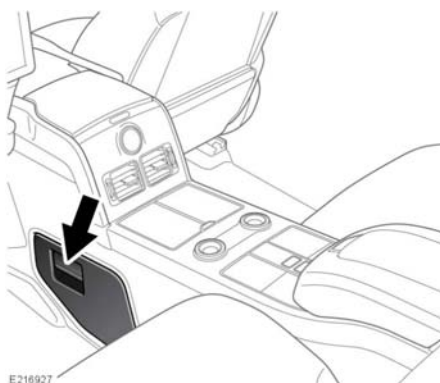
1. Press the button (1) to open the storage compartment lid.
2. Remove the tray.

The storage compartment has a storage net on the underside of the lid.



Press the button (1) to open the storage compartment lid.

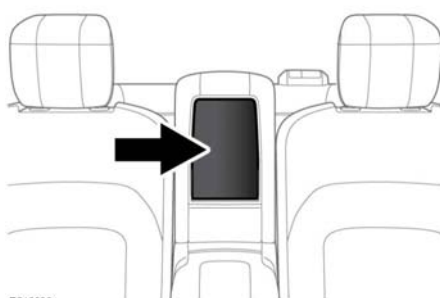
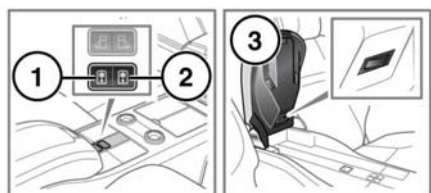
## Storage compartments



E216927

Pull the handle to release the storage drawer and slide the storage drawer to open. The storage drawer closes automatically.

**Note:** The rubber mat at the bottom of the drawer can be removed for cleaning.



E216933

The refrigerator is located between the rear seats.

To operate the refrigerator:

1. Press to open the refrigerator.
2. Press to close the refrigerator.
3. Press to switch the refrigerator on or off. A light illuminates on the switch to confirm that the refrigerator is switched on.

## Storage compartments

### NOTICE

Do not use abrasive cleaning agents while cleaning the refrigerator. The use of such agents may cause damage to the refrigerator.

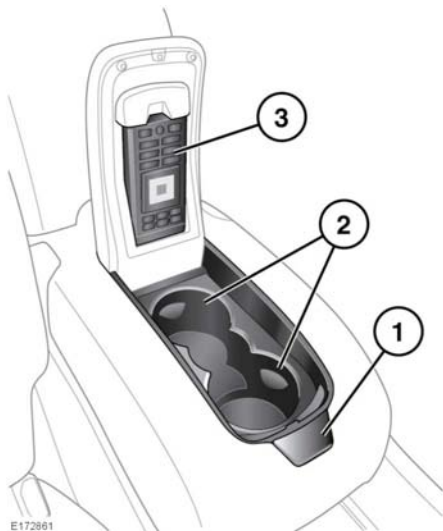
**Note:** The light in the refrigerator illuminates when the refrigerator door is open. The light operates when the refrigerator is switched on or off. Refrigerator operation is confirmed by the light on the refrigerator switch (3).

**Note:** The refrigerator only operates with the ignition switched on.

**Note:** The rubber mat at the bottom of the refrigerator can be removed for cleaning.

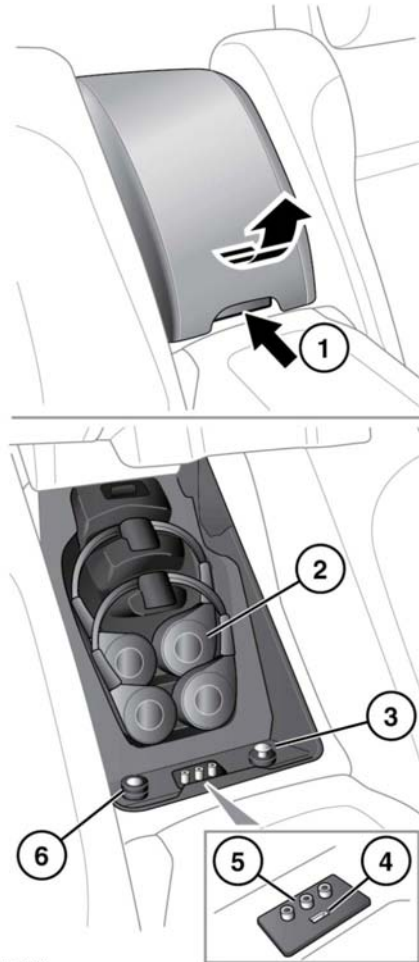
**Note:** Liquids spilt inside the refrigerator need to be removed immediately.

### REAR CONSOLE STORAGE



1. Press the button to release the cover.
2. Cup holders.

3. Rear seat entertainment remote control storage area.



E172890

1. To access, press the button and raise the lid into the horizontal position.
2. Headphone storage.
3. Cigar lighter.
4. Rear media USB/iPod socket.

## Storage compartments

- 5. Audio video sockets.
- 6. 3.5 mm AUX power socket.

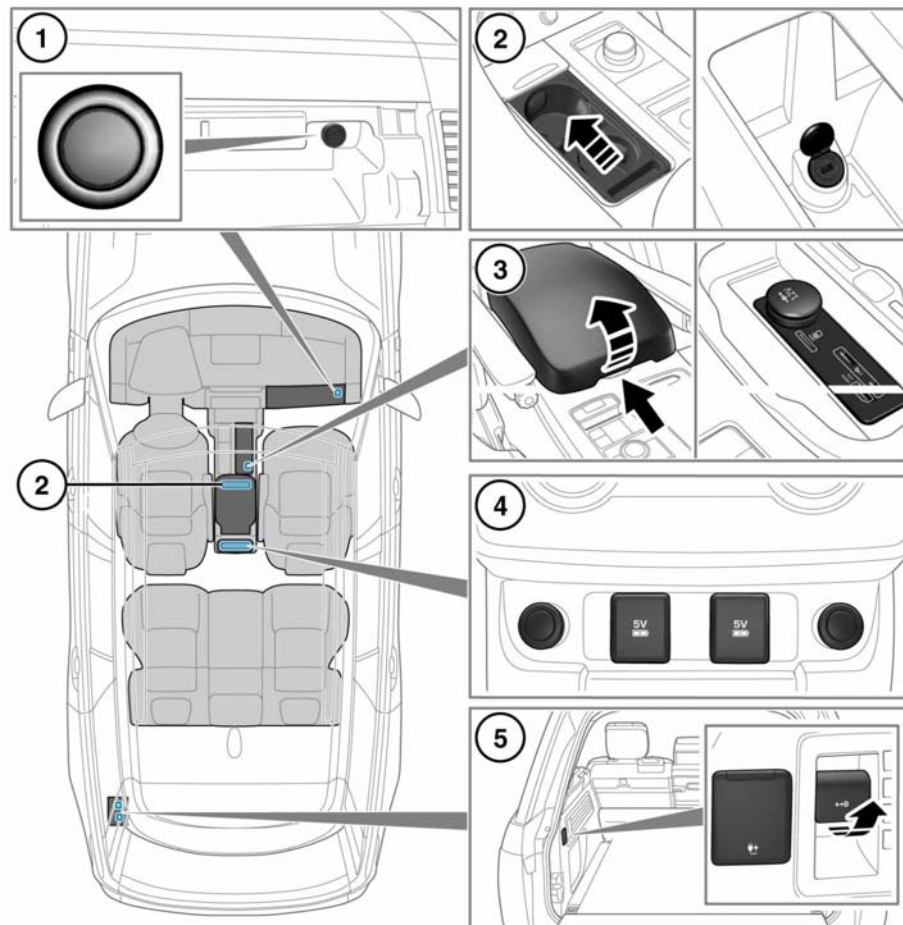
To lower the lid to the closed position,  
press the button (1).



## Storage compartments

### AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS

Standard wheelbase vehicles



E211325

#### **NOTICE**

Only use approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system. If in any doubt, contact a retailer or authorized repairer.

#### **NOTICE**

The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the vehicle's battery.

## Storage compartments

**Note:** Power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts.

1. 12V power socket located inside the upper glovebox.
2. 5V USB socket inside the deep storage area.
3. 12V power sockets and two 5V USB sockets inside the cubby box.

**Note:** The vehicle may be fitted with a cigar lighter depending on vehicle specification. Do not use the cigar lighter as a 12V charger.

4. Two 12V power sockets and two 5V USB sockets.

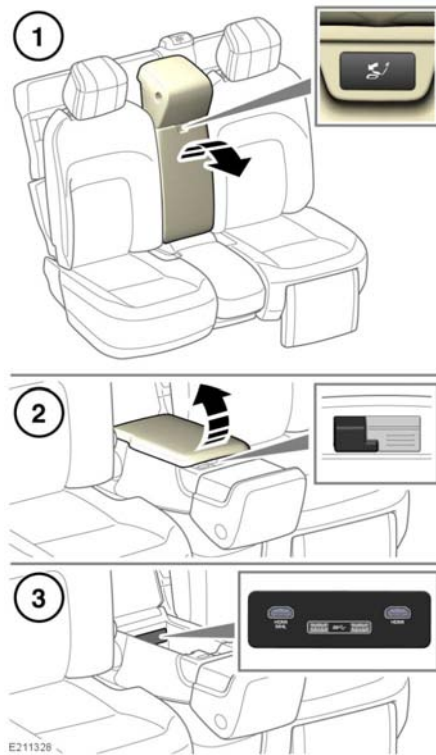
**Note:** The vehicle may be fitted with a domestic power socket, depending on vehicle specification. The high voltage power outlet is located under a flap.

5. 12V power socket in the loadspace.

**Note:** The vehicle may also be fitted with a domestic power socket, depending on vehicle specification.

## Storage compartments

### Rear Executive Class Seating



Two USB sockets are located inside the executive armrest, depending on vehicle specification.

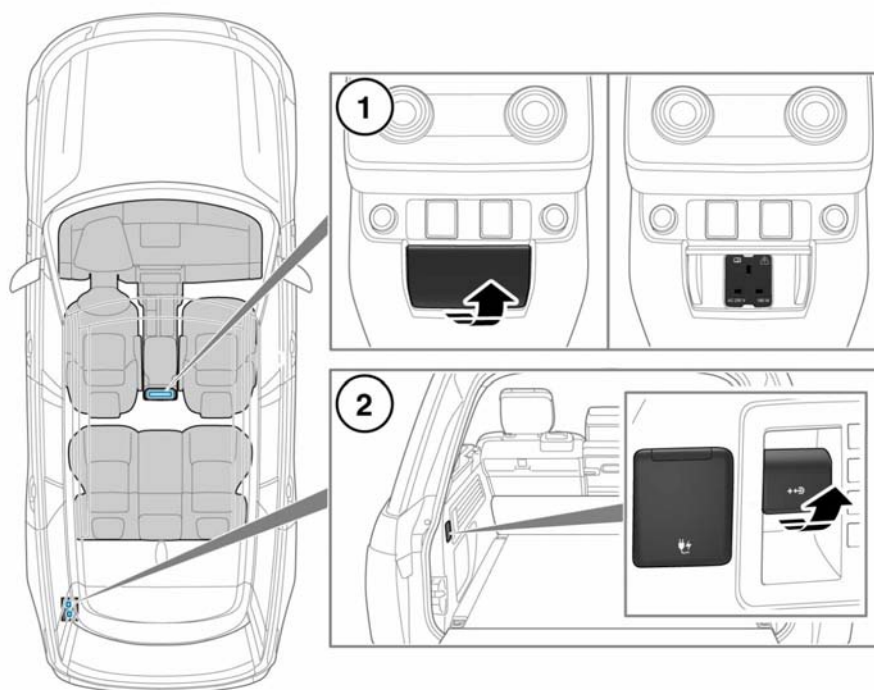
To access the USB sockets:

1. Press the fold button to fold down the armrest.
2. Press the release button on the underside of the upper lid to lift up the upper lid.
3. The 5V USB sockets are located inside the executive armrest storage.



## Storage compartments

### Vehicles with domestic power sockets



E211598

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not plug any adaptors into the domestic power sockets. Doing so can result in serious injury or fire.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet when the device is not in use. Doing so can result in serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Always keep the socket cover closed when not in use. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not insert conductive materials, such as a metal pins into the contacts of the domestic power socket. Inserting conductive materials into the contacts can cause serious injury or death.



## Storage compartments

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not spill liquid over the sockets. Spilling liquid over the sockets can cause serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure the sockets are completely dry before being used. Using wet power sockets may result in electrocution, serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not use extension leads. Extension leads may disable the safety protection within the system.

### **NOTICE**

Do not insert objects other than an approved accessory plug into the high voltage power outlet. Using any other accessory may damage the vehicle's electrical system. If in any doubt, contact a retailer or authorized repairer.

### **NOTICE**

Heavy appliances or plugs can damage the mounting of the high voltage power outlets if the appliances or plugs are suspended directly from the sockets.

### **NOTICE**

The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.

### **NOTICE**

Any device connected to the domestic power sockets only operates when rated at or below 120 Watts and the ignition is switched on.

### **NOTICE**

Heavy appliances or plugs can damage the mounting of the domestic power socket if they are suspended directly from the socket.

There are up to two domestic power sockets in the vehicle, depending on the vehicle's specification.

1. Pull up the flap to access the domestic power socket at the rear of the center console.
2. Power outlet located in the loadspace.

**Note:** The high voltage power outlets can be either 230 V or 110 V, depending on the vehicle's specification.

Domestic power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts. If the vehicle is fitted with two domestic power sockets, the maximum combined operating current for both devices is 120W. The domestic power socket may switch off the power if the 120 Watt limit is exceeded.

The LED on the domestic power socket illuminates in the following cases:

- Amber LED: Illuminates when current is being supplied to the plug and the plug is powering the electrical device that is plugged in.
- Red LED: Illuminates when a failure has been detected. A failure can either happen when the consumption of the electrical device exceeds 120W or the device has a short circuit.

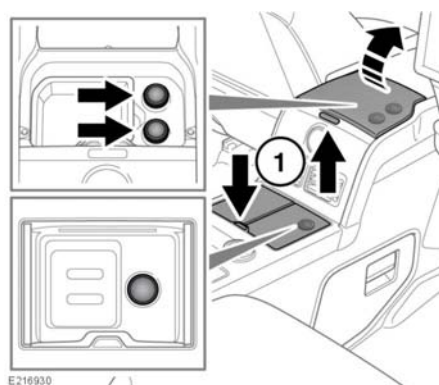
If the LED does not illuminate when an electrical device is plugged in, the inverter is not working. In this case, switch off the vehicle's ignition and restart the engine.

## Storage compartments

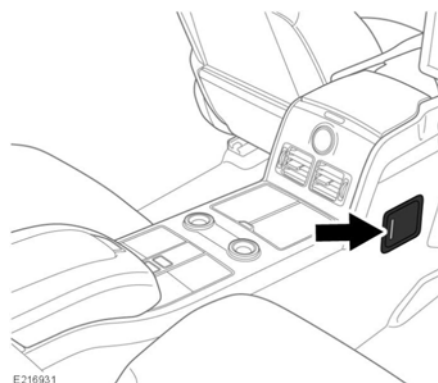
**Note:** If a malfunction has occurred, the socket switches off automatically in the event of an overload or overheating or excessive power use. The socket switches on again automatically after the socket has cooled down. Appliances already connected and switched on activate automatically.

**Note:** The power supply may drop out during an auto start/stop engine cycle. It may be appropriate to disable the auto start/stop system while driving, if using a games console.

### SV Autobiography vehicles long wheelbase



Additional 12V power sockets are located in the storage compartments, as illustrated. Press the relevant button (1) to access the sockets.



A domestic power socket is located on the side of the rear floor console. Press the button to deploy the power socket. Press the button again to store the power socket.

**Note:** The front seat has restricted movement when the power socket is deployed.

Additional USB sockets are located in the rear floor console's storage compartment.

## Load carrying

### LOAD CARRYING

#### ⚠ WARNING

Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and should wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion. Failure to do so can lead to serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

#### ⚠ WARNING

All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured. If the vehicle is involved in an accident or subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.

### LOADSPACE COVER

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Medical devices:** The undersides of the front and mid-loadspace cover sections each contain a magnet. The magnets are located in the recesses along the center line of vehicle. The magnetic field may interfere with pacemakers, defibrillators, or other medical devices.

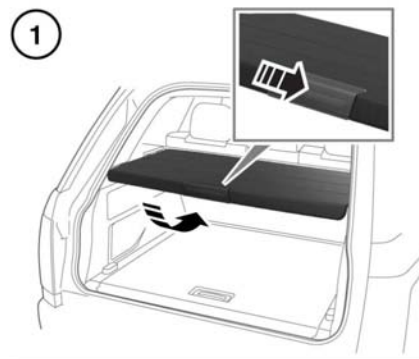
When in the vehicle, or when handling the loadspace cover, maintain at least 6 inches (15 cm) of separation between your pacemaker or defibrillator and the loadspace cover.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Never place objects on top of the loadspace cover. During an accident or sudden maneuver, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not store the loadspace cover loose in the vehicle. During an accident or sudden maneuver, loose objects could cause serious injury or death.

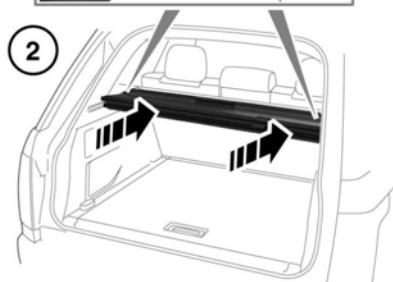
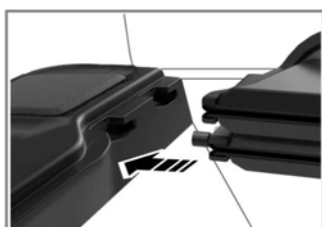


E176786

To fold the loadspace cover

1. Push firmly down and forward. Then push upward on the underside of the loadspace cover handle.
2. Fold the loadspace cover forward.

## Load carrying



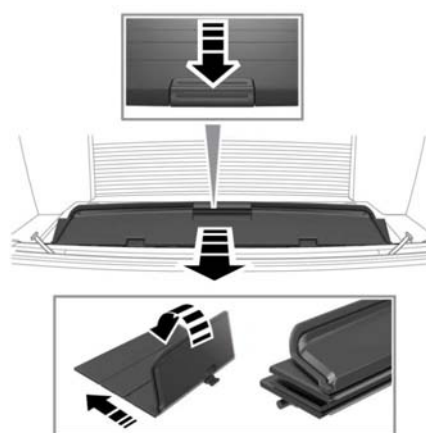
E176787

**Note:** To remove or refit the loadspace cover, it is first necessary to make sure the rear seats are in the fully upright position.

To remove the loadspace cover:

1. Pull the whole assembly rearward to disconnect the locating pins. Remove and store safely.

2. To refit the loadspace cover, place the assembly in position. Engage the locating pins into the sockets and press firmly to lock the assembly in position. If required, pull the outer edge towards the rear, to cover the loadspace area.



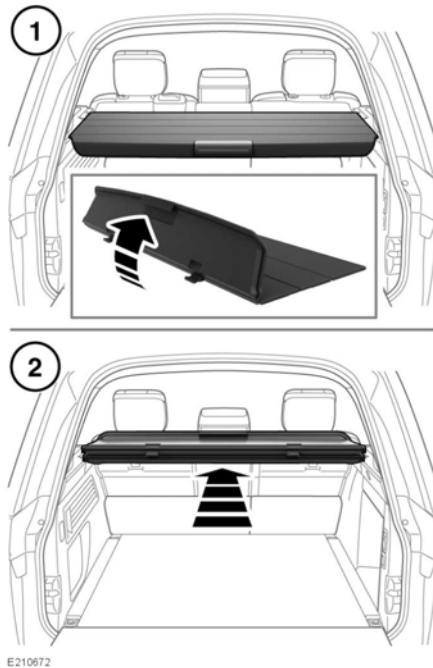
E176788

To access the loadspace from inside the vehicle: Push firmly down on the furthest edge of the cover while pulling it toward the rear seats. The cover folds, allowing access to the loadspace area.

**Note:** To access objects in the loadspace from within the vehicle, it may first be necessary to remove the rear head restraints.

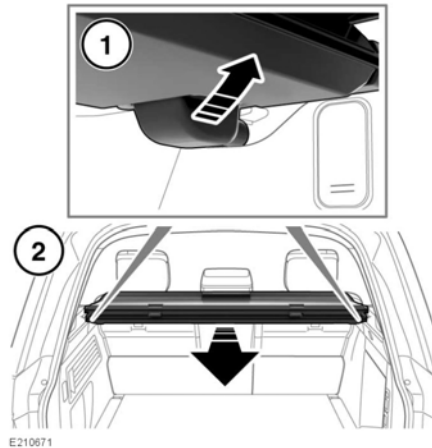
## Load carrying

### Loadspace cover for executive class vehicles



To fold the loadspace cover:

1. Flip over the first board of the loadspace cover.
2. Fold the remaining boards.



**Note:** To remove or refit the loadspace cover, it is first necessary to make sure the rear seats are in the fully upright position.

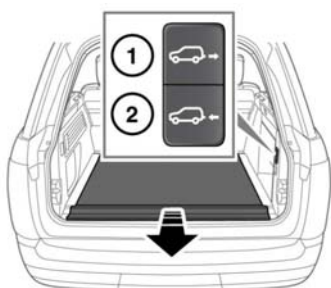
To remove the loadspace cover:

1. Disconnect the two locating pins.
2. Pull the whole assembly rearward.  
Remove and store safely.

To refit the loadspace cover, place the assembly in position. Engage the locating pins into the sockets and press firmly to lock the assembly in position. If required, pull the outer edge towards the rear to cover the loadspace area.

## Load carrying

### DEPLOYABLE LOADSPACE FLOOR



E216934

The deployable loadspace floor is operated by the buttons in the right side of the load compartment.

To operate the deployable loadspace floor:

1. Press and hold the button to move the deployable loadspace floor backward.
2. Press and hold the button to move the deployable loadspace floor forward.



E216936

The deployable loadspace floor can be raised. To raise the deployable loadspace floor:

1. Briefly press the button (1) to move the deployable loadspace floor backward.

2. Lift the deployable loadspace floor by the rear edge.

Support struts hold the deployable loadspace floor in the open position.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure that power cables are disconnected from the high voltage power socket before raising the deployable loadspace floor. Power cables may become trapped. Death or serious injury could occur.**

#### **NOTICE**

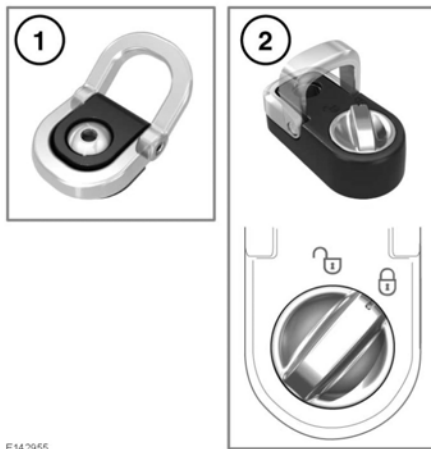
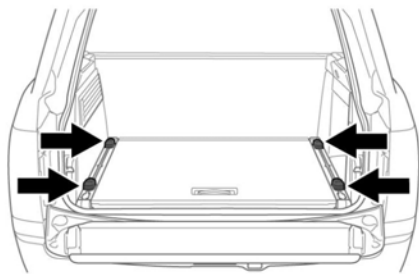
*Make sure that the high voltage power socket flap is in the fully closed position before raising the deployable loadspace floor. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.*

## Load carrying

### LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

#### ⚠ WARNING

All items carried in the loadspace area should be properly secured. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.



E142955

1. To assist in safely securing large items of luggage, four lashing eyes are located in the loadspace floor.

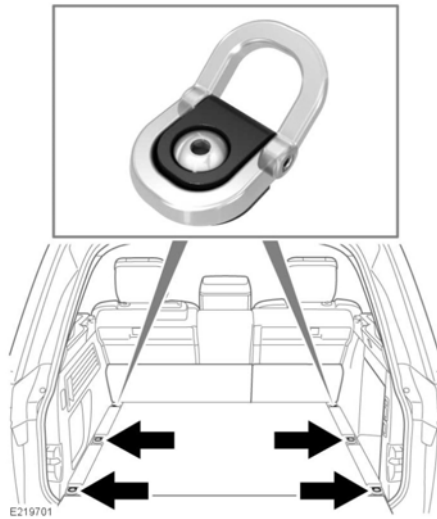
2. If adjustable lashing eyes are fitted, first turn the locking switch counter-clockwise to unlock. Press the locking switch and slide to the required position in the luggage rail. Release the locking switch to latch it into position. Move the lashing eye slightly until a click is heard. The lashing eye is now secured. Turn the button clockwise to lock.

**Note:** A range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from a retailer/authorized repairer.



## Load carrying

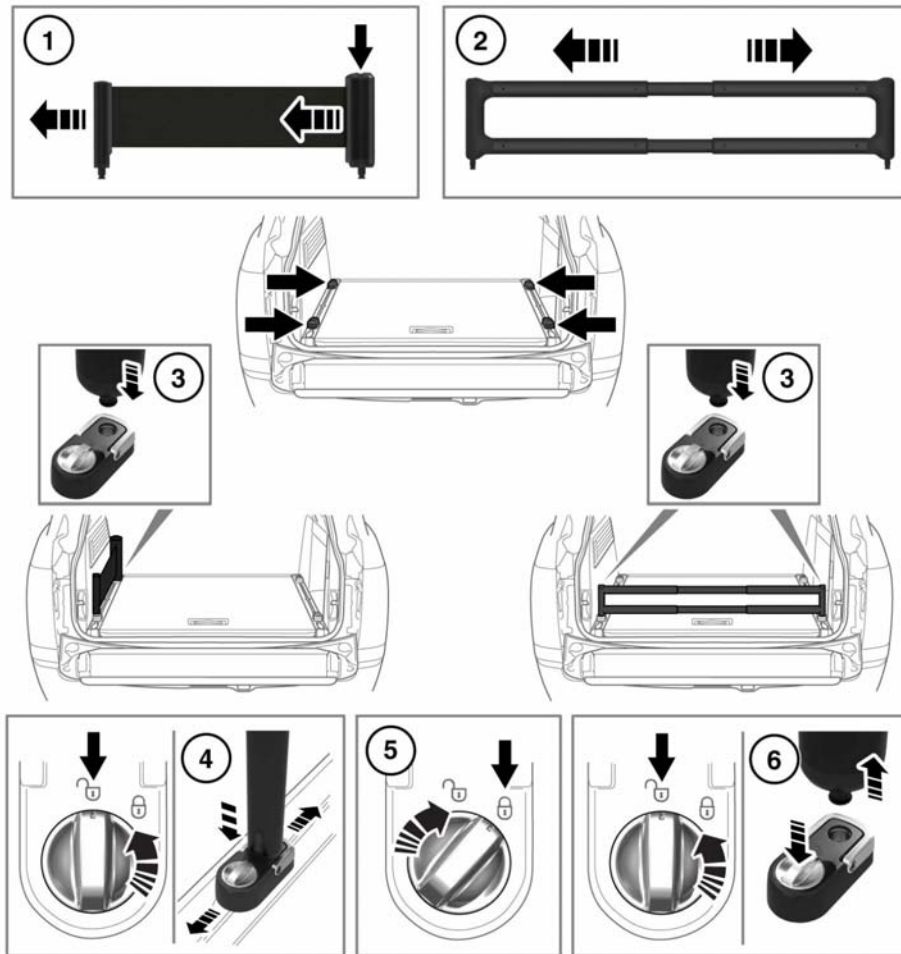
### Hybrid vehicles



To assist in safely securing large items of luggage, six lashing eyes are located in the loadspace floor.

## Load carrying

### LUGGAGE DIVIDER



E178047

A luggage divider kit is provided, to assist with safely securing items of luggage to the loadspace floor.

Floor-mounted luggage rails provide a full width mounting channel. The channel accommodates a flexible retracting band and/or a solid telescopic divider, to secure soft and hard luggage of all shapes and sizes.

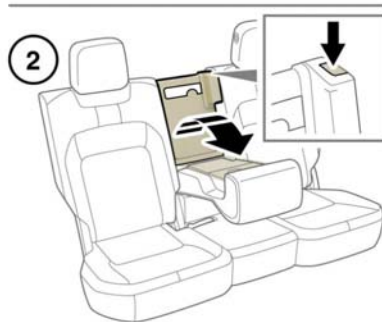
## Load carrying

1. Press, then pull the retracting band until, the required length is reached.  
**Note:** *Only use the retracting band along the side of the loadspace floor, as illustrated.*
2. Adjust the divider to the required length.
3. Unlock the appropriate lashing eye. Attach the retracting band and divider.
4. With the lashing eye in the unlocked position, press the mechanism and slide to the required position in the luggage rail.
5. Lock the lashing eye in the required position.
6. To remove the retracting band and divider from the lashing eye, unlock the lashing eye and press the lock or unlock button to release.



## Load carrying

### SKI HATCH



E210725

The ski hatch, located in the backrest, can be used for transporting long objects.

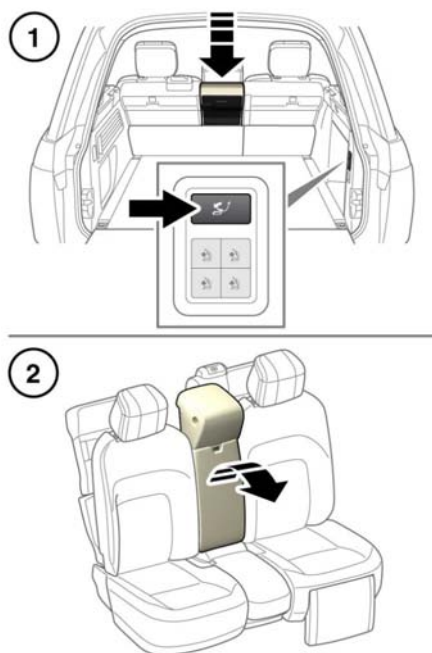
To open the ski hatch:

1. Release and lower the rear seat armrest.
2. Press the center release button and fold down the ski hatch panel.

To close the ski hatch panel, push the panel up to the closed position.

## Load carrying

### Ski hatch for executive class vehicles



E210707

To open the ski hatch:

1. Press the button with the ski hatch symbol. The button is part of the seat fold control panel in the loadspace.
2. The rear seat armrest and the ski hatch fold down.

To close the ski hatch, push the ski hatch panel up to the closed position. The ski hatch locks automatically.



## Towing

### TOWING WEIGHTS

Maximum permissible towing weights	Variant	lb (kg)
Maximum tow mass of an unbraked trailer.	All vehicles.	1 653 (750)
Maximum tow mass.	2.0 L Gasoline Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) - standard wheelbase.	5 511 (2 500)
	All other standard wheelbase vehicles.	7 716 (3 500)
	5.0 L Gasoline - long wheelbase.	7 716 (3 500)
Tongue weight (Certified).	2.0 L Gasoline PHEV.	220 (100)
	All other vehicles.	330 (150)
Maximum tongue weight (Design). <sup>1</sup>	Electrically deployable tow ball towing a trailer with overrun brakes.	440 (200)
	All other tow balls towing a trailer with overrun brakes.	771 (350)
Tow ball mounted accessories.	All vehicles.	147 (66.8)

Make sure to never exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), the Gross Train Weight (GTW), or the front and rear axle weights. See **472, WEIGHTS**.

**Note:** Include the trailer's tongue weight when calculating the GVW and the rear axle weight.

**Note:** When calculating the vehicle's rear axle weight, the vehicle's payload weights must also be considered. Include the combined weights of all the rear passengers, the loadspace, roof rail, accessory equipment, and the trailer tongue weight. The combined weights must never exceed the GVW or the maximum weights for the front and rear axles.

## Towing

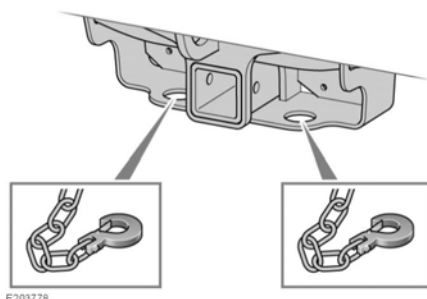
**Note:** Make sure to observe and comply with the legal requirements for the area in which the vehicle is traveling.

**Note:** <sup>1</sup> For every pound above 331 lbs (150 kg) added to the trailer tongue weight, the same weight must be removed from the vehicle's payload. Make sure that the GVW, the GTW, and the maximum rear axle weight limits are not exceeded when applying the trailer tongue weight. If required, reduce the weight of the vehicle's payload.

For further information, contact a retailer/authorised repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See **466, LABEL LOCATIONS.**

### TOW HITCH RECEIVER

**Note:** When towing, make sure that safety chains are attached at the correct locations, as illustrated.



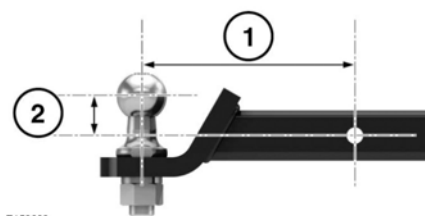
The tow hitch receiver is an available towing option for this vehicle. The fitting of a tow hitch is required before towing. See **143, TOW HITCH.**

### TOW HITCH

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Never leave the tow hitch loose in the vehicle. In the event of an accident, or during heavy braking, it can become a projectile, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

The fitting of a tow hitch is required for towing with the class IV tow hitch receiver.



The following tow hitch dimensions must be adhered to:

1. The maximum recommended length is 8.5 in (216 mm).
2. To achieve the maximum ball height, a rise of 1.13 in (29 mm) is recommended.

If required, consult a retailer/authorized repairer for the latest information.

### TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA)

**Note:** The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) system does not operate in the event of the trailer jack-knifing.

**Note:** The TSA system does not operate when Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.

**Note:** The TSA system performance may reduce when traveling on slippery surfaces.

## Towing

When a trailer is correctly attached to the vehicle, the TSA system automatically detects when trailer sway is developing. When active, the TSA system gradually reduces the vehicle's speed by reducing engine power and applying the brakes to help regain stability control.

### HITCH ASSIST

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Only use towing equipment that is approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Non-approved towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy and performance of the vehicle's towing features. The potential result can lead to vehicle damage and personal injury.**

Hitch assist aids the process of reversing the vehicle to a trailer's tow hitch.

Operate as follows:

1. Select Reverse (R) to automatically display a rear-view image on the touchscreen.
2. Touch the **settings** icon to display the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu. Select **ON** from the **Hitch Assist** option, to display the guidance lines.
3. Reverse the vehicle toward the trailer.
4. As the vehicle closes to within 24 inches (600 mm) of the trailer's tow hitch, an automated zoom feature enlarges the view on the touchscreen.
5. Continue the maneuver until the vehicle and trailer are as close as required.

### TOW ASSIST

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Only use towing equipment that is approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Non-approved towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy and performance of the vehicle's towing features. The potential result can lead to vehicle damage and personal injury.**

The tow assist feature displays the predicted path of both the vehicle and the trailer as colored trajectory lines on the touchscreen.



E134952

The tow assist feature uses the vehicle's rear camera and a target sticker to constantly monitor the position of a connected trailer. The target sticker must be affixed to the trailer in the same orientation as illustrated. To display the correct sticker location for the trailer, follow the on-screen instructions for the new trailer configuration menus on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The tracking target sticker must be affixed at a distance of between 3.3 ft (1 m) and 6.6 ft (2 m) from the rear of the vehicle. The tracking target sticker must be affixed to a flat vertical surface that is parallel to the rear of the vehicle. The tow assist feature does not operate if these conditions are not met.



## Towing

Different light conditions between the vehicle's rear camera and the trailer's target sticker can affect the operation of the tow assist feature. In this event, the touchscreen extinguishes the displayed trajectory lines and operation of the tow assist feature is suspended. Normal tow assist operation resumes when the light levels are no longer different.

Some examples of differing light conditions are as follows:

- Lower light levels on the target sticker, e.g., a shadow.
- Higher light levels on the target sticker, e.g., direct sunlight.
- Higher light levels on the rear camera, e.g., direct sunlight.

Switch the ignition off when connecting electrical equipment to the tow bar socket. After connection, switch the ignition on to enable the vehicle to detect the connection. If the ignition is switched on during connection, opening and closing the driver's door enables the vehicle to detect the connection. The touchscreen displays a pop-up menu. Select the relevant soft key to enable the tow assist feature, if connecting a trailer with a target sticker. Select the alternative soft key to cancel the tow assist feature, if connecting accessory equipment or a trailer without a target sticker.

With the tow assist feature enabled, the touchscreen guides the driver through a set of menus. If applicable, select the trailer's existing profile. Alternatively, create a profile for a new trailer. In this event, the touchscreen guides the driver through a series of configuration options.

Calibrate the connected trailer by driving the vehicle with the steering wheel in the straight ahead position. The touchscreen displays the status. Select **OK**, when complete.

**Note:** Do not use the tow assist feature until the trailer calibration is complete.

In the event of persistent problems with the configuration or calibration of a trailer, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

When a trailer configuration is created, or selected, the touchscreen automatically displays the trailer's reverse view when Reverse (**R**) is selected.

### ADVANCED TOW ASSIST

#### **WARNING**

**The driver is always responsible for detecting obstacles, and for estimating both the trailer and the vehicle's distance from the obstacles, when maneuvering. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.**

#### **WARNING**

**The driver must always control the vehicle's speed via normal driving operation of the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.**

**Note:** Using towing equipment approved by the vehicle manufacturer is recommended. Non-approved towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy, performance, and safety of the vehicle's towing systems.

**Note:** The advanced tow assist system does not operate if the tailgate is open, or unlatched. In this event, the touchscreen displays a message.



## Towing

**Note:** The advanced tow assist system does not operate if the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system is enabled.

The advanced tow assist system automatically operates the steering when the vehicle is driven in reverse with a connected trailer.

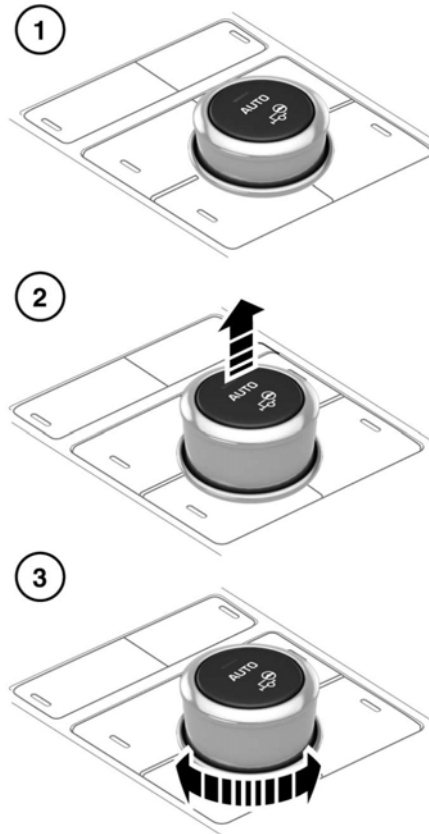
The driver only needs to operate the steering wheel to override the automatic steering operation.

The touchscreen displays the driver's intended trajectory path to reverse the vehicle with a trailer connected. The touchscreen also displays the vehicle's camera views.

Different light conditions between the vehicle's rear camera and the trailer's target sticker can affect the operation of the advanced tow assist system. In this event, the touchscreen extinguishes the displayed trajectory lines and the advanced tow assist system automatically disables. If required, the advanced tow assist selection process has to be carried out again.



The **advanced tow assist** icon is only available for selection if the trailer is correctly connected and calibrated, as described in the tow assist topic. See **144, TOW ASSIST**.



E204078

The advanced tow assist selection process is as follows:

1. Make sure that the terrain response rotary control is in the elevated position. See **195, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

## Towing

2. With the vehicle stationary, select Reverse (**R**). Pull the terrain response rotary control further upward. The touchscreen displays a message to confirm activation. The vehicle's steering control is then transferred to the terrain response rotary control.

**Note:** If **R** is not selected, the touchscreen displays a message.

The **advanced tow assist** icon displays on the **CAMERAS** menu screen. Touch the icon to enable the system. See **320, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

**Note:** If the **advanced tow assist** icon is not displayed, the touchscreen displays a message. In this event, confirm that the trailer is correctly connected and calibrated.

3. Rotate the rotary control to set the trailer's intended steering trajectory path, as displayed on-screen.

When driven, the vehicle automatically steers so that the reversing trailer follows the intended steering trajectory path. If the driver operates the steering wheel to override the automatic steering operation, the touchscreen displays a canceled message.

**Note:** The driver must control the vehicle's speed via the use of the accelerator and brake pedals.

The touchscreen displays two trailer images:

- The solid image indicates the current position of the trailer.
- The outline image indicates the intended trajectory path for the trailer.

The outline image changes color to indicate the current status of the reversing trailer:

- Green lines indicate that the trailer is reversing in a straight line.
- Yellow lines indicate that the trailer is reversing at an angle.
- Red lines indicate that the trailer's reversing angle is too acute. In this event, the touchscreen displays a warning message.

The maximum operational speed for the advanced tow assist system is 5.6 mph (9 km/h). If this speed is exceeded, the advanced tow assist system automatically disables and the touchscreen displays a message.

To manually override and disable the advanced tow assist system, either:

- Manually turn the steering wheel.
- Engage the transmission into an alternative gear, i.e., deselect **R**.
- Touch the **advanced tow assist** icon on the **CAMERAS** menu screen.
- Push the terrain response rotary control downward. The previous terrain response driving program selection is resumed.

The touchscreen displays a canceled message and the **advanced tow assist** icon extinguishes to confirm deselection.

### TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION

**Note:** Only connect approved electrical circuits, which are in good condition, to the vehicle's tow hitch receiver socket.

Failure to do so may result in damage, or affect the correct operation of the vehicle's electrical systems.

**Note:** Only use electrical equipment that requires a 12-volt supply from the vehicle.



## Towing

When a trailer's electrical connection is made and the vehicle's turn signals are used, the trailer warning indicator flashes in time with the turn signals. See **89, TRAILER TURN SIGNALS (GREEN)**.

In the event that the vehicle's turn signals are used and the symbol does not flash, check the trailer's electrical connection. Take appropriate action to make sure that the trailer's turn signals are functioning correctly.

The information in the following table helps to confirm if a trailer or a lighting board is compatible for use with this vehicle. If these conditions are not met, the vehicle will not detect the electrical connection of a trailer or a lighting board.

Function	Minimum load		Maximum load	
	Amps	Watts	Amps	Watts
Turn signal lights, left side.	1.75	21	5	60
Turn signal lights, right side.	1.75	21	5	60
Side marker and tail lights.	-	-	5	60
Reverse lights.	-	-	5	60
Constant power feed.	-	-	15	180
Ignition power feed.	-	-	15	180

Some vehicles may have the provision for the connection of an electric trailer brake module. The information in the following table helps to confirm if an electric trailer brake module is compatible for use with these vehicles. If in doubt contact a retailer/authorized repairer for confirmation.

Function	Maximum amps load
Constant power feed.	30
Brake signal.	2
Illumination supply.	2
Trailer brake module connection to the electrical socket on the tow hitch receiver.	30

## Towing

### ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

#### WARNING

**Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or tongue weight. Exceeding any of these limits could cause instability and a loss of control, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.**

#### WARNING

**Do not loop the safety chains over the tow ball. The chains may slide off, preventing correct operation in the event that a connected trailer becomes detached when towing. Failure to correctly connect breakaway chains can potentially result in serious injury or death.**

Make sure to perform the following essential towing checks:

- To maintain the vehicle's stability, the trailer's tongue weight should not exceed 7% of the trailer's gross weight.
- The trailer's tongue weight must be at least a minimum of 4% of the trailer's gross weight and never less than 55 lb (25 kg).
- When towing a trailer with more than one axle, load the trailer to achieve even weight distribution between the axles.
- When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.

- If the load can be divided between the vehicle and the trailer, loading more weight into the vehicle generally improves stability. Do not exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
- Increase the rear tire pressures on the towing vehicle to those for the maximum vehicle loading conditions.
- Always use a suitable secondary coupling to make sure that the trailer cannot breakaway from the vehicle, i.e., safety chains. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's instructions for guidance.
- Always connect the safety chains to the provided connection locations on the tow bar.
- Make sure that the tow hitch is secure and is the correct specification for the vehicle.
- Check the operation of all the lights on the trailer.

### TOWING A TRAILER

#### WARNING

**Never exceed the maximum weights for either the vehicle or the trailer. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle, and adversely affect the vehicle's stability and braking. The result can also cause a loss of control and increased braking distances, potentially leading to a rollover or crash, causing serious injury or death.**



## Towing

### **⚠ WARNING**

To preserve the vehicle's handling and stability, only fit approved towing accessories. Failure to do so can potentially cause a loss of control, resulting in a rollover or a crash, causing serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Never use the vehicle's towing eyes or lashing points to tow a trailer, as they have not been designed for this purpose. Doing so will cause serious vehicle damage, which in turn may result in a crash, potentially causing serious injury or death.

### **NOTICE**

*The use of weight distribution hitches is not recommended. Using weight distribution hitches can potentially cause serious damage to the vehicle.*

**Note:** A reduction in the performance of the Air Conditioning (A/C) system is normal under high load towing conditions.

Make sure that the towing vehicle and the trailer are being used in accordance with the vehicle and trailer manufacturers' recommendations and any applicable legislation. See **472, WEIGHTS** and **142, TOWING WEIGHTS**.

The touchscreen can display a rear-view image to assist with the reversing of the vehicle with a trailer attached. See **320, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

When towing a trailer weighing more than 4 409 lb (2 000 kg), a smoother pull away from standstill is achieved with the transfer case engaged in low range. Change to high range when the vehicle is moving. See **178, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.

### **NOTICE**

*To avoid overheating the transmission, it is not advisable to tow heavy trailer loads at speeds of less than 20 mph (32 km/h) in high range. Select low range instead.*

## Vehicle charging

### VEHICLE CHARGING INTRODUCTION

A home charging cable is supplied with the vehicle. The home charging cable should be stored in its carry bag when not in use. Make sure the carry bag's tether straps are secured to the luggage anchor points when the vehicle is traveling. See **136, LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS**.

The home charging cable should only be used if a public charging cable and charging station are not available. A public charging cable connected to a charging station should be used whenever possible. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer in order to source a public charging cable and charging station.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**The high voltage system has no serviceable parts. Never disassemble, remove or replace high voltage components, cables or connectors. Tampering with the high voltage system can cause severe burns or electric shock, which may result in serious injury or death. High voltage cables and connectors are coloured orange for identification purposes. If maintenance or repair is required, always consult a retailer/authorized repairer.**

#### **NOTICE**

*The electricity supply from any property should be checked and approved by suitably qualified persons before connecting a charging cable. Serious damage to the property may occur if the electricity supply is not appropriate for charging a hybrid vehicle.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not use a charging cable if there is any damage to the unit. If damage is apparent, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not use an extension lead or multiple socket in order to extend the reach of a charging cable. Serious damage to the extension cable and the property may occur.*

#### **NOTICE**

*When traveling abroad, do not connect a plug adaptor to a charging cable. Serious damage to the adaptor and the property may occur.*

**Note:** The vehicle supports AC charging only.

In some circumstances, the vehicle may not charge. A failure to charge is identified in the following ways:

- Via messages in the instrument panel and on the touchscreen.
- Via the charging port indicators.
- Via the charging cable indicators.

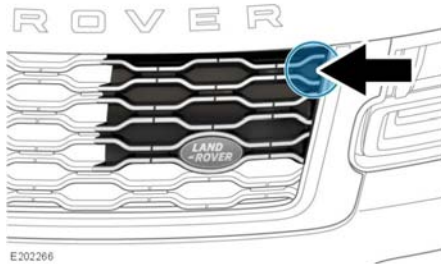
A failure to charge could be caused by:

- A vehicle battery fault.
- A high voltage cooling system fault.
- A fault with the electricity supply to the vehicle.

This list is not exhaustive. If the vehicle fails to charge, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

## Vehicle charging

### CHARGING PORT LOCATION



The charging port is located behind the front grille.

Depending on the specification of the vehicle, with the vehicle unlocked, carry out the following to gain access to the charging port:

- Press the top right corner of the grille, in the position illustrated above.
- Pull the top right corner of the grille, in the position illustrated above.

Once open, move the cap aside to gain access to the charging port.



1. Charging port cap.
2. Charging cable.
3. Charging port LEDs. See **153, CHARGING PORT INDICATORS.**

4. Charging port indicator label.

### CONNECTING A CHARGING CABLE

#### NOTICE

*When charging a Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV), always make sure that the charging cable is fully unwound. Failure to fully unwind the charging cable could lead to overheating of the cable.*

#### NOTICE

*Make sure you select the correct charging cable for your vehicle when using a public charging station. The charging cable should provide an AC charge, with a connector that matches the vehicle's charging port.*

**Note:** Make sure that the AC charging cable meets standard SAE J1772.

To connect a charging cable to the vehicle:

1. Unlock the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (P) is selected.
3. Make sure the vehicle's ignition is switched off.
4. Plug in the domestic connector to the electricity supply.

**Note:** Always connect the charging cable to the electricity supply before connecting to the vehicle. See **151, VEHICLE CHARGING INTRODUCTION.**

5. Open the charging port and remove the cap. See **152, CHARGING PORT LOCATION.**
6. Connect the charging cable to the charging port.



## Vehicle charging

The charging cable is locked in position once connected.

### NOTICE

*Do not attempt to pull the cable from the charging port once it is locked. Damage to the cable's locking mechanism will result. Press the unlock button on the smart key if urgent disconnection is required. The cable's locking mechanism re-engages after 30 seconds.*

If the conditions listed 1-6 above have been met, the charging process starts automatically. See **153, CHARGING PORT INDICATORS** and **155, CHARGING CABLE INDICATORS**.

If a timed charging event has been set, the charging process may be delayed. See **155, TIMED CHARGING OVERVIEW**.

**Note:** *If a power cut occurs during the charging process, the charging process stops. The vehicle checks if power has been restored every 5 minutes. Once power is restored, the charging process resumes automatically.*

**Note:** *A power cut may affect the vehicle's ability to fully charge prior to embarking on a trip.*

**Note:** *The vehicle is unable to start with the charging cable connected. See **169, STARTING THE ENGINE**.*

### CHARGING PORT INDICATORS



LEDs on either side of the charging port inform the user of the charging status. In certain conditions, the LEDs illuminate white to aid connecting the charging cable in dark conditions.

A label adjacent to the charging port provides a quick reference to the behavior of the LEDs in relation to charging status, as follows.



The LEDs on either side of the charging port briefly flash white to confirm that vehicle charging has been initialized.



The LEDs on either side of the charging port flash blue for 10 seconds to indicate that a timed charging event has been set. The charging process will begin at a later time. See **156, TIMED CHARGING**.

## Vehicle charging



The LEDs on either side of the charging port flash green for 10 seconds to indicate that charging has started.



The LEDs on either side of the charging port illuminate green for 10 seconds to indicate that charging is complete.



The LEDs on either side of the charging port flash red for 30 seconds to indicate a charging fault. Check both ends of the charging cable are connected securely. If a public charging station is being used, check that the charging point has been authorized to start charging. If a charging fault persists, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

The charging status can also be viewed via the **MY EV** touchscreen menu. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

## Vehicle charging

### CHARGING CABLE INDICATORS

The home charging cable supplied with the vehicle contains 4 indicators to inform the user of its status.

Power	Charging	Temperature	Fault	Description
Off.	Off.	Off.	Off.	No electrical supply detected.
On.	Off.	Off.	Off.	Cable ready for charging. Wait for the vehicle to request power supply.
On.	Flashing.	Off.	Off.	Charging in progress.
On.	On.	On.	On.	Cable is carrying out a self-test.
On.	Flashing.	On.	Off.	Slow charging due to increased temperature.
On.	Off.	On.	Off.	Charging stopped due to temperature.
On.	Off.	Flashing.	Off.	Charging process interrupted. Check all connections.
Off.	Off.	Off.	Flashing.	Charging fault.
Off.	Off.	Off.	On.	The power supply to the vehicle has failed, or is not appropriate for the cable or vehicle.

### TIMED CHARGING OVERVIEW

Timed charging comprises two main features:

- Preferred charging period.
- Timed charging.

The preferred charging period feature allows the vehicle to use a cheaper rate of electricity based on your household tariff. When set, the vehicle attempts to charge the vehicle within the time window you select. Preferred charging can be set via vehicle preconditioning. See **160, PRECONDITIONING SETTINGS**.

By setting a departure time, the timed charging feature makes sure that the vehicle is in an optimum state of charge prior to a trip. The timed charging feature attempts to charge the vehicle within the preferred charging time window. See **156, TIMED CHARGING**.

**Note:** If it is not possible to fully charge the vehicle before a set departure time, charging will take place outside of the preferred charging time window.



## Vehicle charging

### PREFERRED CHARGING TIME

To set a preferred charging time, from the **TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU** select **Extra Features**. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**:

1. From the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen, select **Vehicle Departures**.
2. Select **NEW DEPARTURE TIME**.
3. Select **Timed Charging**.
4. Use the up and down arrows to set a start and end time.
5. Select **OK**.

The preferred charging time settings remain in the vehicle's memory, and can be reset if necessary.

### TIMED CHARGING

To set a timed charging event, from the **TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU** select **Extra Features**. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**:

1. From the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen, select **Vehicle Departures**.
2. Touch the **VEHICLE DEPARTURES** screen to select a date and time for departure.
3. Use the up and down arrows to adjust the start time, if necessary.
4. Select **Only...** to set a single event. Select **Repeating on** to set a repeating event.
5. Select **Timed Charging** or **Timed Charging and Timed Climate**.
6. Select **OK**.

The first time a timed charging event is set, the **PREFERRED CHARGING PERIOD** screen displays. Use the up and down arrows to select a charging period that takes advantage of the most environmental and economical charging times.

If required, the preferred charging period can be changed via the settings menu.

### DISCONNECTING A CHARGING CABLE

To disconnect a charging cable:

1. Make sure the vehicle is unlocked.

**Note:** The vehicle can be unlocked using the smart key or the keyless entry system. See **11, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE** and **14, PASSIVE ENTRY**.

2. Make sure Park (P) is selected.
3. Make sure the vehicle's ignition is switched off.
4. If the charging cable is fitted with a release button, press the release button and disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle.

**Note:** Always disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle first.

5. Fully close the charging port's cover.
6. Remove the domestic connector from the electricity supply.

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not attempt to pull the cable from the charging port when it is locked. Damage to the cable locking mechanism will result. Press the unlock button on the smart key if urgent disconnection is required. The cable's locking mechanism re-engages after 30 seconds.*

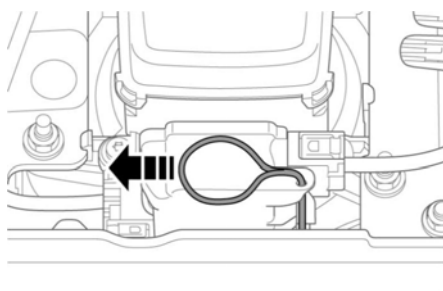
## Vehicle charging

### CHARGING CABLE EMERGENCY RELEASE

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Keep hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys, and fans. Some fans may continue to operate, or start operating, after the engine has stopped. Failure to do so could potentially result in serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

**Note:** The following process should only be used if all other attempts to disconnect the charging cable from the vehicle have failed. If the charging cable fails to release regularly, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.



E202264

If the charging cable does not release, open the hood and pull the ring located behind the front grille.

## Vehicle preconditioning

### VEHICLE PRECONDITIONING SAFETY

Make sure you have read and fully understood the following warnings before using vehicle preconditioning or any of its features. Failure to observe warnings and cautions may result in vehicle damage, injury, or DEATH in the event of an accident.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**Note:** Before attempting to perform any repairs on a vehicle, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

### VEHICLE PRECONDITIONING OVERVIEW

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure all relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 158, VEHICLE PRECONDITIONING SAFETY .**

The timed climate preconditioning system, when in operation, provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin, in advance of using the vehicle. It also assists vehicle start in low temperatures. When leaving the vehicle for a short period of time, using the **Precondition now** option can also maintain a temperature.

Timed departure preconditioning can be controlled via the touchscreen controls. Additionally, it can be operated via a remote climate app. See **158, DEPARTURE TIMES** or **350, INCONTROL OVERVIEW**.

The manual preconditioning can be controlled via the lower touchscreen controls. Additionally, it can be operated via a remote climate app. See **160, PRECONDITIONING SETTINGS** or **350, INCONTROL OVERVIEW**.

The timed climate system may not operate, or switches off automatically, in the following scenarios:

- If the vehicle's high voltage battery charge is low.
- If the coolant temperature is subjected to extreme cold climate conditions. In extreme cold climate conditions, if an engine pre-heater is fitted, it overrides a vehicle preconditioning program.
- If the system has been in operation for 30 minutes.
- If a timed event has been activated within the previous 30 minutes.

### DEPARTURE TIMES

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure all relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 158, VEHICLE PRECONDITIONING SAFETY .**

The touchscreen can be used to either preset activation times or to operate the system manually.

When the system is operating, the **Maximum defrost** icon's LED flashes. The choice of operation is automatically determined by the system, depending on the external temperature.

**Note:** The system ceases operation if the engine is started.

## Vehicle preconditioning



E216235

To access the **VEHICLE DEPARTURES** screen, select **Vehicle Departures** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** page. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

The vehicle departures screen consists of the following:

1. **Time.**
2. **Date.**
3. **Current time.**
4. **Departure times:** Touch to select a departure time and day within the calendar area.
5. **Settings icon:** Touch to select preconditioning departure settings. See **160, PRECONDITIONING SETTINGS**.
6. **Power icon:** Touch to switch on or off.

**Note:** When the power is switched off, the settings are maintained and will be available again when the power is switched back on.

## Vehicle preconditioning



E216236

To access the preconditioning **NEW DEPARTURE** screen, select a day and time in the **VEHICLE DEPARTURES** screen. Select the **Timed Climate** soft key.

To set a single or repeated departure time:

1. Hour: Touch to adjust the hour.
2. Minute: Touch to adjust the minutes.
3. **AM** or **PM**: Touch to select the correct clock zone.
4. Calendar and day: Touch to adjust the calendar's date and day.
5. **OK**: Touch **OK** to confirm departure time and days.
6. Day selection: Touch to select the days that require the repeated departure time.
7. **Repeat**: Touch to enable the departure time to be repeated on other days. Touch again to cancel repeated departure times.

8. **Timed climate** soft key: Touch the soft key to select the timed climate option.

9. **Information** icon: For an overview of timed climate preconditioning.

**Note:** The time format, 12 or 24 hour clock, is determined by the time settings currently selected in the **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu. See 258, **GENERAL SETTINGS**.

### PRECONDITIONING SETTINGS

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Make sure all relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 158, VEHICLE PRECONDITIONING SAFETY .**

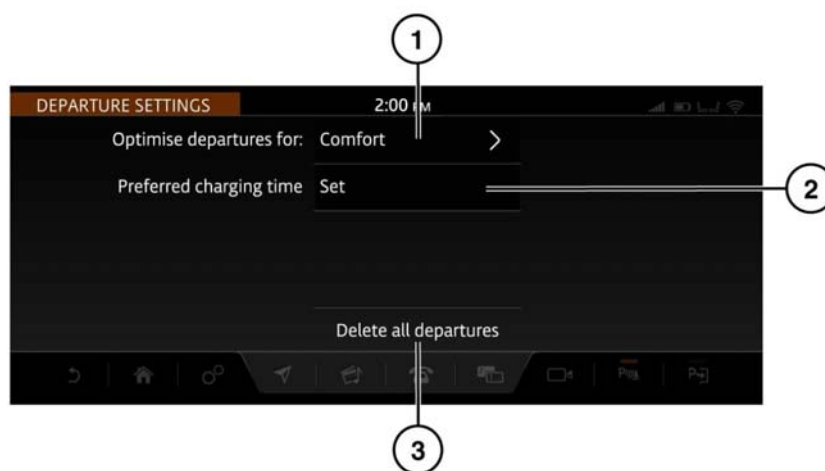


## Vehicle preconditioning

### Departure settings

To access the **DEPARTURE SETTINGS** screen, select the **settings** icon. Select **Departure Settings** from the **SETTINGS** menu. See **158, DEPARTURE TIMES**.

This screen allows the customization of the departure settings.



E218427

Timed climate preconditioning settings may be adjusted as follows:

#### 1. Optimize vehicle departures for:

Select between cabin **Comfort** or vehicle **Range** as a preconditioning preference.

- **Comfort:** Select to perform timed climate preconditioning events, even if the vehicle is not connected to a high voltage battery charging source. The high voltage battery range is reduced when this option is selected.

- **Range:** Select to save battery charge. Timed climate preconditioning events are not performed if the vehicle is not connected to a high voltage battery charging source.

#### 2. Preferred charging period:

Select to set the charge time to benefit from off-peak tariffs when charging. Once selected, touch the up and down arrow keys to manually adjust the time further. For further details on vehicle charging. See **163, MY ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV)**.

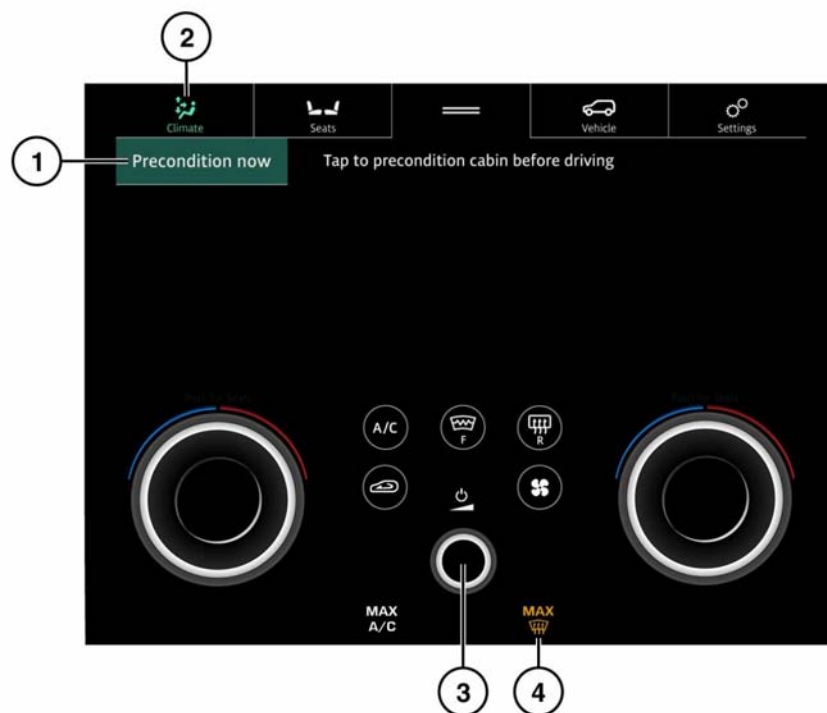
#### 3. Delete all departures:

Select to delete all saved departures.

## Vehicle preconditioning

### Precondition now

To access the **Precondition now** screen for manual settings. Press the **Power** button. Touch the **Climate** icon. Touch the **Precondition now** soft key to switch the manual preconditioning on or off.



E218464

1. **Precondition now** soft key: Touch to switch the manual preconditioning on or off via the lower touchscreen.
2. **Climate** icon: Touch to open or close the **Precondition now** screen, when the ignition is switched off.
3. **Power** button: Press to switch the lower touchscreen on or off when the ignition is switched off.
4. **Maximum defrost** soft key: The maximum defrost soft key flashes when the **Precondition now** option is operating.

## My Electric Vehicle (EV)

### MY ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV)

#### DANGER

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

The My Electric Vehicle (**My EV**) extra feature displays information for operation of the hybrid system. The **My EV** screen display also allows manual selection of the save function. See **163, SAVE**.

Select **My EV** from the touchscreen's **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

The **My EV** menu screen also displays the following information:

- The hybrid system energy flow is dynamically represented via a vehicle image. Operation of the hybrid system is graphically displayed during driving. The active components and the energy flow between them are highlighted.
- The current total driving range for the vehicle.
- The current driving range for the electric motor.

Swipe the **My EV** menu screen to access the **CHARGING** screen, to display information for the current charging status of the hybrid battery.

Select the **Timed charging** soft key to view and change a current timed charging event. See **156, TIMED CHARGING**.

Select the **Charge now** soft key to override a timed charging event.

### SAVE

Selecting the save function holds the current charge level in the hybrid battery. Minor variations in charge level may occur. The driver determines when to use the saved battery charge level by deselecting the save function, e.g., driving in urban areas. See **163, MY ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV)**.

Touch the **SAVE** soft key to enable the save function. The instrument panel displays the **SAVE** message to confirm selection. See **74, INSTRUMENT PANEL: HYBRID VEHICLES**.

Touch the **SAVE** soft key again to disable the save function. The instrument panel extinguishes the **SAVE** message to confirm deselection.

Manually selecting the Electric Vehicle (EV) hybrid mode, exits the save function. If required, the save function has to be selected again. See **166, ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV) MODE**.

### PREDICTIVE ENERGY OPTIMIZATION

The predictive energy optimization feature uses the current route information from the vehicle's navigation system to enhance the hybrid system operation. Use of the stored hybrid battery charge is balanced across the route, to help improve the potential fuel economy. For example, electric motor use is maximised during the low speed sections of the route.

Automatic operation of the predictive energy optimization feature occurs when:

- The route for the current journey is entered into the vehicle's navigation system. See **340, ADDRESS ENTRY**.



## My Electric Vehicle (EV)

- Either the ECO or the comfort driving program is enabled. See **195, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

**Note:** *The predictive energy optimization feature also operates if the **AUTO** driving program is enabled and the vehicle detects on-road driving.*

The **My EV** menu screen displays a green light ahead of the vehicle image when the predictive energy optimization feature is available. See **163, MY ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV)**.

The predictive energy optimization feature is suspended in the following events:

- Insufficient hybrid battery charge.
- The transmission is engaged in Sport (**S**).
- Gear changes via the steering wheel gearshift paddles.
- The vehicle detects off-road driving.

## Hybrid system

### HYBRID SAFETY

#### WARNING

**Never disassemble, remove, or replace high voltage components, cables, or connectors. Tampering with the high voltage system can cause severe burns or electric shock, which may potentially result in serious injury or death.**

The hybrid system has no serviceable parts. The high voltage cables and connectors are coloured orange for identification purposes. If maintenance or repair is required, always consult a retailer/ authorised repairer. Failure to do so, may affect the vehicle's warranty.

The hybrid system is insulated and protected with covers and shields. The result is that:

- The system is insulated from the vehicle.
- The system is protected from the environment.
- Access is prevented by unqualified personnel.

The vehicle monitors the integrity of the hybrid system. If a hybrid system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a relevant warning message and may also illuminate a warning lamp. See **168, HYBRID SYSTEM WARNING MESSAGES.**

### HYBRID SYSTEM OVERVIEW

The hybrid system uses an internal combustion engine and an electric motor to drive the vehicle. Operation of the electric motor and the engine is controlled to improve the vehicle's performance and fuel economy. The hybrid system is capable of sustained driving using only the electric motor, without producing any exhaust emissions.

The hybrid system automatically determines when it is appropriate to operate the electric motor and the engine based on driver demand and driving conditions.

The electric motor is powered via the hybrid battery. The instrument panel displays the current charge level of the hybrid battery and the remaining driving range.

**Note:** *The electric motor does not operate if there is insufficient charge in the hybrid battery.*

The hybrid battery is charged in the following events:

- Using the vehicle's charging cable to connect to an external charging station. **152, CONNECTING A CHARGING CABLE.**
- Regenerative braking: Occurs during light to moderate braking and when the vehicle is decelerating with the engine off. In these events, the electric motor recovers energy and recharges the hybrid battery. Under heavy braking the vehicle's braking system is also used to slow the vehicle. The instrument panel's power gauge displays the regenerated energy.

The save function is available to prevent further depletion of the hybrid battery when driving. See **163, SAVE.**

## Hybrid system

### ACOUSTIC VEHICLE ALERT SYSTEM (AVAS)

The Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS) automatically emits an external synthesized sound to enable pedestrians to be audibly aware of the vehicle's presence. AVAS operates when only the electric motor is driving the vehicle at speeds less than 19 mph (30 km/h). See **165, HYBRID SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

If the vehicle detects an AVAS fault, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If the fault persists, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

### ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV) MODE

**Note:** The Electric Vehicle (EV) mode does not enable if the ambient temperature is too cold.

The EV mode uses the electric motor. The engine restarts if it is required to support high driving demands.

Deactivating the auto stop/start system also deactivates the EV mode. See **174, DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START**.

#### **NOTICE**

*Make sure to deactivate the auto stop/start system if the vehicle is to be driven through water, i.e., wading. In this event, the engine should be used at all times. Failure to do so can result in damage to the vehicle.*



E203841

To enable the EV mode, press the **EV** button located on the center console. The button's LED indicator lamp illuminates to confirm selection. The instrument panel displays the **EV** message to confirm selection. See **74, INSTRUMENT PANEL: HYBRID VEHICLES**.

Operation of the engine suspends operation of the EV mode. In this event, the **EV** message illuminates gray in the instrument panel to confirm the status change.

## Hybrid system

To disable the EV mode, press the **EV** button again. The button's LED indicator lamp extinguishes to confirm deselection. The instrument panel also extinguishes the **EV** message to confirm deselection. Selecting the **SAVE** function from the **My EV** extra feature menu screen also deselects the EV mode. See **163, MY ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV)**.

The following conditions may prevent the EV mode being enabled, or may prompt an engine restart if the EV mode is already active:

- Selecting Sport (**S**). See **176, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION**.
- In Low Range, Sand program or Rock Crawl program is selected. See **195, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.
- A steering wheel paddle shift is used to select a gear. See **176, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION**.
- The auto stop/start system is deselected. See **174, DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START**.
- The vehicle's battery charge levels are too low.
- The vehicle's batteries are not at the required operating temperature.
- The vehicle's current power demand exceeds the level shown by the engine restart marker, displayed in the instrument panel's power gauge. See **74, INSTRUMENT PANEL: HYBRID VEHICLES**.
- High demand from the heating and ventilation systems.
- The hood is opened.
- The ambient temperature is less than 25°F (-4°C).

In all of the previously listed events, the instrument panel displays a relevant message. Also, the instrument panel does not illuminate the **EV** message.



## Hybrid system

### HYBRID SYSTEM WARNING MESSAGES

If the instrument panel displays a hybrid system related critical warning message, the critical message warning lamp illuminates. An audible tone also sounds. See **83, CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)**.

The critical warning messages are as follows:

Critical warning message	Action
<b>Electric Drive Only. Performance And Range Reduced</b>	The vehicle can only be powered by the electric motor and has a limited range. Stop the vehicle when it is safe to do so. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer.
<b>Range Reduced</b>	The vehicle has a limited range, stop the vehicle at the nearest safe location. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer.
<b>High Voltage Shut Down Not Possible. System Live</b>	The vehicle can still be driven. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.
<b>Range Reduced. Hybrid Battery Too Cold</b> <sup>1</sup>	Find a safe location, warmer conditions or a charging source before stopping.

<sup>1</sup> Extreme cold climate conditions can affect the hybrid battery and limits the ability of the car to re-start.

If the instrument panel displays a hybrid system related general warning message, observe the required action in the following table:

General warning message	Action
<b>Hybrid System And A/C Temporarily Unavailable</b>	The vehicle can still be driven, but the hybrid system and the Air Conditioning (A/C) system does not operate. If no further warning messages are displayed during this temporary condition, no action is required.
<b>Hybrid Battery Fault</b>	The vehicle can still be driven, but the hybrid system's functionality may be reduced. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.



## Starting the engine

### STARTING SAFETY

#### WARNING

**Never start the engine and leave it running when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.**

#### **NOTICE**

*If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking, as this discharges the battery. The catalytic converter may also be damaged due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.*

**Note:** The smart key may not be detected if placed within a metal container, or shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop, including when inside a laptop bag, or a games console. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, an engine start, or the engine start backup procedure.

### STARTING THE ENGINE

#### WARNING

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before starting the vehicle. See 169, STARTING SAFETY.**

To start the engine:

1. Make sure a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (P) is selected.
3. Press the brake pedal firmly.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

**Note:** For vehicles with a diesel engine, the delay period before cranking begins is longer in low ambient temperatures. The extended delay period is due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay period, the brake pedal must remain firmly pressed.

**Note:** It is not possible to start a Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV) if it is plugged into a charging point and charging. The vehicle is also locked in **P** while charging. The instrument panel displays the message **Disconnect charge cable before starting vehicle** to inform the driver that starting has been inhibited. See **156, DISCONNECTING A CHARGING CABLE**.

#### WARNING

**If the vehicle is left in a driveable condition with the engine running, the driver exit feature does not prevent the vehicle from moving. Always make sure the vehicle is not left in a driveable condition, as serious injury or death may occur.**

For more information on the driver exit feature, see **174, DRIVER EXIT**.

### SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

Before switching off the engine, it is recommended that the vehicle is stationary. Make sure the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and the transmission is in Park (P).

Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine now stops. The vehicle's ignition system also switches off.

To switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving:



## Starting the engine

### **WARNING**

**It is not advisable to switch off the engine when the vehicle is moving. Driving with due care and attention remains the driver's responsibility. Always drive in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.**

If a situation arises where engine switch-off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for longer than 2 seconds, or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 3 seconds.

With either method, the instrument panel displays the message **Engine Stop Button Pressed**.

### **SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**

To switch on the vehicle's ignition system without starting the engine:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle and that the brake pedal is not pressed.

**Note:** *If the brake pedal is pressed when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine starts.*

2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the instrument panel warning lamps illuminate.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.

### **ROLLING RESTART**

If the engine is switched off while the vehicle is moving, a rolling restart can be initiated. Selecting Neutral (**N**) and press the engine **START/STOP** button.

**Note:** *The engine **START/STOP** button is inhibited for 2 seconds after the engine has been switched off.*

### **ENGINE START BACKUP**

The engine start backup feature is required to disarm the alarm and start the engine if either of the following occur:

- The vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key blade.
- The smart key is not detected by the vehicle.

The engine start backup feature can only be used when the instrument panel displays **Smart Key not recognized**.

**Reposition or place as shown and press Start button.**

## Starting the engine



E210985

To carry out the engine start backup procedure:

1. Position the smart key flat against the side of the steering column.  
**Note:** *There are markings on the steering column to help locate the correct position.*
2. While holding the smart key in position, firmly press the brake pedal.
3. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

If the smart key is not recognized, or if the engine fails to start, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

### IF THE ENGINE FAILS TO START

All vehicles

#### NOTICE

*Seek qualified assistance if the vehicle has been in a recent collision and the engine fails to start when the **START/STOP** button is pressed. Damage to the vehicle may have occurred.*

If the engine fails to start, and a valid smart key is inside the vehicle, a check must be made to determine the cause. To do this:

1. Switch on the vehicle's ignition. See **170, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION.**
2. Check the instrument panel for any illuminated warning lamps and messages. Seek qualified assistance, if necessary. See **82, WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS** and **76, WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES.**
3. Switch off the vehicle's ignition.

Alternatively, if the engine fails to start, the alarm system may need to be reset. To reset the alarm system, lock and unlock the vehicle. See **11, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE.**

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

#### Gasoline vehicles only

If the engine persistently fails to start, carry out the following steps:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure that Park (P) or Neutral (N) is selected.
3. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps in the instrument panel illuminate.



## Starting the engine

4. Firmly press the brake pedal.
5. Slowly press the accelerator pedal, and hold it in the fully pressed position.
6. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine begins to crank.
7. Release the accelerator pedal when the engine starts.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

### ENGINE PRE-HEATER

#### **NOTICE**

*The fitting of an engine pre-heater does not eliminate the need for antifreeze. Damage may be caused to the engine if the correct mixture of antifreeze is not present.*

Engines are more difficult to start when the ambient temperature is very low. In geographical areas where temperatures below 14°F (-10°C) are experienced frequently, it is advisable to fit an engine pre-heater. The pre-heater has an insulated connector at the front of the vehicle, which is connected to a mains supply using a suitable extension cable. The pre-heater can remain in use overnight, if required. Typically, an engine pre-heater uses between 0.4 and 1 kWh.

For further information, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

## Auto stop/start

### AUTO STOP/START

#### NOTICE

*Always disable the auto stop/start system before wading. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.*

The auto stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency. The system automatically activates when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. Unless it is required to support other vehicle systems, the engine switches off when the vehicle is stationary, e.g., at traffic lights. When the engine stops, it is referred to as an auto stop.

When the brake pedal is released, or a drive gear is selected, the engine automatically restarts. When the engine restarts, it is referred to as an auto start.

Operation of the auto stop/start system is indicated by a status icon in the instrument panel. See **87, AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)**.

**Note:** *When activated, the auto stop/start system does not always stop the engine when the vehicle is stationary. The system may restart the engine after the vehicle has stopped.*

#### TRIGGERING AN AUTO STOP

To trigger an auto stop, drive forward with Drive **(D)** or Sport **(S)** selected, and stop the vehicle. Fully press the brake pedal to make sure the vehicle is stationary.

The following conditions inhibit an auto stop:

- The external temperature is less than approximately 28°F (-2°C).
- The external temperature is more than approximately 104°F (40°C).

- The engine or other vehicle systems have not reached their optimum operating temperatures.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- Demand from the climate control system requires the engine to be running, e.g., when in defrost mode.
- The vehicle's battery charge is low.
- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- After reversing, the vehicle's speed has not exceeded 10 mph (16 km/h).
- A paddle shift has been used to select a gear.

The instrument panel displays an information lamp when the vehicle is stationary and the auto stop/start system is active, but operation is inhibited. See **89, AUTO STOP/START INHIBIT (WHITE)**.

#### TRIGGERING AN AUTO START

To trigger an auto start, release the brake pedal with Drive **(D)** or Sport **(S)** selected.

The engine also restarts if one of the following occurs:

- The auto stop/start system is deactivated.
- Reverse **(R)** is selected.
- Demand from the climate control system increases.
- The vehicle begins to move.
- The vehicle's battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- A gearshift paddle is used to select a gear.

## Auto stop/start

### DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START

Touch the **Vehicle** icon on the lower touchscreen in order to display the **A OFF** icon. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.



Touch the **A OFF** icon to deactivate the auto stop/start system.

**Note:** The auto stop/start system is automatically deactivated if low range or Hill Descent Control (HDC) is selected. The system is also deactivated if certain terrain response special programs are selected by the driver, or selected by the **AUTO** driving program.

**Note:** Touching the **A OFF** icon disables Electric Vehicle (EV) mode on Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEVs). See **166, ELECTRIC VEHICLE (EV) MODE**.

When the auto stop/start system is deactivated, the instrument panel momentarily displays the message **Auto Stop/Start off**. A status icon is also displayed. See **90, AUTO STOP/START OFF (WHITE)**.

The instrument panel displays the message **Auto Stop/Start not available** if the icon is selected while the system is unable to operate.

**Note:** The auto stop/start system automatically reactivates the next time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

### DRIVER EXIT

#### ⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is left in a driveable condition with the engine running, the driver exit feature does not prevent the vehicle from moving. Make sure the vehicle is not left in a driveable condition, as serious injury or death may occur.

To prevent the vehicle from being inadvertently left in a driveable condition, the vehicle detects when a driver is not present. If this is the case, the system automatically switches off the vehicle's ignition system. Once the vehicle's ignition is switched off, the vehicle can be locked, if required. See **24, LOCK CONFIRMATION**.

The driver exit feature is only active when:

- The vehicle is stationary, and:
- The engine has been switched off by either the auto stop/start system or, if applicable, the hybrid system.

#### Non-hybrid vehicles

If Drive (**D**), Sport (**S**), or Neutral (**N**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off if both the following conditions exist:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, and:
- The brake pedal is released.

## Auto stop/start

If Park (**P**) is selected, the driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled.

### Hybrid vehicles only

If **P** is selected, the driver exit feature switches off the vehicle's ignition if all the following conditions exist:

- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The driver's door is opened.
- The pedals are released.

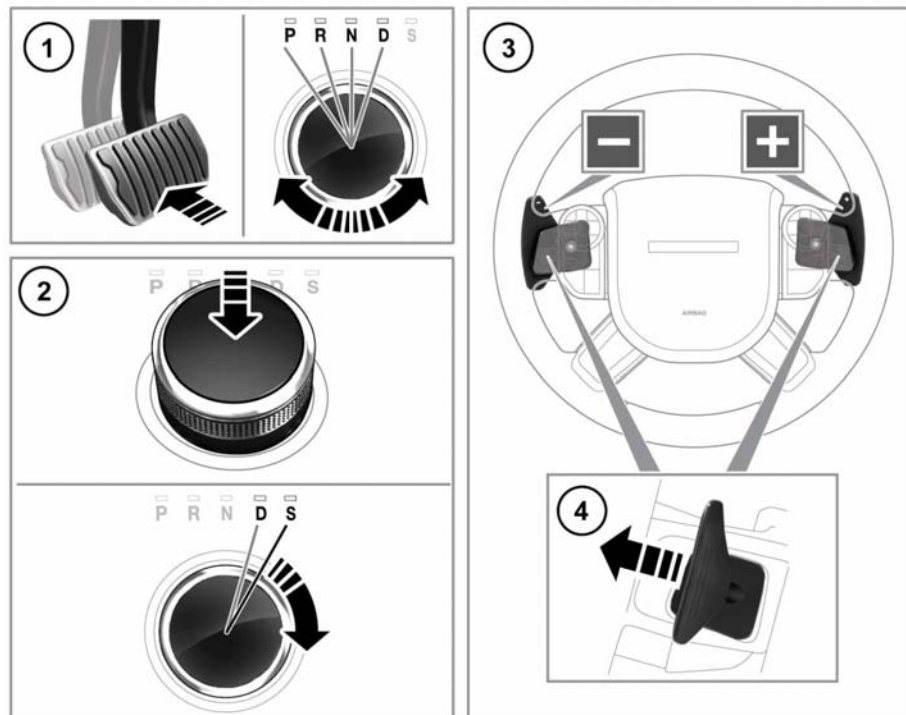
Once the vehicle's ignition system is switched off, it can be locked. See **23, SINGLE LOCKING**.

**Note:** The driver exit feature does not switch off the vehicle's ignition system if the driver exits the vehicle, and **P** is not selected.



## Transmission

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



E174802

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that the vehicle is stationary. Select Park (P). Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB). Switch the engine off. The vehicle can move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected, which may result in death or serious injury.

#### **NOTICE**

Never select **P** while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

#### **NOTICE**

Never select Reverse (**R**) while the vehicle is in forward motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

#### **NOTICE**

Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backward. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not press the accelerator pedal when making a gear selection. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.



## Transmission

### NOTICE

*Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary for a prolonged period, with a drive gear selected and the engine running. In this event, always select **P** or Neutral (**N**), and apply the EPB. The vehicle may move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected, which may result in damage to the vehicle.*

The selection status of the gear selector and the steering wheel's paddle shifts is displayed in the message center.

When the engine starts, the gear selector elevates from its lowered, stored position and the transmission remains engaged in **P**.

1. To select Drive (**D**), **N**, **R**, or **P**, press the brake pedal and then rotate the gear selector to the required position. The relevant indicator lamp, by the gear selector, illuminates to confirm selection.  
When in **D**, gear changing is fully automatic. The gear change shift points are determined by the accelerator pedal position and the vehicle's current speed. To achieve rapid acceleration (kickdown) while in, **D** quickly press the accelerator pedal to its full travel. When the accelerator pedal is relaxed, normal automatic gear changing resumes.

**Note:** *If pressure is applied to the gear selector before the brake pedal is pressed, the selected gear may not be available. In this situation, remove pressure from the gear selector, make sure that the brake pedal is pressed, and then select the required gear again.*

2. To select Sport (**S**) mode from **D**, press the gear selector down and rotate to **S**. The relevant indicator lamp, by the gear selector, illuminates to confirm selection. The transmission remains in the lower gears for longer, improving mid-range performance. To deselect **S** mode, rotate the gear selector back to **D**.

**Note:** *Before selecting **D**, **R**, **N**, or **P**, make sure that the vehicle is stationary and the brakes are applied.*

3. Steering wheel paddle shifts: Allow manual gear selection, while the selector is in either the **D** or **S** position. Lightly pull the left-side paddle shift for down-shifts or lightly pull the right-side paddle shift for up-shifts.

**Note:** *The paddle shifts can be configured to be active in both **D** and **S**, or active in **S** only. Use the **Vehicle settings** instrument panel menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.*

The paddle shifts can be effective when rapid acceleration and engine braking are required. A gearshift indicator warning lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. With **D** selected, each manual gear change via the steering wheel paddle shifts is temporary. The change is held while the driver is accelerating, decelerating, cornering, or continually requesting manual gearshift changes via the steering wheel paddle shifts. See **88, GEARSHIFT (GREEN)**.

**Note:** *If continued use of the steering wheel paddle shifts is required, select **S**.*

## Transmission

4. To manually change gear, briefly pull the relevant steering wheel paddle shift. To exit manual gear selection mode, pull and hold the right-side paddle shift for approximately 1 second. The automatic transmission returns to operation in **D** or **S**, dependent on the current position of the gear selector. Alternatively, rotate the gear selector from **S** to **D**. The automatic transmission returns to operation in **D**.

If the gear selector is obstructed, remove the obstruction and then start the engine. The gear selector should elevate.

If the gear selector fails to elevate and there is no obstruction, a system fault is indicated. The gear selector can still be used in the lowered position. In this event, **P** is not automatically selected when the engine is switched off. **P** must be selected manually. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer at the earliest opportunity.

### SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE

#### NOTICE

*Do not change from high range to low range while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in damage to the transmission.*



E211914

The **Lo** button is used to alternate the engagement of the transfer case between low range or high range.

**Note:** The **Lo** button only operates with the engine running.

**Note:** Low range should only be used in situations where low speed maneuvering is necessary, including more extreme off-road conditions. High range should be selected for normal road driving.

## Transmission

Press the **Lo** button, located on the center console, to engage the transfer case into low range. The button's LED indicator lamp flashes during the change and remains illuminated to confirm selection. The message center briefly displays the **Low Range Selected** message. The instrument panel also illuminates the low range warning lamp. See **89, LOW RANGE (GREEN)**

Press the **Lo** button again to engage the transfer case into high range. The button's LED indicator lamp flashes during the change and extinguishes to confirm selection. The message center briefly displays the **High Range Selected** message. The low range warning lamp also extinguishes.

The vehicle should be stationary, with the engine running, during a transfer case range change selection.

Operate as follows:

1. Use the gear selector to engage Neutral (**N**).
2. Press the **Lo** button to engage the transfer case into high or low range, as required.

**Note:** If the **Lo** button is pressed when the vehicle's speed is too high, the message center displays the maximum speed for the range change.

**Note:** If the **Lo** button is pressed before **N** is selected, the message center displays a relevant message.

3. Use the gear selector to engage Drive (**D**).

The procedure can also be used for changing from low range to high range with the vehicle traveling at a speed of less than 37 mph (60 km/h).

### LIMP-HOME MODE

#### WARNING

**The driver should be aware that the vehicle's performance is reduced and use of the steering wheel's paddle shifts is disabled. Failure to take this into account when driving may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.**

If a transmission system fault is detected, the message center displays a warning message. In this event, only limited gears may become available. If possible, the vehicle should be carefully driven to the nearest place of safety. In this event, seek qualified assistance.

Some transmission faults may cause the gear selector to be locked in position until the ignition is switched off. A flashing gear status in the message center indicates that the driver's gear request cannot be engaged. In this event, select Neutral (**N**) and then select the required gear change again.

If the transmission is still unable to engage the requested gear, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

## Suspension

### ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure that the vehicle is clear of people and obstacles before adjusting the suspension. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

#### **NOTICE**

To maintain control of the vehicle at a standstill, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied before the suspension height changes. Also make sure that the transmission is engaged in Neutral (N) or Park (P). Failure to do so may potentially result in damage to the vehicle.

#### **NOTICE**

Take care when making changes to the suspension height if a trailer is attached to the vehicle. Failure to do so may potentially result in damage to the vehicle.

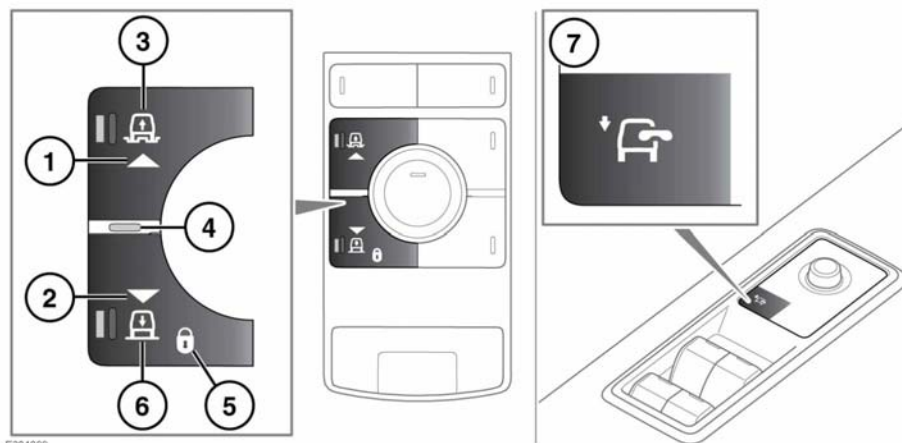
**Note:** The electronic air suspension does not operate if sufficient air reserves are not present in the air suspension system. In this event, start the engine to allow operation of the compressor. Run the engine until sufficient air reserves resume.

**Note:** Frequent successive air suspension adjustments may deplete the vehicle's air reserves. In this event, allow time for the engine to run so the compressor can replenish the air reserves.

**Note:** The electronic air suspension system may raise or lower the vehicle automatically. For example, if a terrain response driving program requires it or if the vehicle is traveling at high speeds.

The electronic air suspension system adjusts the height of the suspension to raise or lower the vehicle.

The electronic air suspension system controls are located on the center console.



Operate as follows:

## Suspension

1. Up button: Press to raise the suspension height.
2. Down button: Press to lower the suspension height.
3. Off-road height indicator lamp: Illuminates when the suspension is set to off-road height.
4. Normal height indicator lamp: Illuminates when the suspension is set to normal height.
5. Suspension locked in access height indicator lamp: Illuminates when the suspension is locked at access height.
6. Access height indicator lamp: Illuminates when the suspension is set to access height.

**Note:** Access height is 2 in (50 mm) lower than normal height.

7. Access height button: Located on driver's door. Press to set the suspension to access height.

The current suspension height adjustment is indicated via illumination of the LED indicator lamp on the relevant up or down button. The instrument panel also displays a confirmation message.

The electronic air suspension system can also be operated via the loadspace buttons, or remotely operated via the vehicle's smart key. See **185, REAR HEIGHT ADJUST**.

The electronic air suspension system may not operate without the engine running to operate the compressor and maintain sufficient air reserves.

The suspension system operates without the engine running, if:

- The auto stop/start system temporarily switches off the engine. See **173, TRIGGERING AN AUTO STOP**.
- A request to lower the suspension is made within a minute of the ignition being switched off.
- A normal height request is made from the auto access height setting.
- The rear height adjust system is operating.

Operation of the electronic air suspension system remains available for a few seconds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened.

Suspension height adjustment stops, after a short time, if a door is opened, but resumes if the door is closed within 90 seconds. If the door is not closed within 90 seconds, the suspension remains at the height attained before the door was opened.

Touch and hold the relevant up or down button for a suspension height change with a door open. In this event, the suspension only lowers if there are sufficient air reserves to raise the vehicle back up.

**Note:** The electronic air suspension may not lower to its minimum setting while a door is open.

In the event that a door is open and the suspension cannot complete a height adjustment, the instrument panel displays a message.

### OFF-ROAD HEIGHT

The suspension height can be raised to the off-road height setting to assist with off-road driving.

The off-road height setting only operates if:

- The suspension is currently set at normal height.



## Suspension

- The vehicle's speed is less than 43 mph (70 km/h).

Press the up button (1) to select the off-road height setting. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message. See **180, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

The off-road height setting is dependent on the vehicle's speed. The **Off-Road 1** height is 1.6 in (40 mm) above the normal height setting, up to a maximum vehicle speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). The **Off-Road 2** height is 3 in (75 mm) above the normal height setting, up to a maximum vehicle speed of 31 mph (50 km/h). The suspension height can change automatically between these heights. To view the current off-road height setting, select **Vehicle Dimensions** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

The **Off-Road 2** height can be manually selected with the suspension at **Off-Road 1** height. Press the up button (1) at any vehicle speed up to 40 km/h (25 mph).

To manually select the normal height setting from the off-road height setting, press the down button (2). Alternatively, increase the vehicle's speed above 50 mph (80 km/h) to automatically set the suspension to normal height.

### EXTENDED MODE

Extended mode is an automatic suspension height setting that raises the vehicle to assist maneuvering in the event that the vehicle is:

- Grounded in severe off-road conditions.
- Lowered onto an obstacle.
- Wading in deep water.

- Driving in narrow ruts.

The instrument panel displays an extended mode confirmation message and the LED indicator lamps flash. See **180, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

**Note:** *Extended mode cannot be selected manually.*

Once the extended mode height is achieved, additional lifting can be requested, if required. Press the brake pedal to maintain control of the vehicle. Press the up button (1) for longer than 3 seconds.

### ACCESS HEIGHT

The electronic air suspension system can be lowered to allow easier vehicle access.

To select the access height setting with the suspension currently at the normal height setting, press the down button (2). If the suspension is currently set at the off-road height setting, press the down button twice. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message. See **180, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

**Note:** *Access height may be selected until 1 minute after the ignition is switched off, or a few seconds after the driver's door is opened.*

Access height selection can be requested at any vehicle speed. The suspension height does not change until the vehicle is traveling at slow speeds. The access height selection request cancels if the vehicle's speed does not slow sufficiently within 1 minute.

Normal driving automatically adjusts the suspension height setting from access height to normal height.

## Suspension

To manually select the normal height setting from the access height setting, press the up button (1).

### AUTO ACCESS HEIGHT

**Note:** Auto access height operation is more efficient and smooth with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) applied and the brake pedal completely released.

Auto access height automatically lowers the electronic air suspension to the access height setting, when the vehicle is parked. See **182, ACCESS HEIGHT**.

Select the **Vehicle settings** and **Convenience features** instrument panel menus to enable or disable the auto access height feature. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Auto access height only operates if:

- The suspension height is set at normal height. See **180, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.
- The transfer case is engaged in high range. See **178, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.
- One of the following terrain response driving programs is selected:
  - AUTO.
  - Comfort.
  - Dynamic.
  - Grass gravel snow.

See **195, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

Auto access height initially lowers the suspension height up to 0.9 in. (20 mm) below the normal height setting, after any of the following events:

- The ignition is switched off.
- An occupied seat belt is unbuckled.

**Note:** If the second row outer seat belts are buckled, then unbuckling the center seat belt does not initiate a suspension height change.

If a door is opened, after the initial suspension lowering, auto access height lowers the suspension to 2 in (50 mm) below the normal height setting.

**Note:** If a door is not subsequently opened and the vehicle's speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h), the suspension height returns to the normal height setting.

Auto access height lowers the suspension height to 1.6 in. (40 mm) below the normal height setting, if a door is opened before any of the following events:

- The ignition is switched off.
- An occupied seat belt is unbuckled.

To lower the vehicle to the full access height setting, press the down button (2). The full access height setting is 2 in (50 mm) below the normal height setting.

Auto access height can be activated until 90 seconds after the vehicle becomes stationary.

Auto access height only operates once for each time the vehicle is stationary. If further operations are required while at the same location, use the instrument panel menus to disable and enable the auto access height feature again.

Alternatively drive the vehicle at a speed above 4.4 mph (7 km/h) for 3 seconds, or at a speed in excess of 9.3 mph (15 km/h).

**Note:** The once only operation also applies if the vehicle has been stationary for more than 90 seconds without activating auto access height. If a door is opened after 90 seconds, the instrument panel displays a timed-out message.



## Suspension

Auto access height does not operate in the following conditions:

- If the suspension has entered into extended mode. See **182, EXTENDED MODE**.
- If the vehicle is parked on excessive inclines or declines, or on a very uneven surface.
- If there are insufficient air reserves in the electronic air suspension system. In this event, the instrument panel displays a temporarily unavailable message when a door is next opened.

### LOCKED ACCESS HEIGHT

Locked access height is useful when maneuvering the vehicle in confined areas, e.g., multi-level parking garage.

Make sure that the suspension height is set at the access height setting or the normal height setting. Make sure that the vehicle is traveling at a speed of less than 22 mph (35 km/h).

Press the down button **(2)** for longer than 1 second, to lock the vehicle at access height. See **180, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

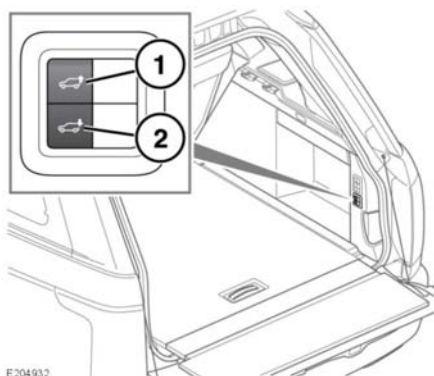
The locked access height indicator lamp illuminates on the suspension system controls. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message.

To manually cancel locked access height, press the up button **(1)** for longer than 1 second. Alternatively, increase the vehicle's speed above 25 mph (40 km/h) to automatically cancel locked access height and set the suspension to the normal height setting.



## Suspension

### REAR HEIGHT ADJUST



#### **NOTICE**

Care should be taken with all suspension height changes, especially when a trailer is attached to the vehicle. Incorrect suspension adjustments can result in serious damage to the vehicle.

**Note:** The amount of air suspension adjustment is dependent on the current height setting. The front suspension may also adjust to maintain the correct headlight level.

**Note:** The suspension adjusts if the vehicle's doors are open, but the vehicle may not lower to its minimum setting.

Use the rear height adjust feature to manually adjust only the vehicle's rear suspension height. The rear height adjust feature is useful when loading or unloading the vehicle, connecting or disconnecting a trailer, and when maneuvering a connected trailer.

Use the loadspace buttons to operate the rear height adjust feature. Unlock the vehicle and open the tailgate to enable the buttons.

**Note:** The loadspace buttons are disabled when the tailgate is closed.

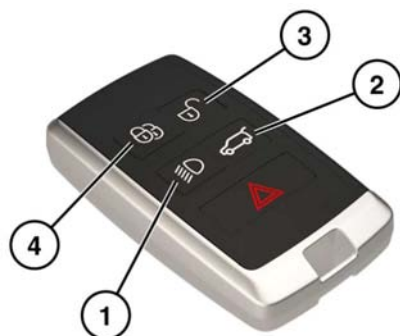
Operate as follows:

1. Press and hold to raise the rear suspension.
2. Press and hold to lower the rear suspension.
3. Simultaneously press and hold both buttons to set the rear suspension to the normal height setting.

**Note:** A time delay may be evident before the vehicle reacts to a suspension height request via the buttons. The vehicle's systems need to be configured before each height adjustment.

**Note:** The buttons automatically disable if unused for a designated time period after opening the tailgate. To override this, switch the ignition on.

## Suspension



E210928

### ⚠ WARNING

The smart key can be operated from inside or outside of the vehicle. Make sure that the smart key is always kept safely out of children's reach, to avoid serious injury or death.

The suspension's rear height adjust feature can also be remotely operated via the vehicle's smart key. Press the dashboard switch to switch on the hazard warning lights. In this state, the vehicle interprets signals received via operation of the smart key buttons as height adjustment requests.

Operate as follows:

- To lower: Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (1) and the tailgate unlock button (2).
- To raise: Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (1) and the unlock button (3).
- To set the vehicle to normal height: Simultaneously press and hold the headlights button (1) and the lock button (4).

The indicator lamps, on the electronic air suspension controls, indicate the current status of the rear suspension, after adjustment. If the rear suspension is currently above normal height, both the normal height and off-road height indicator lamps illuminate. If the rear suspension is currently below normal height, both the normal height and access height indicator lamps illuminate. See **180, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

### ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS

Adaptive dynamics continuously monitors the current road conditions and driving style, and automatically adjusts the vehicle's suspension settings accordingly. Adaptive dynamics also detects rough road and off-road conditions, and adjusts the suspension settings for greater ride comfort.

If an adaptive dynamics system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a message and may also illuminate the general or critical warning lamps. See **83, CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)** and **87, GENERAL WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**.

In the event of a detected adaptive dynamics system fault, some reduction in ride comfort may be experienced. The fault may be temporary, but if the fault persists, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

## Suspension

### SUSPENSION LOWERED FOR SAFETY

#### WARNING

The suspension height is automatically lowered for safety to increase the vehicle's stability. Overriding this automatic suspension height setting is not recommended. Doing so can cause a loss of control of the vehicle during extreme maneuvers, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

#### **NOTICE**

*If the vehicle's suspension height is automatically lowered for safety, exercise extreme caution while driving off-road to avoid potential damage to the vehicle.*

If a Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) fault is detected, the suspension height may be automatically lowered to increase the vehicle's stability. See **192, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)**.

In this event, the instrument panel displays a message. The indicator lamps are also extinguished on the suspension controls. See **180, ELECTRONIC AIR SUSPENSION CONTROLS**.

To manually override the automatic lowered safety height setting:

1. Press either the up or down button on the suspension controls.
2. Follow the instructions displayed in the instrument panel.

**Note:** *If the vehicle is driven enthusiastically, the instrument panel displays a message stating that a safety system has been overridden. A further message provides instructions for canceling the manual override.*



## Brakes

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION

#### **WARNING**

If the red brake warning lamp illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop as quickly as possible and seek qualified assistance. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

#### **WARNING**

If the amber brake warning lamp illuminates, drive with care avoiding heavy brake pedal application and seek qualified assistance. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

#### **WARNING**

Do not rest a foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can damage the braking system and reduce braking efficiency. The result can lead to a collision, causing serious injury or death.

#### **WARNING**

Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine switched off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes still function with the engine switched off, but far more brake pedal pressure is required to operate them.

#### **WARNING**

Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. The result can be restricted pedal travel and reduced braking efficiency, leading to a collision, causing serious injury or death.

#### **WARNING**

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended to lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

#### **WARNING**

Do not tap the brake pedal repeatedly in quick succession at any time. Doing so interrupts the operation of the braking system and may increase stopping distances.

#### **WARNING**

Repeated or prolonged heavy braking can cause the brakes and the brake fluid to overheat, resulting in reduced braking efficiency and brake failure.

#### **WARNING**

Do not drive if the Brakes Overheating message is displayed in the message center. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and allow the brakes to cool. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing. Driving with overheated brakes can cause increased braking distance or brake failure, resulting in a collision causing serious injury or death.

The brake (red) warning lamp and a continuous chime accompanies the **Brakes Overheating** message. The chime ceases when the vehicle is stationary. See **83, BRAKE (RED)** and **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

Make sure to read and follow the important information instructions contained in the warnings listed.

## Brakes

### STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide, even with the brakes applied. Without tire rotation, the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) cannot determine vehicle movement. To counteract this, briefly release the brake pedal, allowing wheel rotation. Re-apply the brake pedal to allow the ABS to gain control.

**Note:** *The vehicle needs to be in Neutral or an appropriate gear to descend the slope, and the parking brake must not be applied.*

### EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the brakes are rapidly applied, Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum. The result is that EBA helps to bring the vehicle to a stop as quickly as possible.

EBA stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.

An EBA fault is indicated by the amber brake warning lamp illuminating and a warning message displaying in the instrument panel. In this event, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake pedal application. Seek qualified assistance. See **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

### ELECTRONIC BRAKE-FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)

Electronic Brake-force Distribution (EBD) controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels. The result is that EBD helps to maintain the maximum braking efficiency and stability.

EBD system faults are indicated by a red brake warning lamp illuminating and a warning message displaying in the instrument panel. In this event, gently and safely stop the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance. See **83, BRAKE (RED)**.

### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

#### WARNING

**Do not rely on the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to operate correctly if the brake warning lamp illuminates. Seek qualified assistance urgently. Failure to do so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.**

#### WARNING

**Do not rely on the EPB to operate correctly if the EPB warning lamp flashes. Seek qualified assistance urgently. Failure to do so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.**

#### **NOTICE**

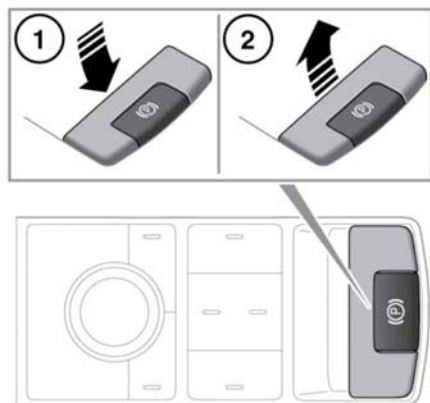
*The EPB operates on the rear wheels, therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not rely on the EPB to operate effectively if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water. Doing so may result in damage to the vehicle.*



## Brakes



E176103

The EPB switch is located on the center console. Operate as follows:

1. With the ignition switched on, press the brake pedal and press down on the EPB switch, to release the EPB.
2. Pull the EPB switch up and release it, to apply the EPB. The EPB warning lamp illuminates to confirm. See **83, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.

**Note:** The red EPB warning lamp continues to illuminate for at least 10 seconds after the ignition has been switched off.

The EPB automatically applies when Park (P) is selected.

**Note:** To prevent automatic operation, with the vehicle stationary, press and hold the EPB switch in the release position before selecting P.

The EPB applies automatically if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle's speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h).

**Note:** To prevent automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the EPB switch in the release position. Within 5 seconds, switch off the ignition and continue to hold the EPB switch for a further 2 seconds.

If the EPB is operated when the vehicle's speed is less than 2 mph (3 km/h), the vehicle is brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lights do not illuminate.

### NOTICE

Driving the vehicle with the EPB applied will cause serious damage to the braking system.

When stationary, with the EPB applied and the transmission engaged in a forward or reverse gear, press the accelerator pedal to gradually release the EPB. The result is that the vehicle can be driven away smoothly.

When shifting from P with the EPB applied, the EPB automatically releases to allow a smooth drive away.

**Note:** Automatic EPB release for pulling away from a standstill is only possible when the driver's door is closed, or the driver's seat belt is buckled.

To override the EPB automatic release, pull the EPB switch up and hold.

## Brakes

In an emergency, apply and hold the EPB switch to give a controlled reduction in the vehicle's speed. The vehicle can also be brought to a complete stop. The vehicle must be traveling at more than 2 mph (3 km/h), and the accelerator pedal must also be released. The amber brake warning lamp flashes, a warning chime sounds, and the instrument panel displays a warning message. The stop lights illuminate. Release the EPB switch, or press the accelerator pedal to release the EPB.

If an EPB fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. The amber brake warning lamp also illuminates. See **85, BRAKE (AMBER)**.

If a fault is detected during EPB operation, the instrument panel displays a warning message. The red EPB warning lamp also flashes. See **83, ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)**.

### Hybrid vehicles only

To protect against unintentional vehicle movement, the EPB is automatically applied when the driver is detected to be exiting the vehicle. The EPB is applied when Drive (D), Sport (S) or Reverse (R) is selected and all the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened or the driver's door is open.
- The brake pedal is released.

The EPB drive-away feature operates if:

- The EPB is applied.
- The engine is running.
- A forward or reverse gear is selected.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened or the driver's door is closed.\*

- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- \* If it is believed that the driver has left the vehicle, only the driver's seat belt is monitored.

### WARNING

**The vehicle may move briefly before the EPB is applied. On a steep slope, the EPB does not apply if significant vehicle speed is reached as the brake pedal is released.**

**Note:** If the EPB is released, it does not automatically re-apply until an additional action is detected that indicates the driver is exiting the vehicle.

### HILL START ASSIST

When pulling away uphill, Hill Start Assist briefly holds the vehicle after the brake pedal is released, to allow time for the driver to press the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is pressed, Hill Start Assist smoothly releases the brake pressure, allowing the vehicle to pull away without rolling backward.

Hill Start Assist is not available if there is a Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) fault. See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.



## Stability control

### DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system does not compensate for driver error or misjudgement. The vehicle should be driven with due care and attention at all times. Always drive in a manner that is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. Failure to do so can potentially result in a loss of control of the vehicle, which may potentially result in serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

In extremely low temperatures the vehicle may initially have reduced stability and braking performance. In these conditions, drive with extra caution. Failure to do so can potentially result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

The DSC system helps to maintain the vehicle's stability in critical driving situations, e.g., during unstable driving behavior such as understeer and oversteer. If required, the DSC system manipulates the engine's power output and applies the brakes at individual wheels. Brake noise may be generated during DSC operation. The DSC system also activates if wheel spin is detected, to help improve the vehicle's progress during acceleration. When the DSC system is active, the amber DSC warning lamp flashes. See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

The DSC system automatically enables when the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

Make sure that the correct terrain response driving program is selected for the current terrain and driving conditions, or the required driving style. Using an incorrectly selected driving program may adversely affect the correct operation of the DSC system. See **195, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

### SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF

#### **⚠ WARNING**

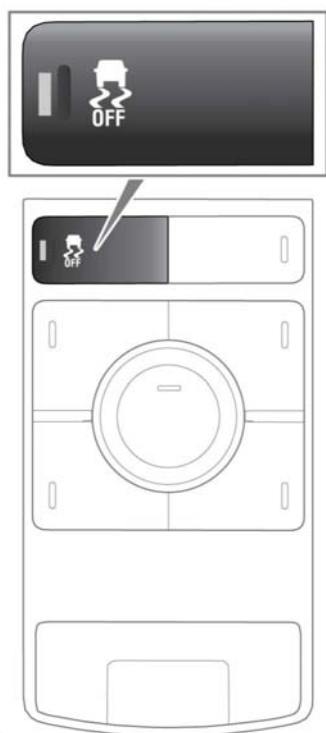
The vehicle's stability and safety may be reduced by inappropriately disabling the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system. The result can lead to a possible loss of control of the vehicle, potentially resulting in serious injury or death.

***Note:** In the majority of driving situations, and particularly on-road, it is recommended that the DSC system is not switched off.*

***Note:** The DSC system cannot be disabled if the automatic (AUTO) terrain response driving program is currently selected.*



## Stability control



E203990

To switch the DSC system off, press and briefly hold the DSC **OFF** button, located on the center console.

An audible warning tone sounds. The instrument panel displays the **DSC Off** message and also illuminates the DSC OFF warning lamp to confirm that DSC is disabled. See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.

Switching the DSC system off reduces the level of traction and stability control intervention. Doing so may lead to an increase in wheel spin and a reduction in the vehicle's stability.

Some driving conditions may require switching the DSC system off, in the event that a correctly selected driving program cannot improve the vehicle's progress.

See **195, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

Examples of some driving conditions that may adversely affect the vehicle's progress include:

- Rocking the vehicle out of a hollow or deep rut.
- Pulling away in deep snow, or a loose surface.
- Driving through deep sand or mud.

**Note:** Make sure to switch the DSC system back on when the need for switching DSC off has passed.

### SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) ON

**Note:** The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system automatically enables when the ignition is switched on.

**Note:** Some of the terrain response driving programs automatically switch the DSC system on. See **195, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

To switch the DSC system on, press and release the DSC **OFF** button, located on the center console. See **192, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF**.

The instrument panel temporarily displays the **DSC On** message to confirm. The DSC OFF warning lamp also extinguishes. See **86, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)**.



## Stability control

### ACTIVE REAR LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL

Vehicles with an active rear locking differential can have improved traction on uneven road surfaces.

In the event of the active rear locking differential overheating or a fault being detected, the instrument panel displays a reduced traction warning message. The vehicle can still be driven, with extra care. If the fault persists, seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

During the first 1 000 miles (1 600 km):

- Avoid fully pressing the accelerator pedal.
- Do not exceed a vehicle speed of more than 120 mph (190 km/h).

**Note:** *Observe the speed limits for the area in which the vehicle is traveling.*

- Avoid prolonged periods of driving at speeds in excess of 100 mph (160 km/h).

## Driving programs

### TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the lower touchscreen controls, or allow the terrain response system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

**Note:** Changing between the terrain response driving programs alters various vehicle settings. For example, the engine's revolution speed (rpm) may alter while at a constant accelerator pedal position. The suspension and steering systems may also feel heavier or lighter. The setting changes are not dramatic but are noticeable.

**Note:** The comfort driving program is automatically selected each time the ignition is switched on. The previous driving program selection is not retained when the ignition is switched off.

The terrain response system consists of different driving programs that can be selected to suit the current terrain and driving conditions, or the required driving style.

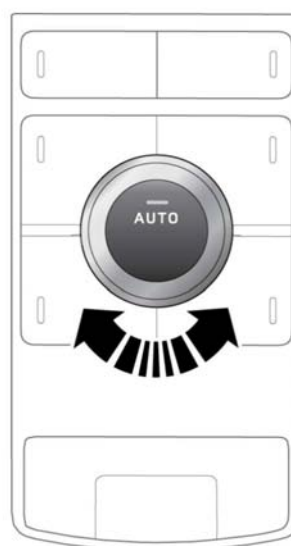
Make sure that the correct driving program is selected for the current driving conditions or the required driving style. The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system operation is automatically adapted to suit the current driving program selection. See **192, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)**.



Touch the **Vehicle** menu soft key at the top of the lower touchscreen to display the **Vehicle** menu.



The lower touchscreen displays the terrain response driving program options.



E203974

## Driving programs

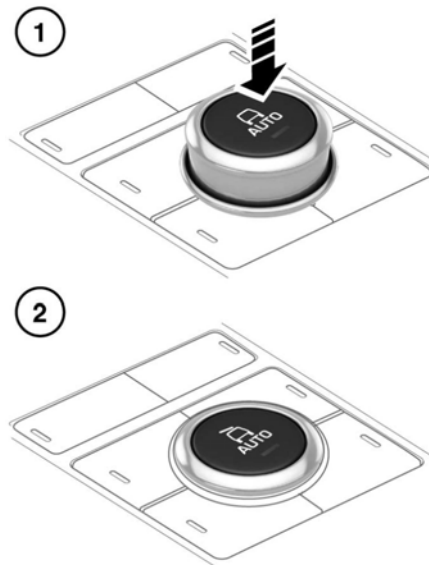
Rotate the terrain response selector, located on the center console, to move through and select the required terrain response driving program. Alternatively, touch the required on-screen icon. The **AUTO** driving program can only be selected by pressing the rotary control down. See **196, AUTO**.

**Note:** Manual selection of a terrain response driving program is not possible if the **AUTO** driving program is currently selected.

The lower touchscreen highlights the icon for the currently selected terrain response driving program and displays a confirmation message. The instrument panel also displays the relevant icon.

Information relating to the suitability of each terrain response driving program for different types of surfaces can be displayed on the touchscreen. Select the **Off-Road Information** menu from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **243, OFF-ROAD INFORMATION**.

### AUTO



E204063

#### AUTO

Some vehicles have the **AUTO** driving program, which automatically determines and selects the appropriate driving program for the current terrain and driving conditions.

With the terrain response selector in the elevated position, press down to select the **AUTO** driving program. The LED indicator lamp illuminates to confirm selection and the terrain response selector remains in the lowered position.

With the terrain response selector in the lowered position, press and release to deselect the **AUTO** driving program. The LED indicator lamp extinguishes to confirm deselection and the terrain response selector returns to the elevated position.

## Driving programs

### COMFORT



Select the comfort driving program when driving on-road or off-road, on surfaces which are similar to a hard road surface. For example, dry cobbles, tarmac, and dry wooden planks.

The comfort driving program returns all of the vehicle's systems to the normal settings. Hill Descent Control (HDC) remains active if it was previously selected manually.

Select the comfort driving program when the need for any other terrain response driving program has passed.

### GRASS GRAVEL SNOW



Select the grass gravel snow program when driving on a firm surface that is covered with loose or slippery material.

For deep snow and gravel, it is recommended to select the sand driving program. In the event that automatic braking system operation restricts the vehicle's progress, switch off the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system. The DSC system should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome. See **192, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF**.

### MUD RUTS



Select the mud ruts driving program for terrain that is muddy, rutted, soft, or uneven.

Engaging the transfer case into low range is recommended for operation of the mud ruts driving program. If low range is not selected, the instrument panel may display a message, only on vehicles with the **AUTO** driving program.

If the mud ruts driving program and low range are selected together, the vehicle's suspension height raises automatically.

### SAND



Select the sand driving program for terrain which is predominantly soft. For example, dry sand, deep gravel, or deep snow.

If the sand driving program and low range are selected together, the vehicle's suspension height raises automatically.

In the event that automatic braking system operation restricts the vehicle's progress, switch off the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system. The DSC system should be switched on again as soon as the difficulty is overcome. **192, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF**.

If the current terrain is damp or wet sand, and is deep enough to cause the wheels to sink, select the mud ruts driving program.

### ECO



Select the **ECO** driving program to modify the vehicle's settings to help reduce fuel consumption and encourage a more efficient driving style. For example, the energy consumption of the climate and comfort features is reduced and the accelerator pedal response is adjusted.

## Driving programs

Selecting the **ECO** driving program may automatically change some of the settings for the climate and comfort features. Deselecting the **ECO** driving program, or the manual adjustment of each feature, overrides the automatic changes.

The possible automatic changes are as follows:

- The heated seats are switched off.
- The climate seats are switched off.
- The heated steering wheel is switched off.
- The heated windshield does not automatically switch on when the engine is started, if configured to switch on via the **CLIMATE SETTINGS**. See **298, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.
- The auto blower speed is set to low, if currently set to a high speed.
- The audio volume may also be adjusted if it is currently set to a high volume.

**Note:** The **ECO** driving program may also make subtle changes to the rate of the cabin's heating or cooling, and also the amount of air recirculation.

**Note:** The availability of some features is dependent on the market and the specification of the vehicle.

When the **ECO** driving program is selected, the instrument panel displays an instantaneous driving style rating.

The current driving style is compared against the **ECO** driving program system's recommended driving style.

The ECO data feature consists of various information display screens that provide extra vehicle efficiency data and guidance. The **ECO DATA** menu is accessed via the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu from the touchscreen. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

**Note:** The ECO data feature only begins recording data after the vehicle has traveled at least 0.6 miles (1 km).

**Note:** The ECO data feature only monitors the driver's manual inputs, e.g., accelerator pedal, brake pedal, etc. Automatic inputs from the vehicle, e.g., operation of the accelerator pedal and brake pedal via the automatic cruise control, are not measured. Any data not being measured or recorded illuminates gray in the instrument panel display.

### ROCK CRAWL



Select the rock crawl driving program for terrain which is predominantly rocky, including the crossing of river beds with submerged rocks.

The rock crawl driving program provides good low-speed vehicle control when driving on very uneven terrain.

The rock crawl driving program can only be selected with the transfer case engaged in low range. If the selection is made with the transfer case engaged in high range, the instrument panel displays a message. See **178, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.

If the rock crawl driving program and low range are selected together, the vehicle's suspension height raises automatically.

## Driving programs

### DYNAMIC



Select the dynamic driving program to coordinate the suspension system to contribute towards a more dynamic driving experience.

**Note:** The dynamic driving program is a driving style setting, rather than a terrain response setting.

### DRIVER OVERRIDE OPTIONS

The Hill Descent Control (HDC) system automatically engages for some terrain response driving programs. If required, the HDC system can be manually switched off or on. The instrument panel displays the current HDC status. See **200, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) OVERVIEW**.

The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system automatically engages after the selection of a terrain response driving program. If required, the DSC system can be manually switched off or on. See **192, SWITCHING DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF**.

### SYSTEM DIFFICULTIES

#### NOTICE

*Incorrect use of a terrain response driving program impairs the vehicle's response to the current terrain. The vehicle's suspension and transmission systems may also be damaged.*

If a terrain response driving program fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. The comfort driving program is automatically selected and the **Comfort** icon illuminates on the lower touch screen. In this event, the remaining terrain response driving programs become unavailable for selection and the respective icons illuminate gray on the lower touch screen. If the fault is temporary and normal operation resumes, the instrument panel displays a reactivation message. The on-screen icons also resume normal illumination. In this event, the comfort driving program remains enabled, but normal operation allows selection of the required terrain response driving program. If the fault is permanent, the instrument panel displays a warning message if a terrain response driving program selection is attempted. In this event, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

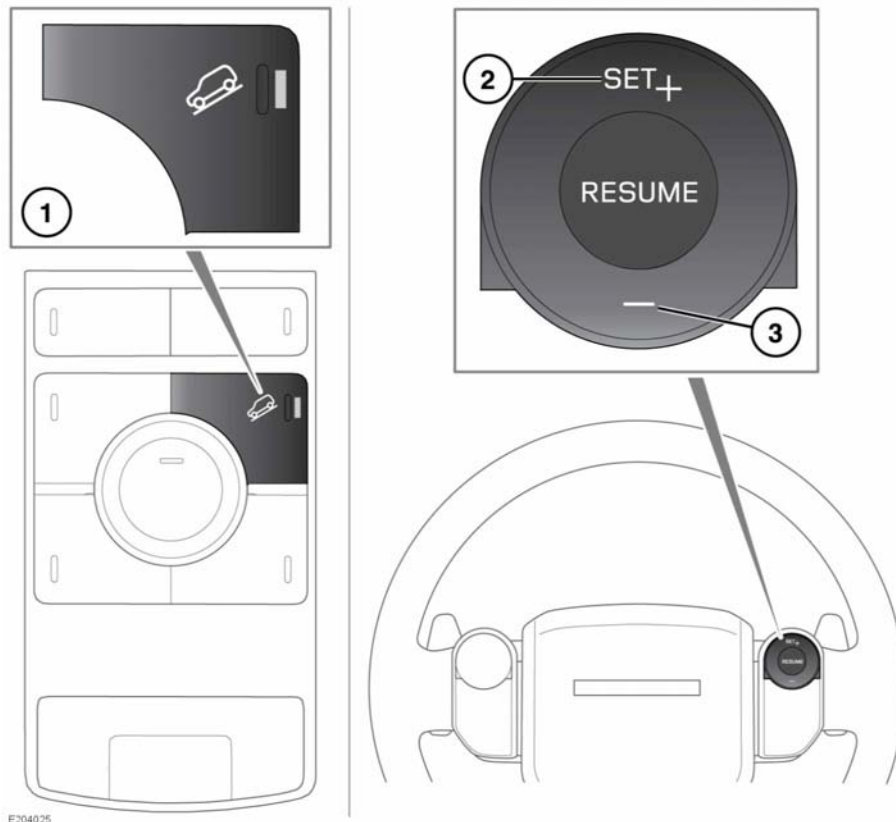
The following list of events may cause the currently selected terrain response driving program's icon to illuminate gray on the lower touch screen:

- Inappropriate selection of a terrain response driving program.
- Operation of the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system.
- Continued heavy demand of the steering system.

In these events, the instrument panel also displays further information. If appropriate action is not taken within 60 seconds, the warnings cease and the instrument panel displays the currently active terrain response driving program.

## Hill Descent Control (HDC)

### HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) OVERVIEW



E204025

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Do not attempt a steep descent if the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system is inoperative or warning messages are displayed. Doing so can potentially result in vehicle damage or personal injury.**

The HDC system restricts the vehicle's speed to a set limit when traveling downhill.

The HDC button is located on the center console. Use the steering wheel control buttons to adjust the speed limits for the HDC system.

Operate the HDC system as follows:



## Hill Descent Control (HDC)

1. **HDC button:** Press and release to enable the HDC system. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message and illuminates the HDC warning lamp to confirm selection. Press and release the button again to disable the HDC system. The instrument panel displays a confirmation message and extinguishes the HDC warning lamp to confirm deselection. See **88, HILL DESCENT CONTROL (HDC) (GREEN)**.

**Note:** The HDC system is automatically selected by some of the terrain response driving programs.

**Note:** The HDC system is automatically deselected if the ignition is switched off for more than 6 hours.

2. **SET+ button:** Press and release to increase the descent set speed, in increments of 0.6 mph (1 km/h). Alternatively, press and hold for larger incremental increases, up to the maximum permissible set speed.

**Note:** Each gear has a predetermined maximum speed.

**Note:** The vehicle's speed only increases on a slope steep enough to increase momentum. Using the **SET+** button may not increase the vehicle's speed on a gentle slope.

3. **- button:** Press and release to decrease the descent set speed, in increments of 0.6 mph (1 km/h). Alternatively, press and hold for larger incremental decreases, down to the minimum permissible set speed.

**Note:** Each gear has a predetermined minimum speed.

When the HDC system is enabled, the instrument panel displays a graphic showing the current set speed. The graphic also indicates the range of set speeds available for the current transmission gear selection.

**Note:** The HDC system does not operate when Park (P) is selected. In this event, the instrument panel graphic illuminates gray.

If the HDC system is deselected while operating, the warning lamp extinguishes. HDC operation fades out, allowing the vehicle's speed to gradually increase.

The HDC system only operates at vehicle speeds of less than 31 mph (50 km/h). At higher vehicle speeds, HDC operation is suspended. The instrument panel graphic illuminates gray and a warning message displays. The HDC warning lamp also flashes.

**Note:** If the vehicle's speed exceeds 50 mph (80 km/h), the HDC system disables. The instrument panel displays a message and extinguishes the HDC warning lamp.

If the brake pedal is pressed when the HDC system is active, a pulsation might be felt through the brake pedal. When the brake pedal is released, HDC operation resumes.

If an HDC system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message indicating that the HDC system is not available. In this event, contact a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.

If a fault is detected during operation of the HDC system, HDC operation fades out.



## Hill Descent Control (HDC)

### GRADIENT RELEASE CONTROL (GRC)

The Gradient Release Control (GRC) system operates when the vehicle is pulling away from a standstill on an incline or a decline. When the vehicle's brakes are released, the GRC system automatically delays and graduates the brake release to allow the vehicle to pull away smoothly.

The GRC system automatically operates in forward and reverse gears. No driver intervention is required.

If the brakes are applied with the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system enabled, the GRC system activates to allow a smooth transition into HDC operation.

The GRC system does not operate if the terrain response sand driving program is enabled. See **197, SAND**.

### BRAKE TEMPERATURE

In extreme circumstances, prolonged use of the Hill Descent Control (HDC) system may cause excessive brake temperatures. In this event, the instrument panel displays the **HDC Temporarily Unavailable** warning message. HDC operation fades out and becomes temporarily inactive.

When the brake temperatures have returned to normal, the instrument panel message extinguishes and HDC operation resumes.

## Speed limiter

### SPEED LIMITER SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using a speed limiter. Failure to use the speed limiter safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### WARNING

**Speed limiters are driving aids only. Always drive with due care and attention, and in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users. The driver should still observe all road signs, road markings, and situations that are not detected or recognized by the speed limiter systems. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.**

#### WARNING

**In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill slope, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set speed limit. Driver intervention may be required. Driving at speeds above the set speed limit may infringe on local laws.**

**Note:** Speed limiters are convenience features only. Speed limiters do not remove the driver's responsibility to adhere to the legal road speed limit.

### SPEED LIMITER OVERVIEW

#### WARNING

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 203, SPEED LIMITER SAFETY.**

Two types of speed limiter are available:

- Speed limiter.

- Adaptive speed limiter.

The speed limiter allows the driver to manually restrict the maximum vehicle speed. When a maximum speed limit is set, the vehicle responds normally until the set speed is reached. At this point, the vehicle stops accelerating.

The adaptive speed limiter works in conjunction with the traffic sign recognition system and the navigation system to restrict the maximum vehicle speed. The maximum speed is set, based on the information received from both of these systems. If the system cannot determine a valid maximum speed, the last known detected speed limit is used.

To activate the speed limiter, see **204, SPEED LIMITER**.

To activate the adaptive speed limiter, see **205, ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER**.

Press and hold the **CANCEL** button on the steering wheel to switch between the speed limiter and the adaptive speed limiter.

**Note:** Speed limiters are not available when cruise control or adaptive cruise control is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously.

## Speed limiter

### SPEED LIMITER

#### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 203, **SPEED LIMITER SAFETY**.



1. SET+.
2. -.
3. RESUME.
4. CANCEL.
5. LIM.

Press the **LIM** button on the steering wheel controls to switch the speed limiter function on. The instrument panel displays an information lamp to confirm the speed limiter is selected.

The speed limiter does not operate until activated. To activate the speed limiter:

1. Press the **SET+** button. The vehicle's speed is now limited to the speed it was traveling at when the button was pressed. If the vehicle is stationary when the **SET+** button is pressed, the system sets the speed limit to 19 mph (30 km/h).
2. Press and hold the **SET+** button to increase the speed limiter's set speed in 5 mph (or 10 km/h) steps. Press and release the **SET+** button to increase the speed limiter's set speed by 1 mph (2 km/h).

Press and hold the **-** button to lower the speed limiter's set speed in 5 mph (or 10 km/h) steps. Press and release the **-** button to lower the speed limiter's set speed by 1 mph (2 km/h).

Press the **CANCEL** button to suspend speed limiter operation. Press either the **RESUME** button or the **SET+** button to resume speed limiter operation.

Pressing the **RESUME** button activates the previous set speed. Pressing the **SET+** button limits the vehicle's speed to the speed it is traveling at when the button is pressed.

The speed limiter's set speed can be overridden if rapid acceleration is required. Fully press the accelerator pedal to accelerate past the speed limiter's set speed. When the vehicle's speed drops below the speed limiter's set speed, any speed limitations are reapplied.

### SPEED LIMITER PERFORMANCE

The speed limiter does not operate if the vehicle's speed is below 19 mph (30 km/h).

## Speed limiter

The driver may notice the effects of the speed limiter, if the vehicle's speed is close to the set speed limit.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

### ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 203, SPEED LIMITER SAFETY.**



1. SET+.
2. -.
3. RESUME.
4. CANCEL.
5. LIM.

Press the **LIM** button on the steering wheel controls to switch the adaptive speed limiter on. Depending on vehicle status, either the speed limiter or the adaptive speed limiter information lamp is displayed in the instrument panel.

If speed limiter is displayed, press and hold the **CANCEL** button on the steering wheel. The speed limiter information lamp is replaced with the adaptive speed limiter information lamp to confirm that the adaptive speed limiter has been selected.

The adaptive speed limiter does not operate until activated. Press the **SET+** button or the **RESUME** button on the steering wheel to activate the adaptive speed limiter. The instrument panel and Head-Up Display (HUD) display the detected speed limits as icons.

If the adaptive speed limiter detects a speed limit lower than the current vehicle speed, it automatically slows the vehicle to meet the speed limit. Press the **RESUME** button on the steering wheel to increase the rate of deceleration.

If the system detects a speed limit higher than the current vehicle speed, it allows the driver to accelerate up to the speed limit. Press the **RESUME** button on the steering wheel to increase the rate of acceleration.

Press the **CANCEL** button on the steering wheel to suspend adaptive speed limiter operation. Press the **RESUME** button or the **SET+** button on the steering wheel to resume adaptive speed limiter operation.



## Speed limiter

The adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit can be overridden if rapid acceleration is required. Fully press the accelerator pedal to accelerate past the adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit. When the vehicle's speed drops below the adaptive speed limiter's detected speed limit, any speed limitations are reapplied.

The system's detected speed limit can be adjusted, if required, to control the vehicle's speed at just above or below the detected speed limit. To adjust the detected speed limit:

1. Press the **SET+** button to raise the maximum vehicle speed 1 mph (2 km/h) above the detected speed limit. The maximum increase available is 5 mph (or 10 km/h) above the detected speed limit. Press and hold the **SET+** button to raise the maximum vehicle speed directly to 5 mph (or 10 km/h) above the detected speed limit.
2. Press the **-** button to lower the maximum vehicle speed 1 mph (2 km/h) below the detected speed limit. The maximum decrease available is 5 mph (or 10 km/h) below the detected speed limit. Press and hold the **-** button to lower the maximum vehicle speed directly to 5 mph (or 10 km/h) below the detected speed limit.

**Note:** Any adjustments to the system's detected speed limit are lost if the speed limiter is activated, or if the vehicle's electrical systems are switched off.

### ADAPTIVE SPEED LIMITER PERFORMANCE

The adaptive speed limiter does not operate if the traffic sign recognition system is unable to detect a valid speed limit. After a short period of time, the adaptive speed limiter is deactivated and the speed limiter is activated.

The adaptive speed limiter:

- Does not recognize speed limits below 19 mph (30 km/h). For detected speed limits below 19 mph (30 km/h), the system sets a speed limit of 19 mph (30 km/h).
- Displays --- in the instrument panel if the traffic sign recognition system cannot determine a valid speed limit. The last known valid speed limit is applied if this occurs.
- May allow vehicle speed to increase in certain conditions, e.g., when traveling downhill. If the vehicle's speed rises by more than 2 mph (3.5 km/h) above the detected speed limit, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If the vehicle's speed rises by more than 5 mph (7 km/h) above the detected speed limit for 4 seconds, a chime also sounds.
- Performance and accuracy are only as good as the information provided by the traffic sign recognition system.
- Performance and accuracy are only as good as the information provided by the navigation system. Always make sure the navigation system is operating correctly and is using the latest software.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

## Cruise control

### CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using cruise control. Failure to use cruise control safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

The driver must always make sure that a safe speed is maintained within the speed limit, taking account of traffic and road conditions. Driving at unsafe speeds increases the risk of an accident.

#### ⚠ WARNING

In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill slope, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set cruising speed. Driver intervention may be required. Driving at speeds above the set cruising speed may infringe on local laws.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not use cruise control in heavy traffic, or conditions where a constant road speed cannot be safely maintained. For example, cruise control should not be used on roads that are winding, wet with rain or snow, slippery, or unpaved.

### USING CRUISE CONTROL

#### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 207, CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.



E199562

1. SET+.
2. -.
3. RESUME.
4. CANCEL.
5. LIM.

Cruise control allows the vehicle to automatically maintain a set vehicle speed. Controls mounted on the steering wheel are used to operate the system. The driver can also intervene, at any time, by using the brake or accelerator pedals.

**Note:** Do not use cruise control when driving off-road.



## Cruise control

While driving at the desired speed, press the **SET+** button to activate cruise control. The instrument panel displays an information lamp to confirm that the system is operational.

The **LIM** icon on the steering wheel controls also illuminates green to confirm cruise control is operational.

To increase the set speed, press the **SET+** button. A single press of the button raises the vehicle's speed by 1 mph (2 km/h). Alternatively, press the accelerator pedal to increase the set speed. When the new desired speed is reached, press the **SET+** button.

**Note:** *Cruise control cancels if the accelerator pedal is pressed to override the system for more than 5 minutes.*

Press the **-** button to lower the set speed. A single press of the button lowers the vehicle's speed by 1 mph (2 km/h).

Press the **CANCEL** button to cancel cruise control. The set speed is retained in the system's memory until the vehicle is switched off.

Press the **RESUME** button to resume the set speed from the system's memory.

### **WARNING**

The **RESUME** button should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the **RESUME** button when not aware of the set speed may lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

### **CRUISE CONTROL PERFORMANCE**

Cruise control:

- Cannot be set when the vehicle is traveling at speeds below 20 mph (32 km/h).
- Remains active until the vehicle's speed drops below 15 mph (24 km/h).

Cruise control does not operate when:

- The speed limiter or adaptive speed limiter is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously. Press the **LIM** button to switch between cruise control and the speed limiter. See **207, USING CRUISE CONTROL**.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The gear selector is moved to Neutral (**N**) or Reverse (**R**).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) requests a cruise control cancellation.
- Hill Descent Control (HDC) is activated.
- The sand, mud ruts, or rock crawl driving programs are activated.



## Adaptive cruise control

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using adaptive cruise control or any of its features. Failure to use adaptive cruise control or any of its features safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Adaptive cruise control is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Staying alert, driving safely, and being in control of the vehicle at all times is the responsibility of the driver.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Adaptive cruise control may not function properly under all weather and road conditions. Do not use adaptive cruise control in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray, or snow. Using adaptive cruise control in these conditions increases the risk of a loss of control of the vehicle.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Adaptive cruise control does not react to pedestrians or objects in the roadway. Additionally, the system may not react to stationary or slow moving vehicles traveling below 6 mph (10 km/h), or oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor and camera to monitor the area in front of the vehicle. The radar sensor is mounted on the front of the vehicle. The camera is mounted on the rear of the rear-view mirror. Keep these areas of the vehicle clean and free from obstructions, e.g., stickers, debris, mud, snow, or ice. Failure to do so may result in the system failing to identify objects ahead.

The driver should remain alert and intervene, if necessary, when adaptive cruise control is in operation.

The adaptive cruise control system may operate unexpectedly in certain conditions. For example:



E214263

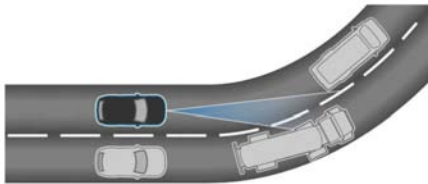
When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.



E214264

## Adaptive cruise control

When a vehicle edges into the same lane as the vehicle being driven. The vehicle is only detected once it has moved fully into the same lane.



E214265

When entering or exiting a bend. Vehicles in front may not be detected.



E214266

When moving around a stationary vehicle. The detection beam may become uncertain as to which vehicle should be followed.



E214267

When the vehicle in front turns out of the same lane as the vehicle being driven. The detection beam may become uncertain as to which vehicle should be followed.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**

Adaptive cruise control allows the driver to set a cruising speed for the vehicle. The vehicle's speed is automatically reduced if a slower moving vehicle is detected in the lane ahead. The system then maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead. If the system detects that the slower moving vehicle is no longer present, it automatically raises the vehicle's speed back to the set speed. In some scenarios, adaptive cruise control also brings the vehicle to a standstill, if required.

**Note:** The adaptive cruise control system illuminates the brake lights when it applies the brakes. A noise may also be heard.

Adaptive cruise control comprises a number of different sub-features in order to operate effectively, including:

- Follow mode. See **213, FOLLOW MODE.**
- Queue assist. See **216, QUEUE ASSIST.**
- Stop and go. See **216, STOP AND GO.**
- Steering assist. See **217, STEERING ASSIST.**

## Adaptive cruise control



E196492

Adaptive cruise control is not available when the speed limiter is in operation. When the vehicle is first switched on, the vehicle reverts to whichever system was used previously. Press the **LIM** button on the steering wheel controls to switch between the speed limiter and adaptive cruise control.

The instrument panel displays a message if a fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system, or in any of its sub-features. If this occurs, adaptive cruise control does not operate. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer at the earliest opportunity.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

#### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.



E199570

1. **SET+.**
2. **RESUME.**
3. **-.**
4. **CANCEL.**
5. **<->.**
6. **<--->.**

Press the **SET+** button to set a desired cruising speed. The vehicle's cruising speed is set at the speed it was traveling when the button was pressed.

Fully release the accelerator when a cruising speed is set.

Press the **CANCEL** button to deactivate adaptive cruise control.

Press the **RESUME** button to reactivate adaptive cruise control.

## Adaptive cruise control

### WARNING

The **RESUME** button should only be pressed if the driver is aware of the set cruising speed and intends to return to it. Pressing the **RESUME** button when not aware of the set cruising speed may lead to a loss of control of the vehicle.



The instrument panel displays a white information lamp to inform the driver that adaptive cruise control is engaged. The **LIM** icon on the steering wheel controls illuminates amber.

The instrument panel information lamp illuminates green, and the **LIM** icon illuminates white when adaptive cruise control is active.

When adaptive cruise control is operating, it monitors the area in front of the vehicle to identify any vehicles which are in its path. The vehicle's cruising speed is controlled accordingly. See **213, FOLLOW MODE**.

Adaptive cruise control may also react to stationary vehicles, which it previously recognized as traveling in the same direction. See **216, QUEUE ASSIST**.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PERFORMANCE

Adaptive cruise control:

- Should only be used when conditions are favorable. For example, on major roads with traffic moving in lanes.
- Should not be used during abrupt or sharp turns. For example, traffic medians, junctions, areas with many parked vehicles, or areas shared with pedestrians.

- Performance and operation can be affected by the use of non-recommended tires. Non-recommended tires may have a different circumference to those recommended for the vehicle.
- Performance may be inhibited if accumulations of dirt, snow, or ice build up on the radar sensor or camera. Fitting a protector or metalized badges to the front of the vehicle may also affect adaptive cruise control operation.

The instrument panel displays **DRIVER INTERVENE**, followed by **ACC SENSOR BLOCKED**, if a sensor's operation becomes affected by an obstruction. Clearing the obstruction from the sensor allows the system to return to normal operation. Operation is resumed automatically once the obstruction is removed.

The instrument panel may also display **ACC SENSOR BLOCKED** temporarily, if the radar sensor's or camera's vision is disrupted for a long period. For example, in poor weather conditions, when traveling through a tunnel, or in complex traffic situations.

The instrument panel may also display **ACC SENSOR BLOCKED** when traveling on open roads with few objects for the radar to detect.

Adaptive cruise control does not operate if:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) is selected.
- The speed limiter is in operation.

Adaptive cruise control automatically deactivates, but does not clear its memory, when:

## Adaptive cruise control

- The **CANCEL** button on the steering wheel controls is pressed. See **211, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is selected.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) or Electronic Traction Control (ETC) activates.
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.

Adaptive cruise control automatically deactivates, and its memory is cleared, when:

- The vehicle is switched off.
- The vehicle's maximum speed is reached.
- A fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system.

### ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL DRIVER INTERVENTION

The amount of braking applied by the adaptive cruise control system is limited. The instrument panel displays a message if the system's braking limits are reached. The driver should intervene immediately and apply a higher level of braking force using the brake pedal.

Adaptive cruise control cancels when the brake pedal is pressed. Press the **RESUME** button (2) on the steering wheel to resume adaptive cruise control operation. See **211, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL**.

Pressing the accelerator pedal inhibits adaptive cruise control braking. The follow mode amber warning lamp extinguishes to confirm the system has been overridden. See **87, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)**.

Adaptive cruise control operation resumes when the accelerator pedal is released.

### FOLLOW MODE

#### **WARNING**

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**

When adaptive cruise control identifies a slower-moving vehicle in the lane ahead, it automatically enters follow mode.

Adaptive cruise control adjusts the vehicle's speed by controlling acceleration and braking to maintain a set gap to the vehicle ahead.

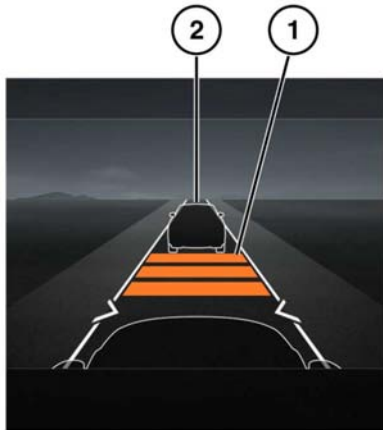
#### **WARNING**

**When in follow mode, the vehicle may not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor does the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision. Always maintain a safe gap to the vehicle ahead to reduce the risk of an accident.**



The instrument panel displays an amber warning lamp to confirm that follow mode is active. See **87, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)**.

## Adaptive cruise control



E220643

1. Follow mode gap setting.
2. Targeted vehicle.

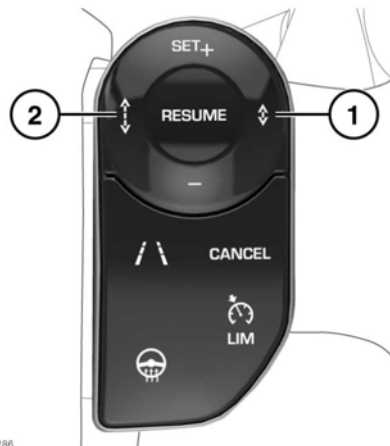
The instrument panel may also display the follow mode gap setting and a representation of the targeted vehicle.

If the turn signals are used, follow mode may reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead in anticipation of a maneuver. If a maneuver is not carried out, follow mode restores the previous gap setting after a few seconds.

**Note:** Follow mode may not reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead if it is deemed inappropriate. For example, the vehicle ahead is already too close, or the maneuver has already been completed.

The follow mode gap to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted. See **215, CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP**.

### SWITCHING FOLLOW MODE OFF



E214286

1. <->.
2. <---->.

Switching follow mode off allows the driver to take control of the vehicle's speed. When follow mode is switched off, the adaptive cruise control system does not provide any vehicle braking. Vehicle braking must be applied by the driver.



Press and hold the follow mode gap decrease button (1) on the steering wheel controls to switch follow mode off. The follow mode off white warning lamp illuminates to confirm the feature has been switched off.

**Note:** If the follow mode gap decrease button (1) is held for too long, the request to switch follow mode off is ignored.

## Adaptive cruise control

Press and release either the decrease (1) or increase (2) button on the steering wheel controls to switch follow mode back on. If adaptive cruise control is active and tracking a vehicle, the follow mode off white warning lamp extinguishes. The follow mode amber warning lamp illuminates to confirm the feature has been switched back on. The previous follow mode gap setting is resumed.

Follow mode resumes if:

1. The vehicle is switched off.
2. Adaptive cruise control is not used for a long period of time.

### CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**The driver is responsible for selecting options appropriate for the driving conditions. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.**

Follow mode has four different gap settings. Gap 3 is the default gap setting when the vehicle is switched on.



E214286

1. <->.
2. <--->.

To decrease the follow mode gap, press the decrease button (1) on the steering wheel. To increase the follow mode gap, press the increase button (2) on the steering wheel.

The instrument panel displays a vehicle image with a number of bars when the follow mode gap is adjusted. The number of bars displayed in front of the vehicle image reflects the follow mode gap setting.

### FOLLOW MODE PERFORMANCE

Follow mode maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the adaptive cruise control set speed. If this occurs, the vehicle stops accelerating when the set speed is reached.



## Adaptive cruise control

- The vehicle ahead moves out of lane or out of view. If this occurs, the vehicle accelerates to the adaptive cruise control set speed.

### QUEUE ASSIST

#### WARNING

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**

Queue assist enhances the adaptive cruise control follow mode feature. See **213, FOLLOW MODE**.

Queue assist operates at lower speeds than follow mode, allowing the feature to be used in slow-moving lines of traffic.

When the targeted vehicle slows to a standstill, queue assist brings the vehicle to a standstill. When the targeted vehicle moves off, briefly press the accelerator pedal, if safe to do so. Queue assist now maintains a constant gap to the vehicle ahead.

#### WARNING

**Queue assist may not recognize a stationary vehicle or object. To avoid an impact, it is important that the driver is prepared to press the brake pedal when approaching stationary vehicles or objects, if necessary.**

In certain conditions, queue assist also applies the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), including when:

- Adaptive cruise control is canceled by the driver.
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled.
- The driver's door is opened.

Adaptive cruise control deactivates when the EPB is applied.

The queue assist gap to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted. See **215, CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE GAP**.

### STOP AND GO

#### WARNING

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.**

In certain circumstances, adaptive cruise control is able to follow a targeted vehicle down to a standstill. See **216, QUEUE ASSIST**.

The stop and go feature automatically accelerates the vehicle away from a standstill, if the targeted vehicle pulls away within a few seconds. A short press of the accelerator pedal is required if the targeted vehicle is stationary for longer than a few seconds.

A short press of the accelerator pedal is also required if not all system requirements are met.

#### WARNING

**The instrument panel displays a warning message if adaptive cruise control detects an object in its immediate path when accelerating away from a standstill. Adaptive cruise control does not apply the brakes. Braking in order to avoid an impact remains the responsibility of the driver.**



## Adaptive cruise control

### STEERING ASSIST

#### **⚠ WARNING**

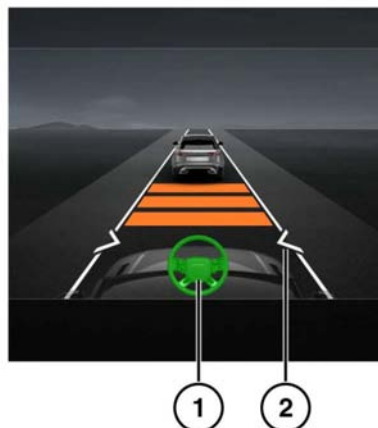
Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 209, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SAFETY.

Steering assist helps the driver keep the vehicle in the center of the lane in which it is traveling. The system does this by making steering adjustments.



E197992

Press the button on the steering wheel (1) to activate steering assist. Press the button a second time to switch the feature off. When active, the instrument panel displays steering assist system status.



E215897

1. Steering assist active.
2. Tracked lane borders.

If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel, the vehicle presents a series of visual and audible warnings. Steering assistance is stopped if the warnings are ignored.

Under normal circumstances, if the driver uses the turn signals, steering assistance stops in the direction indicated.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Steering assist is a driving aid only and not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.**



## Adaptive cruise control

### **⚠ WARNING**

Steering assist does not steer the vehicle autonomously. The driver must remain in full control of the vehicle at all times. Failure to remain in full control of the vehicle greatly increases the risk of an accident.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not use steering assist if a trailer is connected to the vehicle. The trailer may cause the steering assist feature to make incorrect judgements, increasing the risk of an accident.

### **STEERING ASSIST PERFORMANCE**

Steering assist does not operate if:

- Adaptive cruise control is not active.
- The driver's door is open.
- The vehicle is traveling at speeds higher than 112 mph (180 km/h).
- The driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel.
- The camera is obscured, e.g., by stickers, mud, or other debris.
- The radar sensor is obscured, e.g., by stickers, mud, or other debris.
- The lane boundaries in which the vehicle is traveling are not clear and visible to the camera, and no recognizable vehicle is ahead.
- The corner through which the vehicle is traveling is too tight.
- There is a fault in the system.

Steering assist operates with a reduced level of performance and accuracy if:

- Operation of the camera is impaired due to severe weather conditions, e.g., heavy rain, fog, snow, or ice.
- Operation of the camera is impaired due to extreme sunlight.
- Road markings, or in some cases a road edge, are not recognized on both sides of the lane in which the vehicle is traveling. If no road boundaries are detected, and the vehicle is traveling at less than 37 mph (60 km/h), the system follows a recognized target vehicle.

### **ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TYPE APPROVAL NUMBERS**

#### **United States of America**

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### **Canada**

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC - RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

**Note:** Changes or modifications, not expressly approved by the manufacturer, could void the user's authority to use the equipment.

## Adaptive cruise control

### Type Approval Numbers

The adaptive cruise control Radio  
Frequency approval numbers for the USA  
and Canada are:

USA FCC ID:	L2C0038TR
Canada IC:	3432A-0038TR



## Collision avoidance

### COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to use the collision avoidance systems safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Collision avoidance systems are not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Staying alert, driving safely, and being in control of the vehicle at all times is the responsibility of the driver.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Blind spot driving aids are a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style. Always use the door and rear-view mirrors. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Blind spot driving aids may not function at all speeds, or in all weather conditions. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Blind spot driving aids do not correct errors of judgement when driving. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The radar and camera sensors used by the blind spot driving aids may become impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, road spray, etc. The blind spot driving aids ability to detect a vehicle in the driver's blind spot may subsequently be affected and may give false indications. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper or to the windshield. Operation of the blind spot sensors and camera may subsequently become impaired. The blind spot driving aids ability to detect a vehicle in the driver's blind spot may subsequently be affected and may give false indications. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not attach stickers or other objects to the door mirrors, as the blind spot icons and indicators may become obscured. Obscuring the icons and indicators could cause system miscalculations and increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle maneuver.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The blind spot monitor system may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

## Collision avoidance

### **WARNING**

The blind spot monitor system may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers, etc. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

### **WARNING**

Do not use blind spot assist when a trailer is connected. The trailer may provide miscalculation or false indications. False indications could increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle maneuver.

### **FORWARD ALERT**

### **WARNING**

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 220, **COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY**.

### **WARNING**

The forward alert feature may not react to slow-moving vehicles. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

The forward alert feature monitors an area in front of the vehicle. If the forward alert feature detects an object within the detection area, a warning sounds and the instrument panel displays a warning message. The driver is responsible for taking appropriate action.

The forward alert feature can be switched on and off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See 75, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Forward alert sensitivity can be adjusted. See 221, **CHANGING THE FORWARD ALERT SENSITIVITY**.

### **CHANGING THE FORWARD ALERT SENSITIVITY**

Forward alert has three different sensitivity settings. The default setting is **Normal**.

The sensitivity of the forward alert feature can be changed as follows:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.
2. Select **Collision avoidance** from the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See 75, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
3. Use the steering wheel controls to select the required setting: **Normal**, **Medium**, or **High**.

The forward alert sensitivity setting is retained in the vehicle's memory after the vehicle is switched off.

### **AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) SAFETY**

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before driving the vehicle. Failure to understand the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.



## Collision avoidance

### **WARNING**

The AEB system is a driving aid only. The driver is always responsible for driving with due care and attention, in a safe manner for the vehicle, the occupants, and other road users. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and any potential emergency braking situations, and act appropriately.

### **WARNING**

The AEB system uses forward-facing cameras to detect real vehicles and pedestrians, plus other certified target objects. AEB is not designed to detect any other objects, including non-industry approved targets.

### **WARNING**

In order for AEB to operate, it must be able to detect a clear image of the object and be able to determine its movement. If either of these does not occur, the AEB system may not operate.

### **WARNING**

Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

**Note:** AEB efficiency is dependent on the condition of the current driving surface, and the vehicle's speed, tires, and braking system.

**Note:** Make sure the windshield is kept clean and the cameras line of sight is not obstructed by labels, stickers, etc. Failure to do so can cause incorrect AEB operation.

**Note:** When a vehicle is parked outside, in full sunlight and in high ambient temperatures, the forward-facing camera may reach an internal temperature of 210°F (99°C). In this state, the instrument panel displays the warning message **AEB not available**. When the forward-facing camera cools to less than 190°F (88°C), normal operation is resumed, and the warning message extinguishes.

**Note:** When driving off-road, it is recommended to switch off the AEB system.

**Note:** When the vehicle's ignition is first switched on, AEB may require an initialisation period before it is fully functional. During this period, the efficiency of AEB is limited.

## AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)

### **WARNING**

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 221, **AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) SAFETY**.

**Note:** Not all vehicles are fitted with Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB). Consult a retailer/authorized repairer for confirmation.

AEB uses forward-facing cameras, located above the rear-view mirror, to help identify an imminent risk of collision with:

- Another vehicle traveling in front.
- A crossing pedestrian.

In most instances, AEB helps reduce the severity of an impact. In some cases, AEB helps to stop the vehicle before an impact takes place.

## Collision avoidance

If required, AEB can be switched off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

AEB automatically switches on, every time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

### Vehicle detection

The vehicle detection AEB system operates when the vehicle is traveling between 3 mph (5 km/h) and 50 mph (80 km/h). If an imminent risk of collision with a vehicle traveling in front is detected, the system automatically applies the brakes. If the vehicle's speed is between 22 mph (35 km/h) and 50 mph (80 km/h), the instrument panel displays a warning message. The warning message is displayed just before the brakes are automatically applied.

### WARNING

**The brakes are only applied for a few seconds after the vehicle has stopped. After this period, the driver must resume full control of the vehicle.**

The driver can override AEB operation by turning the steering wheel or pressing the accelerator pedal. AEB then disengages to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

### Pedestrian detection

The pedestrian detection AEB system operates when the vehicle is traveling between 3 mph (5 km/h) and 37 mph (60 km/h). If an imminent risk of collision with a crossing pedestrian is detected, the system automatically applies the brakes. If the vehicle's speed is between 25 mph (40 km/h) and 37 mph (60 km/h), the instrument panel displays a warning message. The warning message is displayed just before the brakes are automatically applied.

### WARNING

**The brakes are only applied for a few seconds after the vehicle has stopped. After this period, the driver must resume full control of the vehicle.**

The driver can override AEB operation by turning the steering wheel or pressing the accelerator pedal. AEB then disengages to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

### AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB) PERFORMANCE

Vehicle detection Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) does not operate if:

- The vehicle is negotiating a tight corner.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.
- The forward-facing cameras are dirty or obscured.
- The vehicle's speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h), or above 50 mph (80 km/h).
- Visibility is impaired due to severe weather conditions, e.g., heavy rain, fog, or snow.



## Collision avoidance

In addition to the items listed for the vehicle detection AEB system, the pedestrian detection AEB system does not operate if:

- The vehicle's speed is above 37 mph (60 km/h).
- The detected object is not identified as a pedestrian.
- The height of the object is less than 39 in (1 m).
- The pedestrian detection AEB system cannot determine that the target object is a pedestrian. For example, if the pedestrian is carrying a large object.

### ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (AEBA)

#### WARNING

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 220, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.**

Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA) prepares the braking system if it detects a collision is imminent. If the driver subsequently presses the brake pedal, full braking force is applied immediately.

If forward alert is switched on, AEBA activates after the instrument panel displays the **FORWARD ALERT** warning message. AEBA automatically applies a light braking force. Full braking force is applied immediately when the driver presses the brake pedal.

AEBA still operates if forward alert is switched off.

### ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (AEBA) PERFORMANCE

#### WARNING

The Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA) feature may not react to slow-moving vehicles. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

#### WARNING

The AEBA feature does not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles traveling in the opposite direction. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

#### WARNING

In some circumstances, warnings may not display in the instrument panel. For example, if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small. Another example includes when carrying out a collision avoidance maneuver by making large steering wheel and pedal movements. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

AEBA operates at speeds above approximately 5 mph (8 km/h).



## Collision avoidance

### HIGH-SPEED EMERGENCY BRAKING

#### ⚠️ WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 220, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.

The high-speed emergency braking feature attempts to slow the vehicle automatically if it detects that a collision with a slower vehicle ahead is unavoidable. The high-speed emergency braking feature operates at all speeds. The feature also operates if forward alert is switched off.

A warning sounds if the high-speed emergency braking feature detects a collision is imminent. The high-speed emergency braking feature automatically applies the brakes if it detects that a collision is unavoidable. The instrument panel displays **IEB system not available (was activated)** after the high-speed emergency braking feature has been activated.

**Note:** The high-speed emergency braking feature does not work again until the system has been reset by a retailer/authorized repairer.

### HIGH-SPEED EMERGENCY BRAKING PERFORMANCE

#### ⚠️ WARNING

The high-speed emergency braking feature may not react to slow-moving vehicles. The driver must always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

#### ⚠️ WARNING

The high-speed emergency braking feature does not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles traveling in the opposite direction. Always drive with due care and attention. Driving without due care and attention greatly increases the risk of an accident.

The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tires and the road surface.

### BLIND SPOT MONITOR

#### ⚠️ WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 220, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.



The blind spot monitor system monitors an area adjacent to, and approximately 20 ft (6 m) behind, the vehicle. When the system detects an overtaking vehicle, the amber warning icon (1):

- Flashes if the relevant turn signal is being used.
- Illuminates continuously if the relevant turn signal is not being used.



## Collision avoidance

During initialization, the warning icons flash in both door mirrors.

A warning indicator (2) illuminates in the door mirrors when the blind spot monitoring system is disabled.

The blind spot monitor system can be switched on and off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

### BLIND SPOT MONITOR PERFORMANCE

The blind spot monitor system does not operate when:

- Reverse (R) or Park (P) are selected.
- The vehicle's speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- The sensors become blocked.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.

The blind spot monitor system:

- Works most effectively on multi-lane highways.
- Monitors an area of approximately 8 ft (2.5 m) from the side of the vehicle, and approximately 20 ft (6 m) behind the vehicle.
- May register false targets if traveling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications, impact damage, etc.

The instrument panel and touchscreen display messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

### BLIND SPOT MONITOR RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

#### United States of America

The device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules, UR8 303919. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- The device may not cause harmful interference.
- The device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Note:** *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

#### Canada

The device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC - RSS-210 and IC-RSS-251. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- The device may not cause interference.
- The device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Frequency of operation: 24.05GHz - 24.25GHz.

Field strength: Not greater than 2.5V/m peak (0.25V/m average) at a distance of 3 meters.

## Collision avoidance

### CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 220, **COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY**.

The closing vehicle sensing system monitors an area adjacent to, and up to approximately 230 ft (70 m) behind, the vehicle. Closing vehicle sensing is automatically switched on when the blind spot monitor system is switched on. See 225, **BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.



E210991

An amber warning icon (1) is located in each door mirror. The icon:

- Flashes if the closing vehicle sensing system detects a rapidly approaching vehicle, and the relevant turn signal is being used.
- Illuminates continuously if the detected vehicle enters the area monitored by the blind spot monitor system, and the relevant turn signal is not being used. See 225, **BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.
- Flashes if the detected vehicle enters the area monitored by the blind spot monitor system, and the relevant turn signal is being used. See 225, **BLIND SPOT MONITOR**.

A warning indicator (2) illuminates in the door mirrors when the closing vehicle sensing system is disabled.

### CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING PERFORMANCE

The closing vehicle sensing system does not operate when:

- Reverse (R) or Park (P) are selected.
- Vehicle speed is below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- The sensors become blocked.
- The blind spot monitor system is not operating.
- The vehicle is traveling around a tight bend.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.

The closing vehicle sensing system:

- Works most effectively on multi-lane highways.
- Monitors an area of approximately 8 ft (2.5 m) from the side of the vehicle, and approximately 230 ft (70 m) behind the vehicle.
- May register false targets if travelling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications, impact damage, etc.

The instrument panel and touchscreen display messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

## Collision avoidance

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST

#### WARNING

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 220, COLLISION AVOIDANCE SAFETY.**

The blind spot assist system applies corrective steering inputs if:

- A vehicle is detected in the blind spot monitor area, and:
- A lane change maneuver is attempted.



If a lane change maneuver is initiated while a risk is detected, the relevant door mirror displays a flashing vehicle warning icon.

At the same time, a rotational force automatically applies to the steering wheel to counter the lane change. The instrument panel **Driver assistance** view displays a warning when a rotational force is applied to the steering wheel.

If required, the steering input provided by the blind spot assist system can be overridden in order to complete a lane change maneuver.

Blind spot assist can be switched on and off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

### BLIND SPOT ASSIST PERFORMANCE

The blind spot assist system does not operate when:

- Reverse (**R**) or Park (**P**) are selected.
- Vehicle speed is below 37 mph (60 km/h).

- The sensors in the rear bumper become blocked.
- The camera under the rear-view mirror becomes blocked.
- The blind spot monitor system is not operating.
- An electrical connector is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket.

The blind spot assist system:

- Works in conjunction with the blind spot monitor, and closing vehicle sensing systems.
- Works most effectively on multi-lane highways.
- May register false targets if traveling along a narrow lane.
- Does not work accurately if the sensors are misaligned due to bumper modifications, impact damage, etc.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

### FORWARD TRAFFIC MONITOR

#### WARNING

**The forward traffic monitor system is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, safe driving, good observation, and use of the door mirrors and rear-view mirror.**

#### WARNING

**The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when maneuvering the vehicle.**

## Collision avoidance

**NOTICE**

*The camera must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculation or false indications.*

**NOTICE**

*Do not attach stickers or objects to the vehicle that may interfere with the camera.*

**Note:** The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.



E200635

1. **Vehicle warning** icon: The **CAMERA** screen or the **PARKING AID** screen, depending on the current selection, displays a **vehicle warning** icon on the relevant side(s) of the screen. The icon indicates the presence of a moving vehicle. An audible warning also sounds.
2. Parking aid plan view.
3. **Camera** icon: Touch to select the camera feature.
4. **System disabled warning** icon: Displays when the system is not active.

The forward traffic monitor feature is an enhancement of the surround camera system. The feature warns the driver when a potential side impact is imminent when pulling out from an intersection or parking space in a forward direction.



## Collision avoidance

When the driver approaches a T-junction, the driver's visibility might be reduced. The forward traffic monitor feature provides additional support and warns the driver of the risk of other vehicles approaching. The feature can detect vehicles from either side, traveling up to 40 mph (64 km/h) with a time to collision of 3 seconds. An audible alert is also provided to aid the driver, when a potential risk is detected.

The feature is active from a stationary position to 4 mph (6 km/h). Once the vehicle reaches a speed of 4 mph (6 km/h), the alerts are no longer generated while the camera views remain on the screen.

On approaching an intersection, the driver must touch the **camera** icon (3) for the feature to become active. The feature is not autonomous.

The forward traffic monitor system automatically disables if the camera becomes partially or completely obscured. The instrument panel displays a message to inform the driver that a sensor is blocked.

Check that there is nothing obscuring the camera's surface. Check that it is clear from ice, frost, snow, mud, and dirt.

The **system disabled warning** icon (4) displays on the touchscreen if a fault is detected, or the feature is not available. The instrument panel displays a message to inform the driver that the system is not available.

If a fault occurs that is not rectified when the engine is switched off and then on again, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

### REAR TRAFFIC MONITOR

#### WARNING

The rear traffic monitor system may not be able to detect all obstacles. The driver remains responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from the objects when maneuvering the vehicle. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

#### WARNING

The rear camera and bumper must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the rear camera and bumper clear may result in miscalculations or false indications. Miscalculations and false indications can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

**Note:** Rear traffic monitor messages are displayed either on the touchscreen or in the instrument panel.

## Collision avoidance



E203360

**1. Vehicle warning icon:** The **CAMERA** screen, or the **PARKING AID** screen, depending on the current selection, displays a **vehicle warning** icon on the relevant side(s) of the screen. The **vehicle warning** icon indicates the presence of a moving vehicle.

**2. Parking aid plan view.**

**3. Camera icon:** Touch to select the camera feature.

**4. System disabled warning icon:**  
Displays when the system is not active.

The rear traffic monitor system adds extra functionality to the rear camera image by providing **vehicle warning** icons (1) on the touchscreen.

The **vehicle warning** icons (1) inform the driver that the vehicle is reversing into the path of a moving vehicle, potentially causing an accident.

The rear traffic monitor system automatically activates when Reverse (R) is selected, and the vehicle is reversing at speeds of less than 10 mph (16 km/h). The rear traffic monitor system detects cross traffic vehicles at speeds of up to 34 mph (55 km/h).

The rear traffic monitor system can also be disabled or re-enabled via the **Driver assistance** menu, in the instrument panel. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

To move from the **CAMERA** screen to the **PARKING AID** screen, touch the parking aid plan view (2).

To move from the **PARKING AID** screen to the **CAMERA** screen, touch the **camera** icon (3).

The rear traffic monitor system automatically disables if any of the sensors become partially or completely obscured. The touchscreen or instrument panel displays a message to inform the driver that a sensor is blocked.



## Collision avoidance

Check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper's surface. Check that the bumper is clear from ice, frost, snow, mud, and dirt.

The **system disabled warning** icon (4) is displayed on the touchscreen if a fault is detected, or the system is not available. The touchscreen or instrument panel displays a message to inform the driver that the system is not available.

**Note:** *If the detected fault affects a radar sensor on only one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system operates correctly once the engine is switched off and then on again.*

If a fault occurs that is not rectified when the engine is switched off and on again, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.



## All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)

### ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) OVERVIEW

#### ⚠ WARNING

Use extreme care when maneuvering the vehicle in a reverse direction, to avoid serious injury or death.

The All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system helps the driver to maneuver the vehicle on slippery surfaces, e.g., snow, grass, gravel, sand, or mud.

When the ATPC system is enabled, with the brake pedal fully released, the system helps to provide controlled and progressive assistance for the vehicle to:

- Pull away from a standstill, in a forward or reverse direction on level ground, and uphill or downhill.
- Perform low speed maneuvering in a forward or reverse direction.
- Make progress and maintain a selected set speed up to a maximum of 19 mph (30 km/h).

### USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)

#### ⚠ WARNING

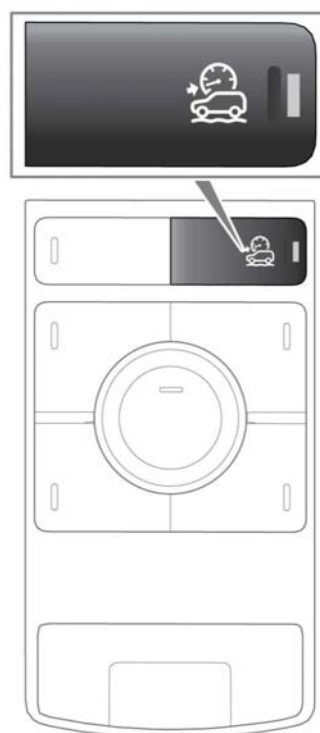
Do not attempt a steep descent if the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system is inoperative or warning messages are displayed. Doing so may potentially result in damage to the vehicle or personal injury.

#### ⚠ WARNING

The driver must maintain full control of the steering and brakes at all times. Failure to do so may potentially result in damage to the vehicle or personal injury.

**Note:** The ATPC system cannot be enabled if the advanced tow assist or the park assist features are currently enabled.

**Note:** The vehicle's cruise control, speed limiter, and auto stop/start systems are disabled during operation of the ATPC system.



E203985

To enable the ATPC system, press the ATPC button, located on the center console. The instrument panel displays a message prompting to select the set speed for the vehicle. The ATPC warning lamp illuminates to confirm selection. See **85, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER)**.



## All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)

**Note:** The driver can override the ATPC system operation, at any time, using the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal. The instrument panel displays an ATPC override message.

The ATPC system can be enabled when the vehicle is stationary and when the vehicle is moving. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the brake pedal to maintain control of the vehicle.

The ATPC system remains enabled for 6 hours after the ignition is switched off. After this time, ATPC has to be reselected, if the system is still required when the ignition is switched on.

Press and release the **ATPC** button again to disable the system. The instrument panel displays an ATPC off confirmation message. The ATPC warning lamp also extinguishes to confirm deselection.

The ATPC system operation is influenced by the current terrain response driving program selection. For example, the grass gravel snow program requires gradual ATPC acceleration to help gain available wheel traction. The comfort program allows increased ATPC acceleration to help improve vehicle progress.

When enabled, the ATPC system defaults to descent control mode, i.e., the system only limits the vehicle's downhill speed, using the brakes.

When the ATPC system enters descent control mode, the instrument panel displays a confirmation message indicating that ATPC will only control the vehicle's descent speed.

Use the ATPC system's descent control mode when traveling down a steep descent.

Operate as follows:

1. Select the correct driving program for the current terrain. See **195, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.
2. Select the required position for the gear selector.
3. Release the vehicle's brakes to allow gravity to make the vehicle progress up to the default speed for descent control mode. The currently selected terrain response driving program determines the default speed for descent control mode. The default speed varies from a minimum of 1.1 mph (1.8 km/h) in low range and up to a maximum of 7.5 mph (12 km/h) in high range. See **178, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.
4. The ATPC system maintains the default speed for descent control mode. The ATPC system exits descent control mode if it detects the use of the accelerator pedal, or the steering wheel's **SET+** button. See **235, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SETTINGS**.

**Note:** Descent control mode resumes when the accelerator pedal is released and the steering wheel's **SET+** button is not used.

**Note:** If the steering wheel's **SET+** button is used, the ATPC system enters full function mode.

When the ATPC system enters full function mode the instrument panel displays a prompt message to select the required speed.

## All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)

**Note:** The driver's seat belt must be buckled and all of the doors must be closed to enable the ATPC system to enter full function mode. If these conditions are not met, the instrument panel displays a warning message.

Low traction launch is disabled when the ATPC system enters full function mode. See **244, LOW TRACTION LAUNCH**.

Full function mode controls the vehicle's speed via the use of both the brakes and engine torque.

Use full function mode for all other maneuvers that require the vehicle to gain traction and make progress. For example, making an ascent, pulling away from a standstill, and driving on unstable and slippery driving surfaces.

The ATPC system defaults to descent control mode and the instrument panel displays a message, in the event that:

- The transmission is engaged in Neutral (N) or Park (P).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle's brakes are firmly applied during operation of the ATPC system.
- The vehicle is brought to a standstill via light and gentle application of the brake pedal.

In the event that the vehicle's brake temperatures exceed the normal operating limits, the instrument panel displays a warning message. In this event, The ATPC system operation fades out and becomes temporarily inactive. When the brakes return to normal operating temperatures, the message extinguishes and the system resumes normal operation.

If an ATPC system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a message indicating that ATPC is not available.

Some detected faults may allow the ATPC system to operate in descent control mode only. In this event, the instrument panel displays a message indicating that ATPC can only operate in descent control mode. Using the **SET+** button increases the set speed for descent control mode.

If a detected fault persists, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

### ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) SETTINGS

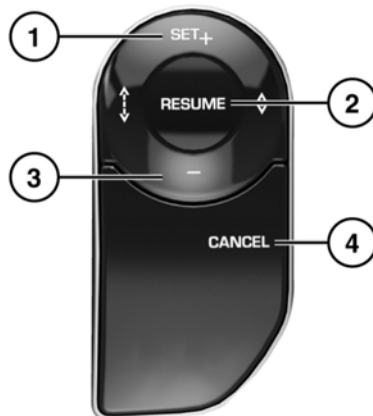
**Note:** When the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the brake pedal to maintain control of the vehicle while using the **SET+** button.

**Note:** Light and gentle application of the accelerator pedal temporarily overrides the current set speed. Release the accelerator pedal to revert the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system back to the previously selected set speed.

**Note:** Selecting very low speeds when pulling away on slippery surfaces can affect the vehicle's ability to make progress. For improved pulling away performance, it is recommended to select a set speed that is sufficient to maintain the vehicle's progress.

**Note:** Light and gentle application of the brake pedal lowers the set speed. When the brake pedal is fully released, the ATPC system maintains the speed at which the vehicle was traveling when the brake pedal was released. If the brake pedal is pressed when the ATPC system is active, a slight pulsation movement may be felt through the brake pedal.

## All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)



E197818

When the ATPC system is enabled, the desired set speed for the vehicle can be set and adjusted. Use the controls mounted on the right side of the steering wheel.

1. **SET+** button: Press once to enable the ATPC system to recognise that the desired set speed is to be set and adjusted. Press repeatedly, or press and hold, to increase the set speed, up to a maximum speed of 19 mph (30 km/h). Alternatively, when driving, press the **SET+** button for the vehicle's current speed to be the set speed. The instrument panel displays the current set speed.
2. **RESUME** button: Press to resume the set speed if the vehicle's speed has been lowered via gentle application of the brake pedal.

### ⚠ CAUTION

**RESUME** should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it. Inappropriate use can potentially lead to vehicle damage or personal injury.

3. **-** button: Press and release repeatedly, or press and hold, to decrease the desired set speed. The minimum feature speed is 2.2 mph (3.5 km/h) in high range or 1.1 mph (1.8 km/h) in low range. See **178, SELECTING HIGH AND LOW RANGE**.

4. **CANCEL** button: Press to exit full function mode and revert the ATPC system to descent control mode. See **233, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

**Note:** Pressing the **CANCEL** button retains the set speed for future use, unless the ATPC system or the ignition system is switched off.

The incremental increases or decreases of the set speed are influenced by the current set speed:

- 0.3 mph (0.5 km/h) increments if the set speed is between 0 and 3 mph (0 and 5 km/h).
- 0.6 mph (1 km/h) increments if the set speed is between 3 and 6 mph (5 and 10 km/h).
- 1.2 mph (2 km/h) increments if the set speed is between 6 and 19 mph (10 and 30 km/h).

## All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC)

When the vehicle is traveling at speeds between 19 mph (30 km/h) and 50 mph (80 km/h), the ATPC system operation is suspended. In this event, the ATPC warning lamp flashes. The ATPC system operation resumes when the vehicle's speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 50 mph (80 km/h), the ATPC system disables. The ATPC warning lamp extinguishes. If required, the ATPC system has to be switched on again. See **85, ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC) (AMBER)**.



## Driving aids

### DRIVING AIDS SAFETY

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood before using a driving aid system. Failure to use the driving aids safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Despite the vehicle being fitted with driving aids, the driver is still responsible for driving with due care and attention. The driver should also observe all road markings. Only drive in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and other road users.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Driving aids are a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Driving aids may not function at all speeds, or in all weather conditions. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Driving aids do not correct errors of judgement when driving. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

The sensors and camera used by the driving aids may become impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, road spray, etc. The driving aids ability to detect a risk may subsequently be affected and may give false indications. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper or to the windshield. Operation of the sensors and camera may subsequently become impaired. The driving aids ability to detect a risk may subsequently be affected, and may give false indications. Drive safely at all times, and use the door and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Do not attach stickers or other objects to the door mirrors, as the blind spot icons and indicators may become obscured. Obscuring the icons and indicators could cause system miscalculations and increase the risk of a collision during a vehicle maneuver.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

The performance of the lane departure systems is affected by tire pressures and steering alignment. Constant steering adjustment may be required if the tire pressures are low, or if the steering is out of alignment. Constant steering adjustment increases the risk of an accident. Check the tire pressures regularly. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer if it is believed that the steering is out of alignment.

## Driving aids

### LANE DEPARTURE WARNING

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.**

The lane departure warning system alerts the driver when the vehicle is in danger of crossing a road lane boundary.



E197992

Press the button located on the steering wheel (1) to switch the system on and off.

The instrument panel displays a lamp when the lane departure warning system is switched on. The lamp changes color as follows:

- Gray lines indicate that the lane boundaries are not being tracked.
- Green lines indicate that the lane boundaries are being tracked.
- A red line indicates that the vehicle has crossed a lane boundary.

A vibration can also be felt through the steering wheel if the vehicle crosses a lane boundary.

Lane departure warning status can also be viewed via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel view. See 75, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The **Driver assistance** view displays a visual representation of the vehicle's position within a lane in the instrument panel. The lane boundaries change color as follows:

- Dashed white lines indicate that the lane boundaries are being tracked.
- A solid red line indicates that the vehicle has crossed a lane boundary.

### LANE DEPARTURE WARNING PERFORMANCE

The lane departure warning system is not active when:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- A turn signal is being used.
- The vehicle's speed is below 37 mph (60 km/h) or above 112 mph (180 km/h).
- The windshield area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked by stickers, mud, snow, debris, etc.
- Driving off-road.
- Driving in lanes narrower than 8 ft (2.5 m) or wider than 17 ft (5.2 m).
- A fault occurs in the system.

The lane departure warning system:

- Does not detect unmarked road edges.
- Does not perform to its best ability in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.

## Driving aids

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

### LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA)

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, DRIVING AIDS SAFETY.**

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) provides two levels of assistance, if it determines the vehicle is in danger of crossing a road lane boundary.



Press the button located on the steering wheel (1) to switch the system on and off. Select the **Lane Keep Assist (LKA)** option in the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu to choose the level of lane keeping assistance. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

LKA options are:

- **Steering assist:** Applies an opposing, corrective steering input.

- **Steering vibrate:** Applies a vibration to the steering wheel.

When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the previous LKA settings are recalled.

LKA uses the same instrument panel icons and displays as the lane departure warning system. See **239, LANE DEPARTURE WARNING**.

### LANE KEEP ASSIST (LKA) PERFORMANCE

The Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system is not active when:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- A turn signal is being used.
- The vehicle's speed is below 37 mph (60 km/h) or above 112 mph (180 km/h).
- The windshield area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked by stickers, mud, snow, debris, etc.
- Driving off-road.
- Driving in lanes narrower than 8 ft (2.5 m) or wider than 17 ft (5.2 m).
- A fault occurs in the system.

The LKA system:

- May not detect unmarked road edges.
- Does not perform to its best ability in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.

The instrument panel displays messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.



## Driving aids

### DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR

#### WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, **DRIVING AIDS SAFETY**.

The driver condition monitor feature evaluates driving technique for signs of fatigue.



The instrument panel displays a white icon if it is determined that the driver is fatigued. The instrument panel also emits a chime.

If the initial warning is ignored, the instrument panel displays an amber icon after 15 minutes. The instrument panel also emits a chime. The icon remains illuminated until the **OK** button on the steering wheel is pressed.

The driver condition monitor feature can be switched on and off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See 75, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

### DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR PERFORMANCE

The driver condition monitor is not active when:

- The vehicle's speed is below 37 mph (60 km/h) or above 112 mph (180 km/h).
- A fault occurs in the system.

### TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

#### WARNING

Make sure the relevant safety warnings have been read and understood before driving the vehicle. See 238, **DRIVING AIDS SAFETY**.

The traffic sign recognition system uses a forward-facing camera, located in the rear-view mirror. The camera detects speed signs, no overtaking signs, and variable overhead speed signs.



The instrument panel displays symbols of recognized traffic signs. If no speed limit signs are detected, the instrument panel displays speed limit information taken from the navigation system.

The traffic sign recognition system is also able to detect traffic signs containing additional information. For example, the system is able to detect if a reduced speed limit is in place for wet conditions, and the wipers are switched on. In this instance, the reduced speed limit is displayed in the instrument panel.

The traffic sign recognition system can be switched on and off via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. See 75, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The traffic sign recognition system can also be adjusted via the **Driver assistance** instrument panel menu. Three levels of speed alert can be set, as follows:

- When the vehicle's speed is above the detected speed limit.
- When the vehicle's speed is either 5 mph or 10 km/h above the detected speed limit.



## Driving aids

- When the vehicle's speed is either 10 mph or 20 km/h above the detected speed limit.

### TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PERFORMANCE

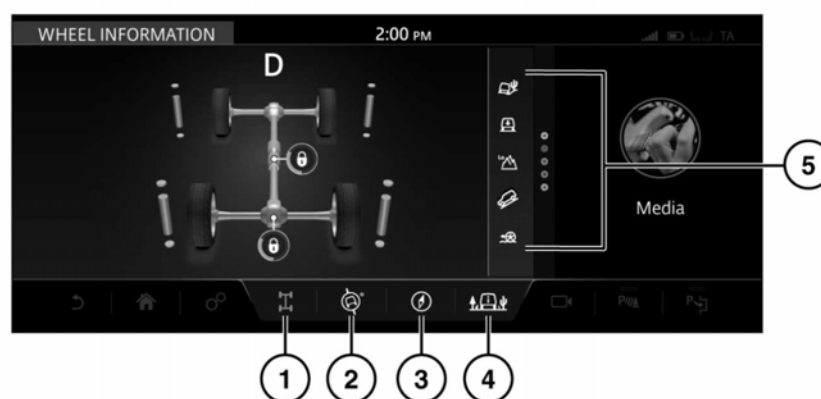
The traffic sign recognition system is not active when the windshield area in front of the rear-view mirror becomes blocked. For example, by stickers, mud, snow, debris, etc.

The traffic sign recognition system:

- Does not perform to its best ability in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, or snow.
- May not perform, or may perform incorrectly, when the vehicle is traveling through an area not covered by the navigation system.
- May function incorrectly when driving towards bright lights.
- May not recognize concealed, covered, or non-conforming road signs.
- May not perform to its best ability if the navigation information is incorrect.

The instrument panel and touchscreen display messages to inform the driver of any performance or system issues.

## OFF-ROAD INFORMATION



E187562

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not operate the touchscreen controls while the vehicle is moving. Doing so may cause driver distraction, potentially resulting in an accident and causing serious injury or death.**

The **4x4i** extra feature allows access to 4 Wheel Drive (4WD) information and guidance features for off-road driving.

Select **Off-Road Information** from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

**Note:** The number of 4x4i features is dependent on the specification of the vehicle.

The touchscreen displays the following information:

1. **Wheel information** icon: Touch to display information about the vehicle's wheels, suspension, transmission, and driveline:
  - The current automatic transmission gear selection.
  - Vertical bar images, at each wheel, indicate the current suspension movement for vehicles with an electronic air suspension system.
  - The displayed front wheels move to indicate the current steering angle.
  - The differential lock symbols display increments to indicate the current status of the locking torque applied to the vehicle's driveline.

## 4x4i

- In the event of wheel spin, a colored arrow displays on the wheel that loses traction. A yellow arrow indicates a low level of wheel spin. An orange arrow indicates a medium level of wheel spin. A red arrow indicates a high level of wheel spin.
  - 2. **Slope assist** icon: Touch to display the vehicle's current pitch and roll angles. Warnings display when the maximum angle values are being approached or exceeded.
  - 3. **Compass** icon: Touch to display the direction orientation of the vehicle. The current latitude, longitude, and altitude are also displayed.
  - 4. **TR information** (terrain response) icon: Touch to display information and guidance for the currently selected terrain response driving program.
- Note:** Make sure that the vehicle is stationary, with the ignition switched on.
- 5. Highlighted icons indicate other vehicle features that are currently enabled. For example, Hill Descent Control (HDC) and the currently selected terrain response driving program.

**Note:** The number of available icons is dependent on the specification of the vehicle.

### VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

To display the vehicle dimensions on the touchscreen, select **Vehicle Dimensions** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Touch the alternative icon at the bottom of the screen to view other dimensions.

**Note:** The current height of the vehicle is dependent on the current setting of the electronic air suspension system.

### LOW TRACTION LAUNCH

The low traction launch feature helps to further enhance low speed maneuvering and pulling away from a standstill, in adverse conditions.

Operation of the low traction launch feature is further enhanced if the grass gravel snow driving program is enabled. See **197, GRASS GRAVEL SNOW**.

The low traction launch feature also operates if either the automatic (**AUTO**) driving program or the comfort driving program is selected. See **197, COMFORT** and **195, TERRAIN RESPONSE OPERATION**.

Select **Low Traction Launch** from the **4x4i** extra feature on the touchscreen. Follow the on-screen instructions to meet the required vehicle conditions. Touch the **Activate** soft key to enable the low traction launch feature. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Alternatively, the touchscreen displays a low traction launch pop-up menu, if the following conditions are met and the grass gravel snow driving program is selected:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The accelerator pedal is not pressed.
- The All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system has not entered full function mode, if ATPC is currently enabled. See **233, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

In this event, select the required **Yes** or **No** soft key from the pop-up menu. Alternatively, touch the **Do not show again** soft key to disable the pop-up menu. The pop-up menu is also enabled and disabled via the 4x4i settings. See **258, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

The low traction launch feature only operates at vehicle speeds below 19 mph (30 km/h).

Low speed manoeuvres, and pulling away from a standstill, are complete when the vehicle's speed reaches 19 mph (30 km/h). The low traction launch feature automatically disables.

The low traction launch feature also disables if:

- The ATPC system enters full function mode.
- The dynamic, mud ruts, rock crawl, or sand driving program is selected.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed to its full travel (kickdown).
- A low traction launch system fault is detected. In this event, the instrument panel and the touchscreen display a warning message.

## DRIVE ASSIST

Drive assist is a surround camera feature that assists the driver with forward vehicle guidance while driving off-road. The drive assist feature displays the area directly ahead of the vehicle that may not be visible to the driver.

Select **Drive Assist** from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

The drive assist feature may not operate correctly in certain conditions, for example:

- If the vehicle is being driven on top of a hill.
- If the system is operating in low ambient light levels.
- If the vehicle's cameras are dirty or obscured.

The drive assist feature disables if Reverse (**R**) is engaged. The touchscreen displays a rear-view camera image.

The drive assist feature is suspended if the vehicle's speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h). The touchscreen displays a warning message. Normal operation resumes when the vehicle's speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

The touchscreen camera view displays three images: one from the front camera and one from each door mirror camera. Touch either of the door mirror camera views for a two image display, i.e., the selected door mirror camera view and the front camera view. Touch the **return** icon to return to the three image display.

## WADE SENSING

### WARNING

**Avoid driving in floodwaters or any flowing water. Doing so can potentially lead to serious injury or death.**

## 4x4i

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not assume that using the wade sensing feature makes wading any less dangerous. The wade sensing feature only detects the immediate level of water touching the vehicle. The wade sensing feature cannot detect or predict the depth of water surrounding the vehicle or rapid increases in water levels about to occur. Hence the wade sensing feature cannot predict whether it is safe to continue driving. The driver is responsible for assessing the safety of the driving conditions, potential hazards, and the current driving direction to avoid vehicle damage or personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING**

When entering water from a steep grade, the water level may rise rapidly. The wade sensing feature may not be able to accurately warn the driver of the current water level. The potential result can be serious injury or death.

**⚠ WARNING**

The wade sensing feature cannot detect accurate water levels if a layer of ice or snow exists on the surface of the water. The potential result can be serious injury or death.

**⚠ CAUTION**

The sensors for the wade sensing feature are located on the base of the door mirrors. The sensors must be kept clean and free from snow, ice, mud, and other debris. Failure to keep the sensors clean can result in sensor miscalculation, potentially leading to vehicle damage or personal injury.

**⚠ CAUTION**

If the door mirrors are in the fold position, the wade sensing feature operates but displays false information. The potential result may lead to vehicle damage or personal injury.

**Note:** The door mirrors must be in the normal (unfolded) position for correct operation of the wade sensing feature.

**Note:** Operation of the wade sensing feature disables: the parking aid system, the park assist system, and the auto stop/start system.

The wade sensing feature is designed to aid the driver in calculating the current depth while driving through water. The touchscreen displays the current detected water level and the vehicle's maximum wading depth.

Select **Wade Sensing** from the **4x4i** extra feature. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

The wade sensing feature cannot be enabled if the All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) system is currently enabled. See **233, USING ALL TERRAIN PROGRESS CONTROL (ATPC)**.

Use the **4X4i SETTINGS** menu screen to configure the units displayed in the wade sensing feature. Select the **Meters** or **Feet** soft key, as required. See **258, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

If the detected water level approaches the vehicle's maximum wading depth, the touchscreen and the instrument panel display warning messages. Audible warning tones also sound.

If the wade sensing feature limitations are exceeded, the touchscreen image illuminates gray and the water level no longer displays.

## 4x4i

The wade sensing feature does not operate when the vehicle's speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h) or the current gradient exceeds 10°. Operation automatically resumes when the vehicle's speed returns to less than 6 mph (10 km/h) or the current gradient is less than 10°. If the vehicle's speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h) for 30 seconds, the wade sensing feature automatically switches off.

## Touchscreen home

### TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU



E200052

Make sure the following warnings and cautions have been read and fully understood before using the touchscreen controls. Failure to use the touchscreen controls safely could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### **WARNING**

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

#### **NOTICE**

*Always run the engine during prolonged use of the touchscreen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery, and prevent the engine from starting.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touchscreen.*

**Note:** A gloved hand may not operate the touchscreen. Remove glove(s) before selecting any touchscreen features.

Swipe the home menu screen to the left, to access the **EXTRA FEATURES** screens or to the right, to access the **MY HOME** screens.

1. **Navigation:** Touch to select the **NAVIGATION** assistance map. See **336, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.
2. **Media:** Touch to select the **SELECT SOURCE** media screen. If the media system is already switched on, touch to select the current media source menu. See **260, MEDIA CONTROLS**.



## Touchscreen home

**Note:** When the system is active, current information for the media being played is displayed.

3. **Phone:** Touch to select the **PHONE** screen. See **324, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
4. **Status icons:** Display the status of a vehicle feature or application. See **253, TOUCH SCREEN STATUS ICONS**.
5. **Page indicator:** Indicates the number of available screens. The solid dot indicates the position of the currently displayed screen.
6. **Phone shortcut:** Touch to select **Voicemail** when a phone is connected, or the **PHONE** screen when no phone is connected.
7. **Park assist icon:** Touch to switch the **PARK ASSIST** screen on or off. See **311, PARK ASSIST**.
8. **Parking aids icon:** Touch to switch the **PARKING AIDS** screen on or off. See **308, USING THE PARKING AID**.
9. **Camera icon:** Touch to select the **CAMERA** screen. See **320, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.
10. **Bluetooth icon:** Touch to select the **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device screen. See **335, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.
11. **Settings icon:** Touch to select **Home Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
12. **Home icon:** Touch to select the **PREVIEWS** screen. Touch to select the **HOME** screen, when in other screens.
13. **Return icon:** Touch to return to a higher menu level.

**Note:** The **return** icon is disabled on the **HOME** screen.

14. **Navigation shortcut:** Touch to set a destination or to cancel guidance if a destination is already set.

15. **Media shortcut:** Touch to select the media shortcut:

- **Bluetooth®** and **USB:** Alternate between pause and play.
- **Radio:** Station mute.

### TOUCH SCREEN SIDE PANEL

The touchscreen's side panel allows features to be displayed and controlled independently of the main view. See **260, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

The following features can be displayed, alongside the main view:

- **Media:** Displays the currently selected media source, and enables tracks, channels, or stations to be changed and the sound to be muted.
- **Navigation:** Displays either the current location or the set destination, the ETA, or the distance remaining to the destination.
- **Phone:** Displays a list of recent calls, details for the call in progress, and the **end call** and **mute call** icons.
- **Weather:** Displays the temperature and a description of the current weather. Also displays the weather for the set destination and favorite locations.
- **News:** Displays the headlines of the selected news channel and enables news stories to be read out.

**Note:** The weather and news are features that utilize *InControl Pro Services*. See **357, CONNECTED NAVIGATION**.

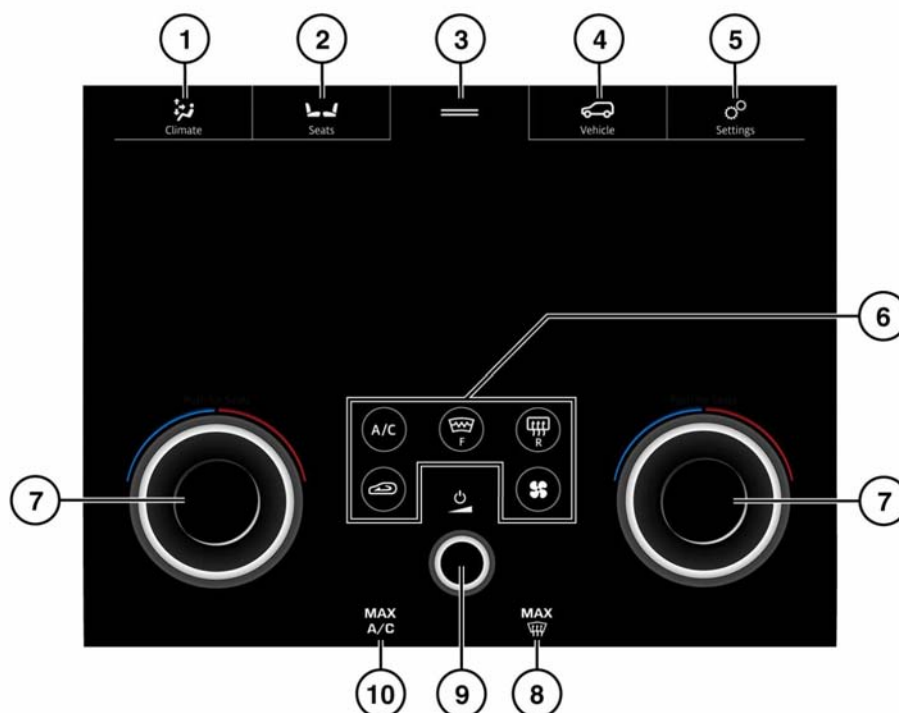


## Touchscreen home

For more detailed information, touch the center of the feature to shortcut to the main display.

## Touchscreen home

### LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS



E213305

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

#### **NOTICE**

Always run the engine during prolonged use of the touchscreen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery, and prevent the engine from starting.

#### **NOTICE**

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the touchscreen.

**Note:** A gloved hand may not operate the touchscreen. Remove glove(s) before selecting any touchscreen features.

1. **Climate** soft key: Touch to select the **FRONT CLIMATE** control screen. See **296, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.
2. **Seats** soft key: Touch to select the **SEATS** screen. See **302, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.



## Touchscreen home

3. **Widget bars:** Touch and swipe down widget bars to activate media and phone widget options on the lower touchscreen. Swipe widget bars up to close these options. On activation of the media and phone widget options, swipe the lower touchscreen left or right to switch between the media and phone screens.
4. **Vehicle** soft key: Touch to select the driving programs screen.
5. **Settings** soft key: Touch to select the **Lower screen display** settings. See **259, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS**.
6. **Climate controls:** Further information on climate controls can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **296, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.
7. **Cabin, seat temperature and seat massage rotary controls:** Further information on the cabin, seat temperature and massage rotary controls can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **296, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL, 305, HEATED SEATS, 306, CLIMATE SEATS** and **306, SEAT MASSAGE**.
8. **Windshield maximum defrost** icon: Further information on the windshield maximum defrost operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **296, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.
9. **Power and volume control:**
  - Press to switch the media system on and off.

**Note:** The media system operates with the ignition on or off, but always switches off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the system on again, if required.

- Rotate to adjust the volume level. The volume level is displayed on the touchscreen.

**Note:** If the volume is turned to zero while a media source is playing, the media pauses play. Play resumes when a greater volume is selected.

10. **MAX A/C** icon: Further information on the Max A/C operation can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **296, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.

## Touchscreen home

### MY HOME SCREEN



E200854

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**Note:** The screen shown is in edit mode.

From the **HOME** screen, swipe the touchscreen to the right, to access the **MY HOME** screen. See **248, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

To view all of the **MY HOME** screens, continue to swipe to the right. To return to the **HOME** screen swipe to the left.

The **MY HOME** screen enables the user to display and arrange widgets and shortcuts to applications.

1. **MY HOME** screen: Multiple screens are available.

2. Personalized **MY HOME** screen name: Touch to edit.
3. Widgets and shortcuts: The widgets and shortcuts are available in different sizes and can be moved to different locations.

### TOUCH SCREEN STATUS ICONS

The icons displayed at the top of the screen provide information about the status of the vehicle feature or application.



Phone signal strength indicator.



Phone battery level indicator.



Status of the heated and/or climate seats.



Wi-Fi signal.

## Touchscreen home



Connecting.



Phone set to divert incoming calls.



Network connection status.



No mobile network connection.

### EDITING SHORTCUTS, WIDGETS AND SCREENS

Adding a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Touch any of the **+** symbols on the screen and select from the available categories in the **CONTENT LIBRARY**. Scroll through the gallery of widgets using the direction arrows, or swipe the screen. Touch to select a widget. The widget is then displayed on the **MY HOME** screen.

Moving a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Drag the widget to a new location. To move the widget to another **MY HOME** screen, drag it to the side of the screen.

Resizing a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. When the widget has been selected, moved to a new location, or newly created, a resize toggle is displayed. Touch the toggle to resize the widget.

Delete a widget: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Drag the widget to the delete bar.

Edit a personalized screen name: Touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Touch the screen name and enter text using the keyboard. Touch **OK** to complete.

Moving a screen: Touch the **home** icon to display the **PREVIEW** screen for the **HOME**, **MY HOME** and **EXTRA FEATURES** screens. Touch the preview to display the chosen screen. Touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch and drag the screen preview to the required position.

Adding a screen: While in the **PREVIEW** screen, touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch the **+** symbol to create a new **MY HOME** screen. When adding or moving a widget, it can be dragged to the left side of the screen to create a new **MY HOME** screen.

**Note:** A maximum of four **MY HOME** screens can be added.

Deleting a screen: While in the **PREVIEW** screen, touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch and hold the chosen **MY HOME** screen, and drag it to the delete bar and release.

### TOUCH SCREEN USE

#### NOTICE

*Do not use excessive pressure when selecting items on the touchscreen.*

Definitions for the various button taps and touchscreen gestures used in this handbook:

- Touch: Briefly touch the screen's surface with a fingertip.
- Touch and hold: Touch the screen's surface for an extended period of time.

## Touchscreen home

- **Swipe:** Move a fingertip over the screen's surface in a fast linear movement.
- **Drag:** Touch an object and move it with a fingertip over the screen's surface, without losing contact.
- **Pinch:** Spread two fingers apart on a map or image to zoom in. Pinch two fingers together on a map or image to zoom out.

### TOUCH SCREEN CARE

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not use abrasive cleaners on the touchscreen. For approved cleaning products, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.*

Follow the cleaning instructions. See **392, CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS**.



## Touchscreen extra features

### EXTRA FEATURES

#### WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Select the **EXTRA FEATURES** screens from the **TOUCHSCREEN HOME MENU**. See **248, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

The **EXTRA FEATURES** menu screens give options for enabling, disabling, or adjusting the settings of available features. Touch the extra feature to launch the required application or settings screen:

- **Eco Data:** The ECO data system is designed to provide vehicle data and driving tips to help the driver maximize fuel economy. Real-time ECO data can be viewed in the instrument panel.
- **Cameras.**
- **InControl Apps.**
- **Live.**
- **Valet Mode.**
- **Contacts.**
- **Voice.**
- **Bluetooth.**
- **Rear Media.**
- **Web Browser.**
- **Vehicle Departures.**
- **Ambient Lighting.**
- **Vehicle Dimensions.**
- **Dynamic-i.**
- **4x4i.**
- **Deployable Tow Bar.**
- **Deployable Side Steps.**

- **My EV.**

**Note:** The number of extra features varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.

### SELECTING VALET MODE

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the loadspace and glovebox. Valet mode also prevents operation of the touchscreen, to prevent access to phone numbers or navigation addresses. Only essential driver assist features are available, such as cameras, parking aid, etc.

Valet mode can be activated via the **Master PIN**. Alternatively, use a temporary PIN, if the master PIN is unknown, to allow someone other than the owner to set valet mode.

When set with the master PIN, only the master PIN can unlock valet mode. When set with a temporary PIN, the temporary PIN or the master PIN unlocks valet mode.

To select valet mode:

1. Touch **Valet Mode** in the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.
2. Enter the **Master PIN** or a memorable four digit temporary PIN. When a temporary PIN is used, it has to be entered a second time to confirm the PIN. To cancel the PIN, touch the **return** icon. If the confirmation PIN is incorrectly entered, then a prompt to re-enter the PIN is displayed. See **258, GENERAL SETTINGS**.
3. The **VALET MODE** screen is displayed to indicate that a PIN has been accepted and valet mode is active.



## Touchscreen extra features

The loadspace and glovebox are now securely locked in valet mode and the **Valet Mode On** screen is displayed.

### DESELECTING VALET MODE

To deselect valet mode:

1. When re-entering the vehicle, touch the touchscreen.
2. Enter the **Master PIN**, or temporary PIN, if used to set the valet mode, and touch **OK**.

**Home screen** is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted and valet mode has been deactivated.

- The loadspace and glovebox are returned to the previously set security requirement.
- The touchscreen is enabled.

**Note:** *If the master PIN is forgotten, valet mode can only be deactivated by a retailer/authorized repairer.*



## Touchscreen settings

### GENERAL SETTINGS

Accessing the touchscreen settings allows the adjustment of general system settings.

Touch the **settings** icon from any screen. Touch **All Settings**. Touch **General**.

The **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu is divided into categories:

- **Time and Date.**
- **Display.**
- **Screensaver.**

**Note:** Screensaver vehicle images may not be representative of the actual vehicle.

- **Master PIN.**

**Note:** The default master PIN is **1926**. Change the master PIN to a personal PIN as soon as possible.

- **Legal information.**
- **Data Collection** (only when set).

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

### SYSTEM SETTINGS

Touch the **settings** icon from the **HOME** screen, followed by **All Settings** and then **Features**.

The **FEATURES** settings menu is divided into categories.

- **Home.**
- **Navigation.**
- **Media.**
- **Phone.**
- **Connectivity.**
- **InControl Apps.**
- **Live.**
- **Low Traction Launch**
- **Voice.**

- **Bluetooth.**

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

**Note:** The list varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.

### TOUCH SCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS

#### **WARNING**

The touchscreen display has an anti-trap protection fitted. Before stowing or adjusting the touchscreen display, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position which could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, serious injury could occur.

#### **WARNING**

Closing the touchscreen display onto any part of the body can result in serious injury.

The tilt angle of the touchscreen is able to be adjusted.

Touch the **settings** icon from the **HOME** screen, followed by **Upper display**.

The **UPPER DISPLAY** settings menu is divided into categories.

- **Factory default:** Touch to return the screen to factory default mode.
- **Last used:** Touch to store the screen in a specific position. On re-entry to the vehicle, the last used position is remembered and restored.
- **Stow screen:** Touch to return the screen to the stowed position. The screen will automatically revert to the stowed position when the ignition is switched off.

## Touchscreen settings

- **Deploy to default:** Touch to adjust the screen angle to the full tilt position.

The tilt angle of the screen can also be adjusted by touching the **+** or **-** symbols on the screen.

### LOWER TOUCH SCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS

Touch the **settings** icon on the lower touchscreen to access the available features menu. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

The lower touchscreen display settings menu is divided into three features. Touch the required feature to launch the settings screen:

- Display.
- Climate.
- Seats.

The lower touchscreen start-up display can be programmed via the **Start up screen**. Touch the right arrow or the displayed feature, after the **Start up screen** statement, to access the menu features.

Touch one of the following menu features, to store and open, when the lower touchscreen starts up:

- Climate.
- Seats.
- Vehicle.
- Phone.
- Media.
- Last used: Select to return to the last used feature on screen start up.
- No feature: Select to display a blank screen on screen start up.

### CUSTOMIZABLE BUTTON SETTINGS

To customize a favorite feature:

1. Touch the **settings** icon. See **248, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.
2. Touch **All settings**.
3. Touch **Features**.
4. Touch **Favorite button**.

Two customizable steering wheel button options are available to program on the **FAVORITE BUTTON** screen:

- Short press.
- Long press.

To replace a stored feature, touching the feature name of the respective button options opens the **CONTENT LIBRARY** screen.

Touch one of the following menu features to store and replace the present displayed customized button option:

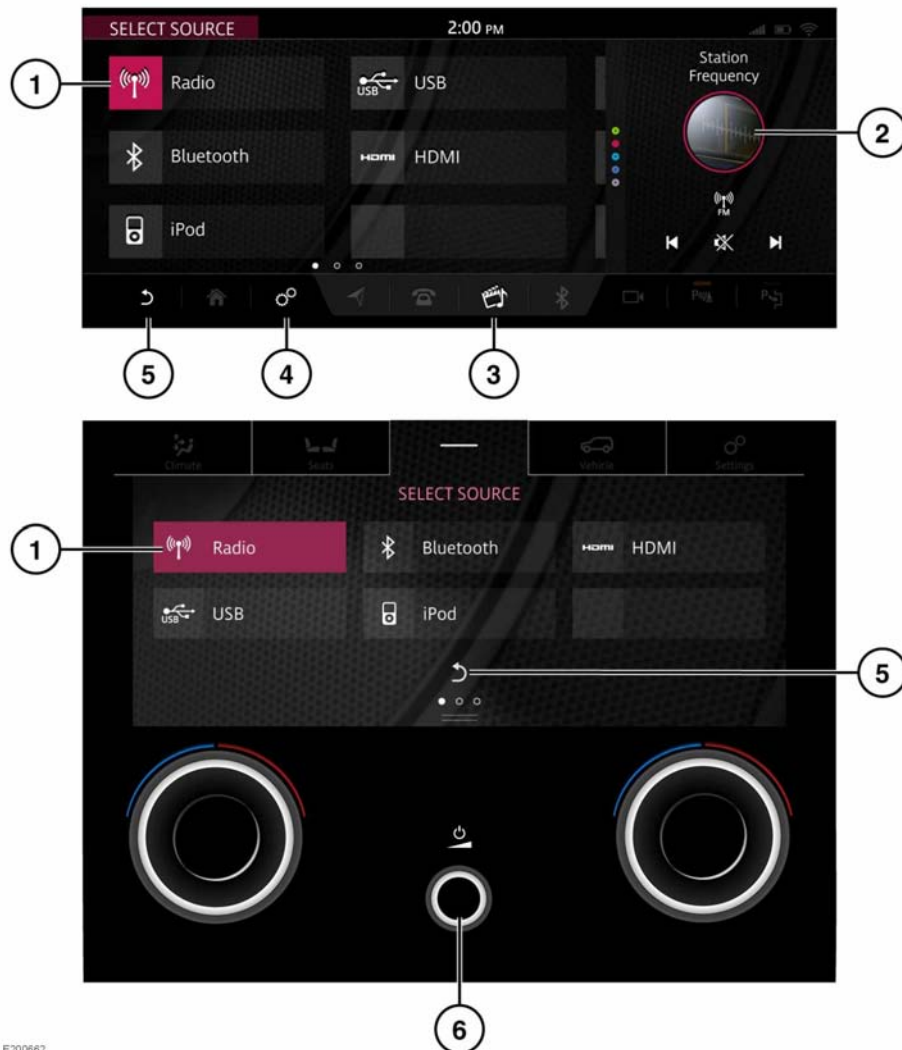
- **Cancel guidance.**
- **Next source.**
- **Mute** speaker.
- **Play/pause.**
- **Voicemail.**
- **Mute** microphone.
- **Hold.**
- **Auto reject.**
- **Upper screen off.**
- **Traffic alerts.**

Touch the touchscreen home menu **return** icon after feature storage. See **248, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

A corresponding short press or long press on the steering wheel favorite button operates the stored feature. See **263, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**.

## Media

### MEDIA CONTROLS



E200662

## Media

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

Duplicated icons and source features can be operated from the lower touchscreen when the media controls widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touchscreen can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Media source:** Touch to select the media source.
2. **Side panel:** Displays the last used feature.
3. **Media icon:** Touch to select the media system. If the media system is already switched on, touch to select the media source.
4. **Settings icon:** Select **Audio Settings**, or specific media settings, via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **263, AUDIO SETTINGS**.
5. **Return icon:** Touch to return to a higher menu level.
6. **Power and volume control:**
  - Press to switch the media system on or off.

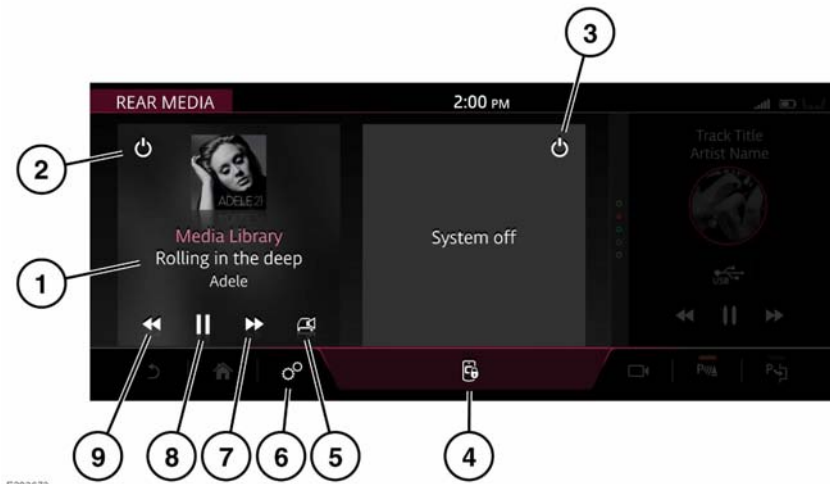
**Note:** The media system operates with the ignition switched on or off, but always switches off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the media system on again, if required.

- Rotate to adjust the volume level (displayed on the touchscreen).

**Note:** If the volume is turned to zero while a media source is playing, the media pauses play. Play resumes when a greater volume is selected.

## Media

### REAR MEDIA CONTROL FROM THE TOUCH SCREEN



E203673

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Touch **Rear Media** on the media screen, to select the **REAR MEDIA** control screen.

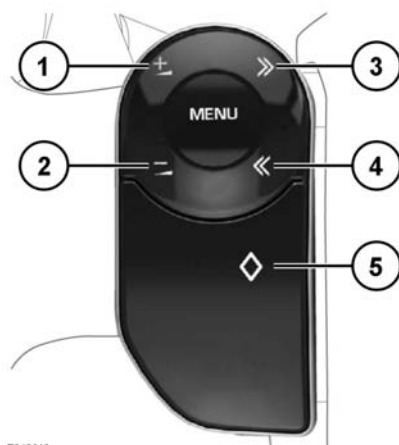
1. **Rear media source:** Touch the media screen, followed by **Source**, to select from the **SELECT REAR SOURCE** screen.
2. **Power icon:** Touch to switch the left-side rear screen on and off.
3. **Power icon:** Touch to switch the right-side rear screen on and off.
4. **Remote control lock icon:** Touch to lock or unlock the remote control.

5. **Cabin audio icon:** Touch to listen to the selected media via the cabin's audio.

6. **Settings icon:** Touch to access the **Rear Media Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
7. **Forward or skip:** Touch to forward or skip the selected screen.
8. **Pause or play:** Touch to pause playback. Touch again to resume playback (if applicable to the source selected).
9. **Rewind or skip:** Touch to rewind or return to the previous screen.

**Note:** When the main **REAR MEDIA** control screen is displayed on the touchscreen, the remote control is locked out.

## AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



E212948

**Note:** Customization of the audio steering wheel controls can only be performed if the vehicle is stationary and valet mode is exited.

**Note:** If valet mode has been selected, no customized audio steering wheel selections are available.

**Note:** When a customized audio steering wheel function is selected, a notification is displayed in the instrument panel and on the touchscreen.

**Note:** The favorites icon is set to a factory default setting until a customized function has been stored.

1. Volume up: Press to increase the volume for any source.
2. Volume down: Press to decrease the volume for any source.
3. Seek up:  
Press and release:
  - To select the next radio favorite.

- To select the next track on the chosen media library or the connected portable media source.
  - When the phone is in use, press to scroll up lists of calls or contact entries.
  - To select the next video or DVD chapter.
  - To seek up the frequency to the next radio station.
4. Seek down:  
Press and release:
    - To select the previous radio favorite.
    - To select the previous track, or the start of the current track, on the chosen media library or the connected portable media source.
    - When the phone is in use, press to scroll down lists of calls or contact entries.
    - To select the previous video or DVD chapter.
    - To seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
  5. **Favorites** button:
    - Press to operate the stored steering wheel button favorites. See **259, CUSTOMIZABLE BUTTON SETTINGS**.

## AUDIO SETTINGS

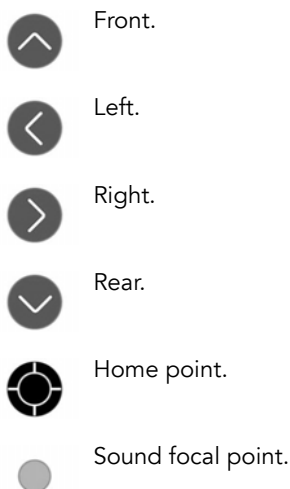
To view, touch the **Settings** icon from any screen and then **Audio Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

To adjust the sound settings:

## Media

- Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the **Bass**, **Treble**, or **Subwoofer** levels. Alternatively, touch the slider bar and drag, or touch anywhere on the bar and release.

To adjust the balance and fade settings:



Touch the arrows to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point and drag it to the required position, or touch anywhere on the vehicle graphic, and release. To return to the default setting, touch the home point.

If **Meridian Surround** or **Meridian Reference** is available, adjust the surround sound settings by touching either **Meridian**, **Dolby Pro Logic IIx**, or **DTS Neo:6** to select **Surround Sound**. Select **Stereo** to switch **Surround Sound** off.

**Note:** Surround sound options are not available for certain sources where the surround sound mode is set automatically.

### LOADING DISCS

Make sure the following cautions have been read and fully understood before using the CD/DVD disc drive. Failure to observe these cautions could result in mechanism errors and permanent damage to the device.

#### **NOTICE**

*To prevent CD mechanism damage, do not insert any object other than a CD or DVD into the disc slot. Objects, such as coins, tickets, and cards, cause mechanism errors and permanent damage to the device.*

*Do not force the disc into the slot.*

*Do not use irregular shaped CDs or DVDs, or those with a scratch protection film or self-adhesive label attached.*

*Do not use mini-sized CDs, even with an adaptor.*

*Recordable (CD-R) discs and re-writable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.*

*Recordable (DVD-R or DVD+R) discs may not function correctly.*

*Dual-format and dual-sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format) are thicker than normal CDs and so playback cannot be guaranteed and jamming may occur.*

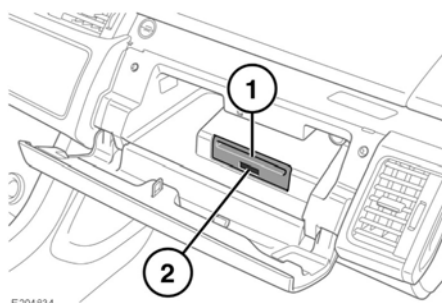
**Note:** Only use an approved CD cleaning kit.

**Note:** Only use high quality 4.7 inches (12 cm) circular discs.

The CD/DVD drive is located in the glovebox.



## Media



1. **CD/DVD loading slot:** The player accommodates one disc at a time. Insert a disc into the loading slot until a resistance is felt. The player's mechanism completes the loading.
2. **Eject button:** Press to eject the CD/DVD.



When a CD is loaded, the ripping media option is available. Select the **CD ripping** icon to store the CD content to the vehicle's internal memory. Notification is displayed when ripping of the CD is complete.

1. **Off:** Touch to switch the system off.
2. **Normal:** Touch to select the normal volume level.
3. **High:** Touch to select the high volume level.

When active, front passenger voices are reproduced through the rear speakers and rear passengers voices are reproduced through the front speakers. The system is disabled when at a standstill and progressively increases with vehicle speed and background noise.

**Note:** The system is disabled when at a standstill, during phone calls, or at higher volumes, e.g., when loud music is playing.

## CONVERSATION ASSIST

Conversation assist uses the vehicle's sound system and the front and rear microphones to enhance the conversation over the vehicle's interior noise.

The conversation assist feature controls are located in the **VOLUME SETTINGS** screen.

Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Features**. Select **Media**. Select **Volume Settings** to manage the conversation assist feature controls. See **258, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Conversation assist offers three options:



## Media

### GRACENOTE® END USER LICENSING AGREEMENT

#### Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. **YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote **Privacy Policy** for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from the Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2013. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

## LICENSING

E180920



E135227



E145346



E132539



Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Dolby Digital, Dolby Audio, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

E132540



## Media



E132541



E132542

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent number's: 5451942, 5956674, 5974380, 5978762, 6487535 and other U.S. and worldwide patents issued and pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, and DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved. DTS, the Symbol, DTS and the Symbol together, and DTS Neo:X are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



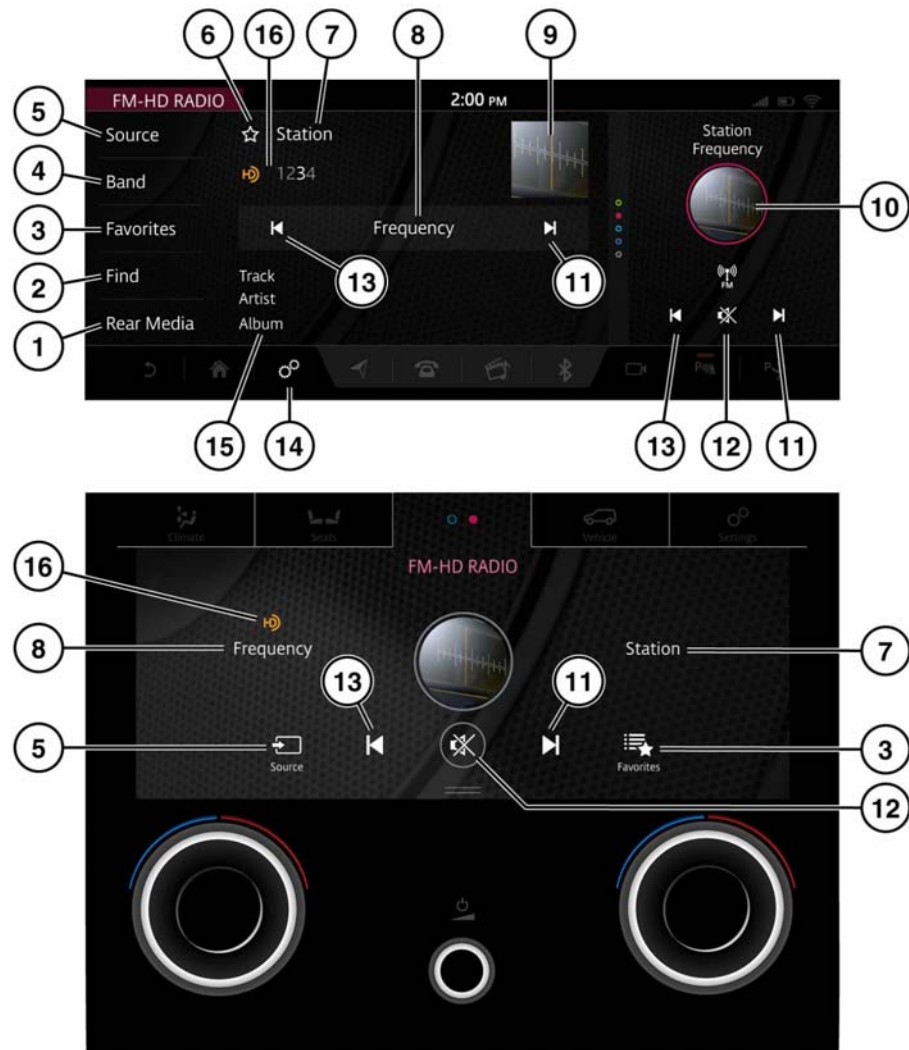
E132544

Music and video recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit: [www.gracenote.com](http://www.gracenote.com).

CD, DVD, Blu-ray Disc, and music and video-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDb, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

## AM/FM radio

### AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS



E200663



## AM/FM radio

### **WARNING**

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

### **WARNING**

**Sustained exposure to high sound levels, in excess of 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

From the **SELECT SOURCE** screen, select the media source. See **260, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touchscreen when the AM or FM radio widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touchscreen can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Rear Media:** Touch for rear media options.
2. **Find:** Touch to display options for finding a required station, frequency, or genre.
  - **STATION LIST:** Touch to display a list of available stations on the selected waveband.
  - **FREQUENCY INPUT:** Touch to display the keypad. Enter the required frequency.
  - **GENRE:** Touch to display a list of available genres. Select the required genre from the list.

3. **Favorites:** Touch to display a single list of **AM** and **FM**, favorite stations. Touch the **favorites** icon to remove the selected station from the favorites list. Touch the station's frequency or name to select that station and play it. To rearrange the order of the list, touch the **edit** icon<sup>1</sup>. Drag and drop selected items to the desired position. Touch **OK** to confirm.
4. **Band:** Touch to view and select a radio band: **AM** or **FM**. The radio tunes to the last used station on that radio band.
5. **Source:** Touch to display all media sources.
6. **Favorites icon:** Touch to add stations to, or delete from, the favorites list. The icon highlights when the tuned station is set as a favorite.
7. Station information display.
8. Frequency of the current station: Touch the frequency to access the **FREQUENCY INPUT** keypad. Enter the required frequency.

**Note:** The keypad only allows the input of possible frequencies valid for the vehicle's market.
9. Artist or station image: Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the information display.

**Note:** The image is only displayed if a HD radio image is being received. If unavailable, a generic image is displayed.
10. **AM or FM radio shortcut:** Touch to view the **AM** or **FM RADIO** screen. Swipe up or down to access other features.
11. **Seek up:**

## AM/FM radio

- Touch, or swipe the touchscreen to the left, to seek up to the next radio station.
- Touch and hold to seek up to the next radio station.

**12. Mute icon:** Touch to mute the volume.

**13. Seek down:**

- Touch, or swipe the touchscreen to the right, to seek down to the previous radio station.
- Touch and hold to seek down to the previous radio station.

**14. Settings icon:** Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **AM/FM Settings**. Touch to activate or deactivate the following features: **HD**, **Artist Experience**, **RBDS**, and **Station List Order**. See **271, RADIO BROADCAST DATA SYSTEM (RBDS)**.

**15. Broadcasting station information display:** Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the information display.

**16. HD radio icon:** Indicates if HD radio is available on the current frequency. Indicates the number of available secondary services on the current frequency, with the currently tuned to service being highlighted.



**edit icon<sup>1</sup>.**

### RADIO BROADCAST DATA SYSTEM (RBDS)

The radio is equipped with a Radio Broadcast Data System (RBDS) which enables the media system to receive extra information with normal FM radio signals.

**Note:** Not all FM radio stations broadcast RBDS information.

Touch the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **AM/FM Settings** to view or alter the **RBDS** settings.

- **RBDS station name display:** The station name is only displayed if it is available from the broadcaster, or if HD radio is unavailable due to a loss of reception.
- **RBDS enables stations to be categorized by program type:** rock music, current affairs, news, etc. A list of genres is then available to view. Touch **Find**, followed by the **GENRE**.

## HD radio™

### HD RADIO™ CONTROLS

#### WARNING

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

#### WARNING

**In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.**

HD radio™ systems provide digital radio broadcasts on AM/FM radio, alongside the analog radio signals. HD radio technology is capable of providing improved audio quality, compared with the analog broadcast.

HD radio technology operates in a very similar way to the standard AM/FM system. Further information on storing stations, waveband selection, etc., can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **269, AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS**.

When an HD radio signal is detected and received, the tuner gradually blends automatically between the analog and the digital audio.

Areas of poor reception due to signal masking and transmitter strengths can affect the HD radio broadcasts. The HD radio system may frequently switch between the HD radio primary signal and the corresponding analog broadcast. If tuned to a multicast service, the audio may mute more frequently.

**Note:** During this process, a change in volume levels may be experienced. The volume matching between the analog and digital signal is dependent upon the broadcaster.

**Note:** If poor reception and auto switching becomes unacceptable. It is recommended that HD is switched off or the radio is tuned to an HD radio service with better coverage.

The HD radio digital signal is transmitted at the same frequency as the analog signal and can also provide extra multicast services, where available.

To switch the **HD radio** feature on and off: Select **Radio Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, followed by **ON** or **OFF**.

HD radio technology is manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corp. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD Radio logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

The HD logo and numbers underneath the "Artist Experience Image" denote the availability of HD and which SPS, if any, is selected.

#### Tuning to Multicast services



Multicast services (extra supplemental program services) can be received on HD radio™ channel broadcasts.

The availability is dependent upon the channel broadcaster.

To access any available multicast services, use the seek buttons on the touchscreen. The selected service, **HD2**, **HD3** and **HD4**, is displayed.

**Note:** If the last of the multicast stations is passed when using the seek arrows, the next analog station is selected.



**HD radio™**

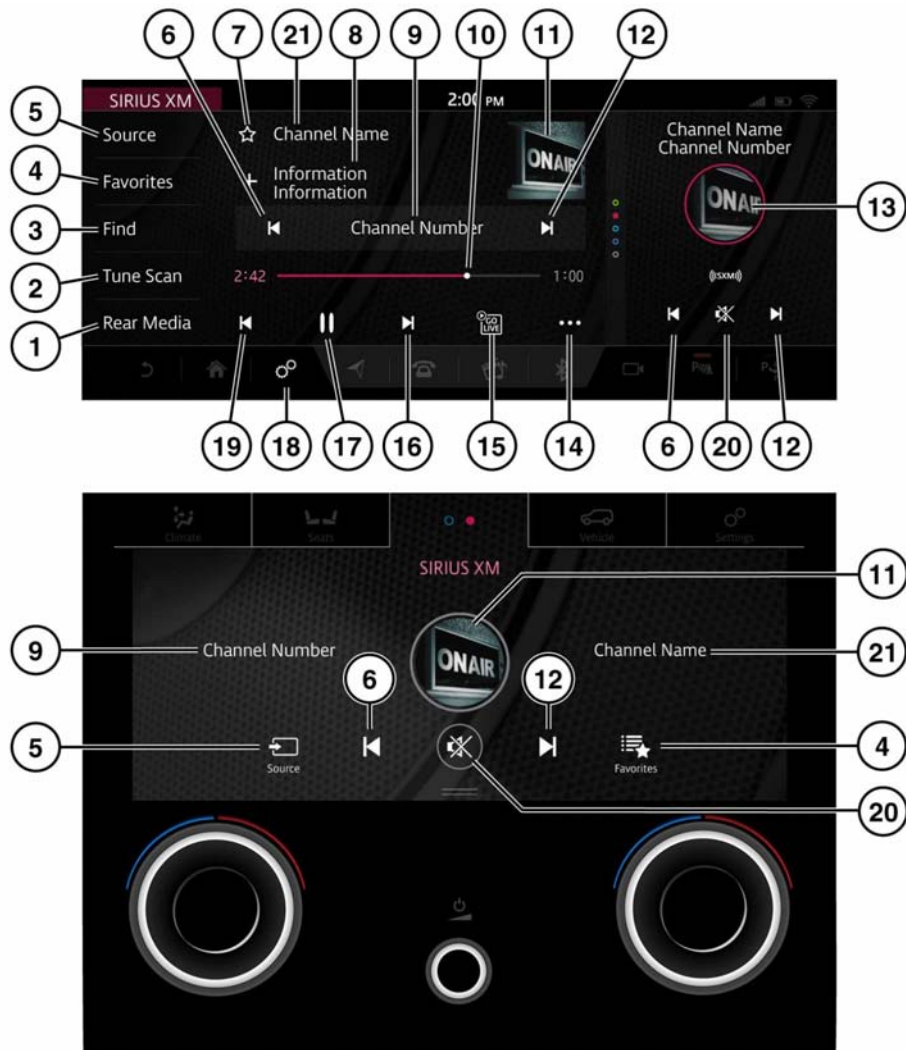
Multicast channels can be stored as favorites and used as normal. When recalling multicast favorites, a short delay may be experienced, during which the audio is muted.

If the signal is lost when listening to a multicast service, the audio is muted.



## Satellite radio

### SATELLITE RADIO CONTROLS



E200781

## Satellite radio

### **WARNING**

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

### **WARNING**

Sustained exposure to high sound levels, in excess of 85 decibels, can damage hearing.

From the **SELECT SOURCE** screen, select the media source. See **260, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touchscreen when the SiriusXM radio widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touchscreen can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Rear Media:** Touch for rear media options.
2. **Tune Scan:** Touch the **review back** or **review forward** icons to skip songs. Each song plays for 5 seconds until it skips to the next song. Touch **Play** to tune to the channel. Touch the **return** icon to abort tune scan

**Note:** Music channels must be added as a Smart Favorite™. \* See Smart Favorite™ icon below.

**Note:** The **Tune Scan** feature is not available immediately after the system is initialized.

3. **Find:** Touch to display various find options:

- **All Channels List:** Touch to display a list of available channels. The list can also be viewed by carousel or grid view. Touch the touchscreen, to tune to the desired channel.
- **Channel Input:** Touch to enter the number of a known channel, using the numeric keypad that displays. Select **OK** to tune to the entered channel.
- **Genre:** Touch to display a list of available genres. Select the required genre from the list.
- **Find:** Touch to view **Search SiriusXM™** or the **Current Channel's Playlist**.

4. **Favorites:** Touch to display a list of favorite channels. Favorite channels can be made into smart favorite channels by selecting the **smart favorite** icon on the right side of the relevant channel within the favorites list. There can be a maximum of six smart favorite channels. They are automatically displayed in the smart favorite shortcut list and accessed through the **more** icon (14). The content for all six smart favorites are buffered simultaneously, the maximum storage is one hour per channel, dependent on the program content. When a smart favorite is selected, the station playlist displays the buffered content for that channel. \* See Smart Favorite™ icon below.
5. **Source:** Touch to select the media source list.
6. **Seek down:** Touch, or swipe the touchscreen to the right, to find the next available channel.



## Satellite radio

7. **Favorites** icon: Touch to add a channel to the list of favorites.
8. **Broadcasting channel display**: Touch the **+** icon to add the artist, song or team name to **My Artist**, **My Song**, or **My Team**.  
When a subscribed channel is broadcasting a memory stored song, artist or team news, a pop-up is displayed. The pop-up gives the option to tune to that channel.  
**Note:** If the artist, song or team ID are not available from SiriusXM™, the **+** icon is disabled.  
**Note:** From the SiriusXM™ settings, artist seek, song seek or game seek, must be turned on. Enabling these modes allows for an artist, song or team ID to be added to the memory respectively.
9. **Channel number**: Touch to view the **CHANNEL INPUT** keypad. Enter the channel using the numeric keypad. Press **OK** to confirm, or touch outside of the pop-up to close and return.  
**Note:** The keypad only allows the input of valid channel numbers.
10. **Interactive time progress bar**: Tap or drag forward to advance the current track.
11. **Artist or channel image**: Touch to view further information. Touch again to close the further information display.  
**Note:** If unavailable, a generic image is displayed.
12. **Seek up**: Touch, or swipe the touchscreen to the left, to find the next available channel.
13. **SiriusXM™ shortcut**: Touch to view the **SiriusXM™** screen.
14. **More** icon: Touch to access more options:
  - **Favorites Quick Access**: Select to access menu shortcuts. Touch **Replay Controls** to allow live audio to be paused, rewound, and replayed.
  - **Playlist**: (channel name) Select to play a listed song.
  - **Traffic Jump**: Select to hear traffic and weather news updates for the selected city. An information banner appears.  
If no city is selected, choose from the list of available cities.
15. **GO LIVE**: Press for a live broadcast of the current channel.
16. **Skip or scan forward**:
  - Touch and release to skip forward to the next track.
  - Touch and hold to scan forward through the current track. Playback is resumed when released.
17. **Pause or play**: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.
18. **Settings** icon: Select **SiriusXM™ Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu:
  - **Parental lock**: Select individual channels or entire categories, **Lock all**, from the list. Locked channels or categories cannot be selected without first entering the correct PIN.  
A four digit PIN needs to be entered to access the parental lock area. The default PIN is "1926". Select **Edit PIN** to change the PIN.
  - **Artist, Song or Game Seek**.

## Satellite radio

- **Tune Start:** Select **On** or **Off**.
- **Traffic Jump:** Select from the list of available cities.
- **List Format:** Select **List**, **Carousel**, or **Grid**.

**Note:** When tuning to a smart favorite music channel, if **Tune Start** is turned **On**, the system tunes to the start of the current playing song.

19. Skip or scan backward:

- Touch and release to skip backward to the previous track.
- Touch and hold to scan backward through the current track. Playback is resumed when released.

20. **Mute** icon: Touch to mute the volume.

21. Channel name: Displays the current selected channel.

**Note:** If a selected favorite channel is unsubscribed or has become unsubscribed, the SiriusXM™ phone number and a message is displayed. See 277, **SUBSCRIPTION SETUP**.



\*Smart Favorite™ icon

### SUBSCRIPTION SETUP

A complimentary trial period is available with the vehicle if satellite radio is equipped. Channel 1 is the available **SiriusXM™** preview channel. Subscription to **SiriusXM** is required, once the trial period has ended.

To setup a subscription from inside the vehicle, call **SiriusXM** using the displayed number. Select channel 0 to display the **SiriusXM** ID number. Details of a valid payment card are also required to complete the subscription process.

### SATELLITE RADIO RECEPTION

Satellite radio reception is strongest when there are clear skies.

In urban areas, terrestrial transmitters are used to enhance the coverage.



## Portable media

### PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub, located in the center console's cubby box. Rear seat passengers can connect at the rear of the center console. Optical discs can be inserted into the CD/DVD drive located, in the glovebox.

Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices, e.g., a memory stick. Devices must use FAT or FAT32.

**Note:** External hard drives are not recommended for use. Doing so could reduce the life of the device.

**Note:** It is recommended that the USB mass storage device does not exceed 128GB. USB mass storage devices exceeding the maximum recommendation could cause a malfunction of the infotainment system.

**Note:** Depending on the memory size of the USB mass storage device, a time delay may be evident before the stored files can be accessed.

- Optical media: Album CDs or DVDs.
- iPod: iPad, iPod Touch, iPod Mini, iPhone, iPod Nano and iPod Classic Gen4, Gen5, Gen6 are supported. Full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed. iPod Classic Gen1, Gen2, Gen3, and iPod Shuffle are not supported.

**Note:** Album artwork displays if the iPod device is fully supported. Some Generation level devices cannot recognize or support the album artwork.

- Media devices that support HDMI or MHL.

If connecting an iPod, mass storage, or **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device, use the touchscreen to operate and search the device.

#### **NOTICE**

*Please disconnect the iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.*

**Note:** The media system plays MP3, WMA, AIFF, M4A, FLAC, AAC, and ALAC files. Other formats are available.

**Note:** If a software update has been activated on the connected portable media device, it will be necessary to restart the media device to make sure it is recognized by the media system.

To maximize playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilize a minimum bit rate of 192 kb/s. A higher bit rate is strongly recommended.

**Note:** iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries.

**Note:** Some MP3 players have a file system that is not supported by the system. To use an MP3 player, set it to **USB Removable Device** or **Mass Storage Device** mode.

#### **Bluetooth® connections**

Information on pairing and connecting a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **284, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER**.

## Portable media

Further information on **Bluetooth** wireless technology can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **335, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

For a list of compatible **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices, please refer to the Land Rover website at:  
**www.landrover.com**.

The **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the device's software version and battery condition. Devices are warranted by the device's manufacturer, not the vehicle manufacturer.

**Note:** *Dependent on the device being connected, certain functions, e.g., **Bluetooth** pairing, may not be compatible.*

### CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE

#### ⚠ WARNING

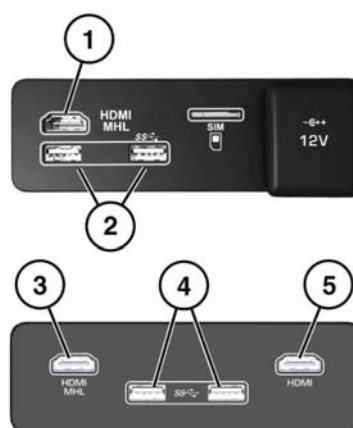
Do not adjust the media device or allow the device to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure that any media devices are stored securely while the vehicle is in motion. Any loose objects are potential hazards during sudden maneuvers, emergency braking situations or accidents.

#### NOTICE

Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device before it is connected to the media system. Make sure that the device is suitable. Comply with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's media system or the media device.



E188735

Connect the device into the appropriate socket:

1. Front HDMI/MHL socket.
2. Front USB sockets.
3. Rear media HDMI socket.
4. Rear media USB sockets.
5. Rear media HDMI/MHL socket.

Front sockets are located in the center console's cubby box. Rear media sockets are located at the rear of the center console.

## Portable media

**Note:** Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.

**Note:** High quality cables are recommended to be used with Apple devices, as this enhances the operation.

**Note:** A USB socket cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the media unit.

**Note:** Devices connected to the USB sockets are charged. Devices that are fully discharged do not play. Higher-rated devices that require more than 7.5W to charge may not display an indicator when charging. These devices are charged without the indicator being displayed.

**Note:** HDMI devices are not charged.

**Note:** Apple devices should be updated to the latest iOS version, otherwise, full support cannot be guaranteed.

**Note:** Voice command is only available for newer Apple devices, i.e., devices that are connected to the system via a lightning connector.

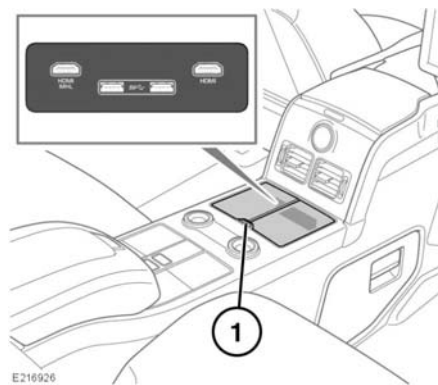
**Note:** Voice command will not operate devices connected to the system via **Bluetooth®**.

**Note:** Options, such as **Repeat** and **Shuffle**, relate to the device currently playing. The options do not apply to any subsequent device. Previous **Repeat** and **Shuffle** selections are deactivated when a new queue has been created.

**Note:** The available sockets vary, according to vehicle specification.

The SuperSpeed USB Trident Logo is a registered trademark of USB Implementer Forum, Inc.

### SV Autobiography only



Rear portable media sockets are located in the storage compartment, as illustrated. Press the button (1) to access the sockets.

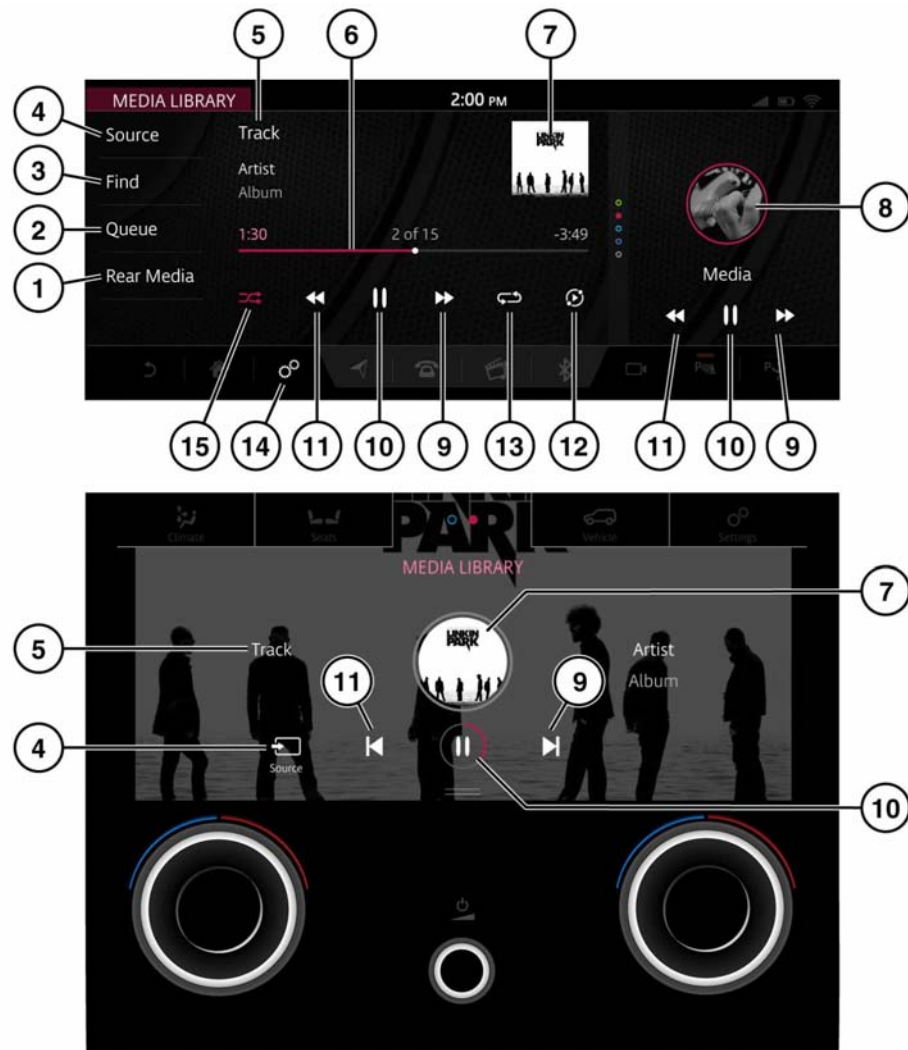


E180361



## Portable media

### PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



E200659



## Portable media

### **WARNING**

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

### **WARNING**

**Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

Portable media includes **Media Library** (internal storage), iPods, iPads, iPhones, USB mass storage, HDMI/MHL and **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices.

Select the portable media device from the **SELECT SOURCE** screen. See **260, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touchscreen when the media device widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touchscreen can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Rear Media:** Touch for rear media options.
2. **Queue:** Opens the current queue of tracks selected from the portable media devices when supported. To add a track, album, artist, or genre to the queue, touch and hold the respective item at any time. A pop-up list gives further instructions.

**Note:** Selecting a track, album, artist, or genre not currently in the queue to play causes the current queue to be erased.

3. **Find:** Select the **artist**, **album**, or **song** icon to display results in alphabetical order. Select the **more like this** icon (12) to display a list of further available options: **Genres**, **Videos**, **Folder Browse**, etc.

- Select **Folder Browse** to view the contents of the connected device, which are displayed as dictated by the file structure.
- Select a file to start playback. Select a folder or sub-folder to view the contents.
- To return to the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen, touch the **return** icon.

4. **Source:** Displays all media sources. The list of media devices is dynamically populated, based on whether the devices are connected.

**Note:** Sound quality and volume levels available from connected media devices may vary widely.

5. **Track information display:** Touch the displayed text to view a list of the tracks in album. Touch again to return to the current track information display.

**Note:** Only connected devices that support ID3 tags have the information displayed. The instrument panel also displays track information.

6. **Interactive time progress bar:** Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current track.
7. **Album image display:** Touch to view the list of tracks on the album, the queue list, or information for the current track. Touch again to revert back to the previous view, or press the **return** icon.

## Portable media

**Note:** Album artwork is displayed if the media is recognized by **Gracenote®**. If the album artwork is not recognized, a generic image is displayed.

8. **Media library shortcut:** Touch to view the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen. Swipe up or down to access other features.
9. **Skip or scan forward:**
  - Touch and release to skip forward to the next track.
  - Touch and hold to scan forward through the current track. Playback resumes, when released.
  - Swipe the touchscreen to the left to skip to the next track.
10. **Pause or play:** Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.
11. **Skip or scan backward:**
  - Touch and release to skip back to the previous track.
  - Touch and hold to scan backward through the current track. Playback resumes, when released.
  - Swipe the touchscreen to the right to skip to the previous track.
12. **More like this** icon: Select to automatically generate a smart playlist based on similar tracks. Touch, at any time, to create a new list based on the track currently being played.
 

**Note:** Loading time is dependent on content type.
13. **Repeat** icon: Touch to repeat the current track continuously. The **repeat** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.

**Note:** Additional repeat functionality options may be available depending on the portable device connected.

14. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All settings**. Select **Features**. Select **Media**. Select **Media Player Settings** to manage the importing and deleting of files stored to the vehicle's memory.
15. **Shuffle** icon: Touch to shuffle the current music queue continuously. The **shuffle** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.

### PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

Use the touchscreen controls to control playback, if using a USB mass storage device or compatible Apple device.

Use the touchscreen controls to control playback, if using a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device. Some controls may be unavailable, depending on what the device and the media player system supports.

If using any media device via the HDMI/MHL socket, control playback from the device itself.

#### **NOTICE**

*It is recommended not to use a hard disc drive via the USB link. The devices are not designed for in-vehicle use and may be damaged.*



## Portable media

### CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

Multiple devices can be simultaneously connected to the portable media interface. Use the touchscreen to switch between the connected devices. Select **iPod**, **USB**, **Bluetooth**, or **HDMI/HML** to switch between inputs.

After changing to a newly-docked device, upon return to a previous device, playback resumes from the point at which it was left (USB and iPod only).

See **279, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

### PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER

**Note:** The process of pairing and connecting the media device with the vehicle, using the media device, varies depending on the type of media device.

1. Switch on the ignition and make sure that the touchscreen is active.
2. From the opening **MEDIA CONTROL** screen, touch the **settings** icon. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next, select **Connectivity**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
3. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen is displayed. Select **Pair New Device**.
4. The vehicle's **Bluetooth®** wireless technology system remains discoverable while in the pairing screen.

5. Using the media device, search for devices. On some media devices, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the device's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's name is displayed as the default discoverable name.
6. When the vehicle's discoverable name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes**, when prompted, to confirm the pairing. On some media devices, this completes the pairing. Alternatively, on other media devices, the vehicle's system displays a PIN. When prompted, either enter the PIN on the device, or select **Yes** to confirm that the PIN displayed matches the vehicle's PIN.
7. Once the media device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message is displayed. Either, select the **return** icon or return to the previously selected media and select **Source**.
8. Select the media device from the displayed media options.

**Note:** If, when playing media through a wireless connected Apple device, the Apple device is then also connected to a USB port, the wireless connection is disabled. To reconnect via wireless, the USB connection needs to be disconnected and the Apple device reconnected via the **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen.

**Note:** Apple devices, with a large quantity of media on them, can take a considerable amount of time to synchronize. During this time, playback can only be accessed from the Apple device's media player and not via voice commands.

## Portable media

**Note:** After the Apple device has been synced with the media system, the device can then be controlled via the media system or operated by the voice system. If the Apple device's track list is updated after the device was previously synced, the device needs to be re-synced to the media system. During this time, the Apple device's voice commands become temporarily unavailable.

Further information on **Bluetooth** wireless technology can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **335, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

### CHANGING/DISCONNECTING A DEVICE

To connect or disconnect a paired **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device:

1. Touch the **settings** icon. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **Features**. Select **Phone**. Select **Bluetooth settings**. Alternatively, select **Connectivity**. Select **Bluetooth**.
3. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Paired Devices**.
4. Paired devices are listed. Select the device's name, followed by **Connect** or **Disconnect**.

To unpair a paired **Bluetooth** device:

1. Touch the **settings** icon. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **Features**. Select **Phone**. Select **Bluetooth settings**. Alternatively, select **Connectivity**. Select **Bluetooth**.
3. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Paired Devices**.

4. Paired devices are listed. Select the device's name, followed by **Forget Device**.

To forget all paired **Bluetooth** devices:

1. Touch the **settings** icon. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
2. Select **Features**. Select **Phone**. Select **Bluetooth settings**. Alternatively, select **Connectivity**. Select **Bluetooth**.
3. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen displays. Select **Forget All Devices**.

### IMPORTING/RIPPING MEDIA

The vehicle's internal storage, which is used for navigation data, speech data, and metadata databases, also allows media to be stored by:

Importing media from USB memory devices, via the **MEDIA PLAYER SETTINGS** screen. Select the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All settings**. Select **Features**. Select **Media**. Select **Media Player Settings**. See **260, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

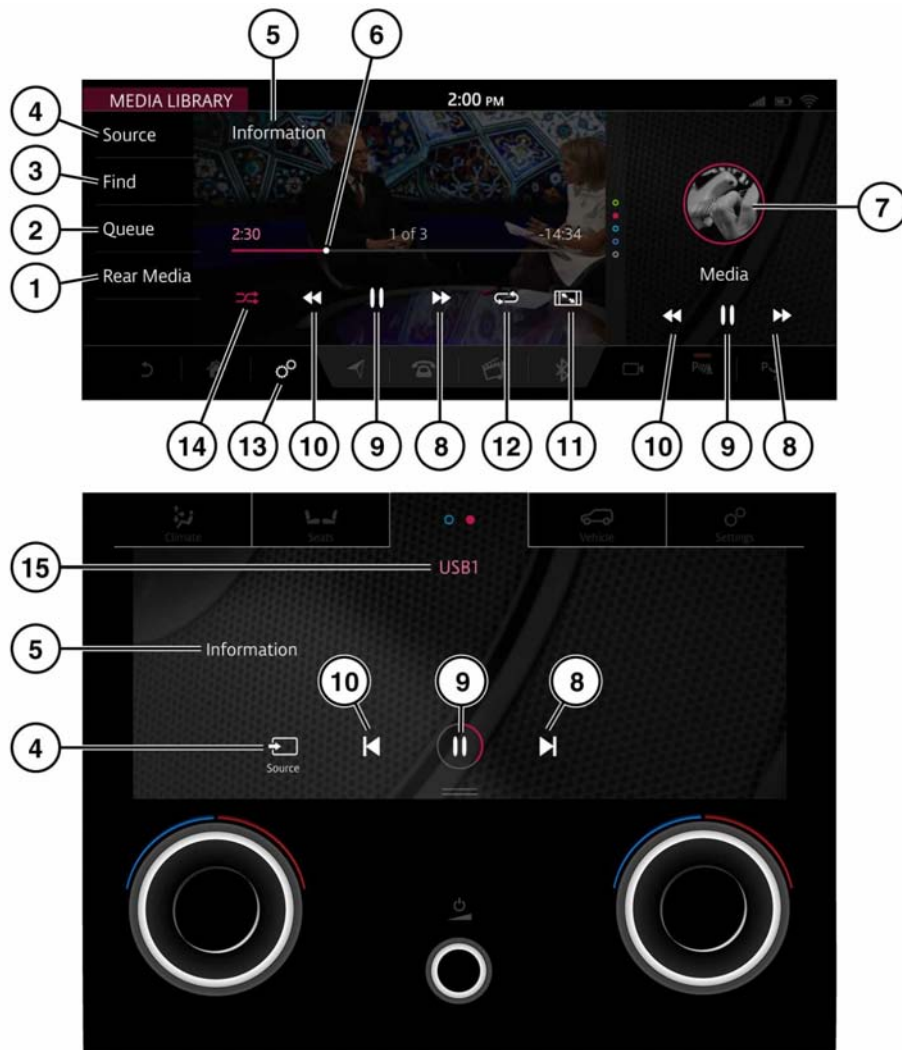


Importing media from a loaded CD. Select the **CD ripping** icon. Notification is displayed when ripping of the CD is complete.



## Portable media

### VIDEO MEDIA PLAYER CONTROLS



E200660

## Portable media

### WARNING

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

**Note:** The system supports MPEG2 (.avi, .mpg), WMV9 (.wmv) and H.264 (.mp4, .avi, .mkv, .mov) files. Other formats may work, but the playback quality cannot be guaranteed.

To maximize the stereo sound playback quality, it is recommended not to playback video files with a resolution greater than 1 080p or a speed exceeding 30fps. The quality of video playback may be affected by the USB memory device's speed.

Select the portable media device from the **SELECT SOURCE** touchscreen. See **260, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touchscreen when the media device widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touchscreen can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Rear Media:** Touch for rear media options.
2. **Queue:** Opens the current queue of videos selected from the relevant device.
3. **Find:** Touch to search, or select from, the list of videos. The list is displayed in alphabetical order.

4. **Source:** Touch to display all media sources.

**Note:** The media sources, e.g., DVD or USB 3 memory devices, are displayed, only if they are inserted or connected.

5. **Video information:** Touch to select full screen mode or wait for the preview screen to time-out. Touch the screen again to view the controls at any time.
6. **Interactive time progress bar:** Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current video track.
7. **Media library shortcut:** Touch to view the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen. Swipe up or down to access other features.
8. **Skip or scan forward:**
  - Touch and release to skip forward to the next video track.
  - Touch and hold to scan forward through the current video track. Playback is resumed when released.
  - Swipe the touchscreen to the left, to skip to the next video track.
9. **Pause or play:** Touch to pause playback. Touch again to resume playback. A second touch stops and resets the video.
10. **Skip and scan backward:**
  - Touch and release to skip backward to the previous video track.
  - Touch and hold to scan backward through the current video track. Playback is resumed when released.
  - Swipe the touchscreen to the right, to skip to the previous video track.



## Portable media

- 11. **Zoom** icon : Select to zoom in or out between the two available options.
- 12. **Repeat** icon: Touch to repeat the current video continuously. The **repeat** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
- 13. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All settings**. Select **Features**. Select **Media**.
- 14. **Shuffle** icon: Touch to shuffle the current video queue. The **shuffle** icon is highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
- 15. Portable media source device display.

### VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING

When the vehicle is moving, the touchscreen displays a relevant safety message, and the video picture is automatically inhibited.

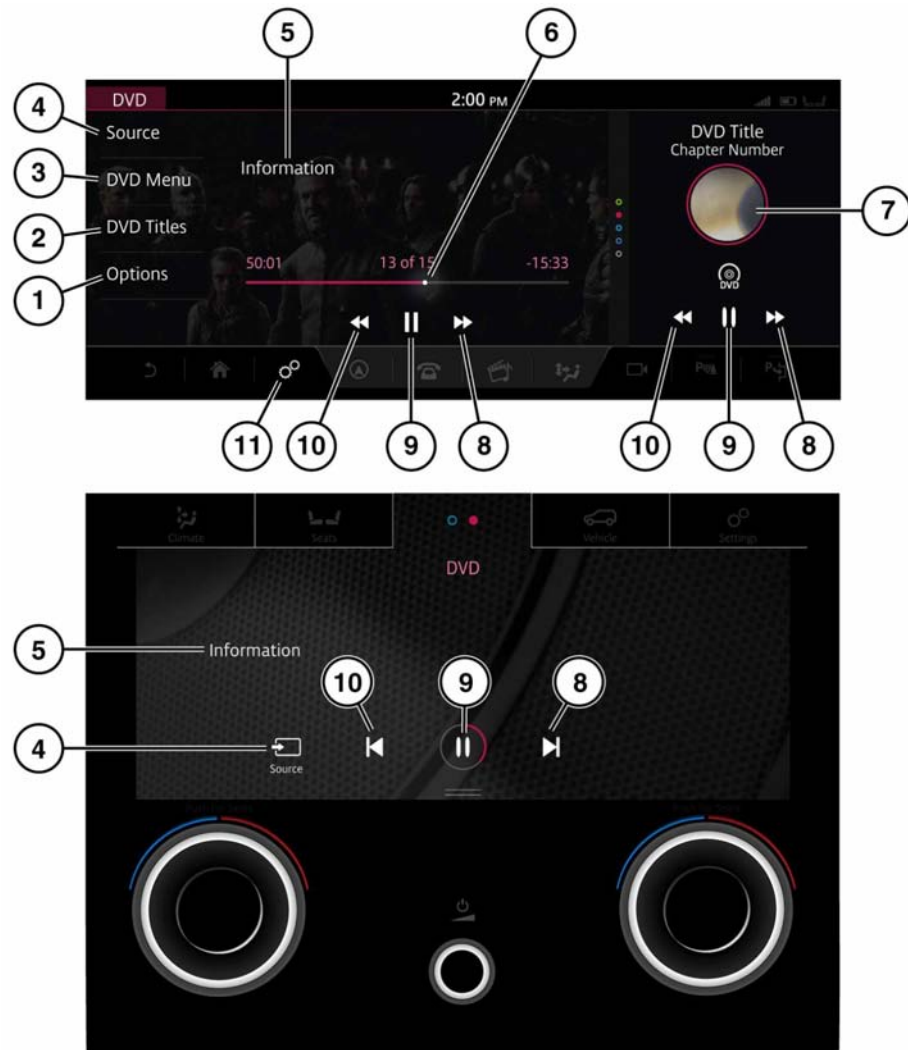
### FULL SCREEN VIEW

If full screen mode is selected, operate the seek controls in the same manner as when in preview mode.



## DVD player

### DVD PLAYER CONTROLS



E204718



## DVD player

### **WARNING**

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**Sustained exposure to high sound levels, greater than 85 decibels, can damage hearing.**

**Note:** *When the vehicle is moving, the video picture is automatically inhibited. See 288, VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING.*

From the **SELECT SOURCE** screen, select the media source. See **260, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touchscreen when the media device widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touchscreen can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Options:** Touch to access **Zoom In/Out, Audio, Angle,** and **Subtitle** options.

**Note:** *The options displayed are dependent on the inserted DVD options.*

2. **DVD Titles:** Touch to display a list of DVD titles.
3. **DVD Menu:** Touch to access the DVD menu.
  - **Top Menu:** Only displayed if supported by the DVD.
  - **Resume:** Touch to resume play.

- **Menu navigation keys:** Touch to move the menu up or down through the menu options.

**Note:** *The DVD menu can also be selected by touching the screen in full screen mode.*

4. **Source:** Touch to display all media options.
5. **DVD information:** Touch to select full screen mode. Touch the screen again to view the controls at any time. Alternatively, swipe the touchscreen to search for the previous or next chapter.
6. **Interactive time progress bar:** Touch or drag to move forward or backward through the current DVD.
7. **DVD shortcut:** Touch to view the **DVD** screen.
8. **Seek up:** Touch to view the next DVD chapter. Touch and hold to fast forward.
9. **Pause or play:** Touch to pause playback. Touch again to resume playback.
10. **Seek down:** Touch to view the previous DVD chapter. Touch and hold to rewind.
11. **Settings icon:** Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, followed by **All Settings**. Select **Features**. Select **Media** to activate or deactivate the **Auto play DVD on loading**.

The media controls are operated via the media system. See **260, MEDIA CONTROLS**, or the steering wheel. See **263, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**. Information of the CD/DVD loading slot and eject button can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **264, LOADING DISCS**.

## Headphones

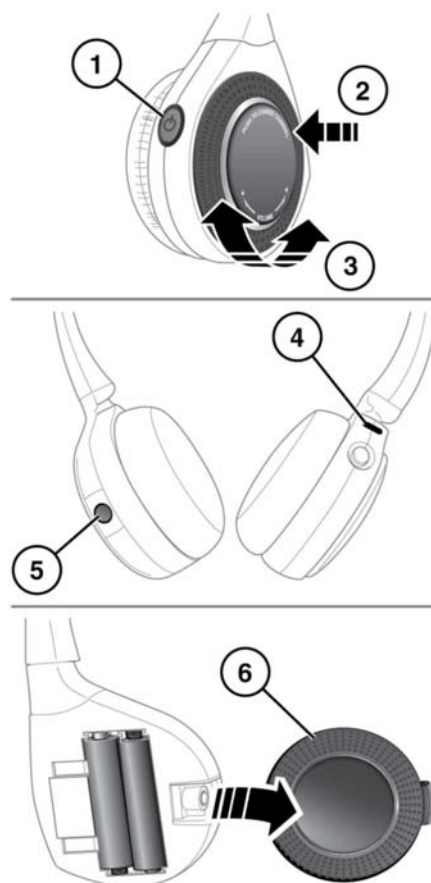
### HEADPHONES

#### ⚠ WARNING

Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Always store headphones safely when they are not in use. Do not leave them unsecured as they may cause injury in the event of sudden braking or impact.



1. Power button: Press to switch the headphones on or off.
2. Media channel changer: Press to change the media channel.
3. Volume control: Rotate to adjust the headphone volume.
4. LED status indicator lamp:
  - When a signal is being received, the lamp illuminates continuously.



## Headphones

- When a signal is not being received, the lamp flashes.
  - When the battery power is low, the lamp flashes and then extinguishes after a short delay.
5. The battery access cover's securing screw.
  6. The battery access cover.

When the battery power is low, the headphones emit a beeping sound every 90 seconds.

To replace the batteries, use the following procedure:

1. Remove the battery access cover's securing screw (5).
2. Pull the battery access cover (6) away from the headphones.
3. Remove the used batteries.
4. Fit the new AAA batteries.

**Note:** Make sure that the polarity of the batteries matches that shown inside the headphone's battery compartment.

5. Replace the battery access cover and install the battery access cover retaining screw.

**Note:** The headphones do not operate if the batteries are fitted incorrectly.

**Note:** Under normal usage, the expected battery life is six months.

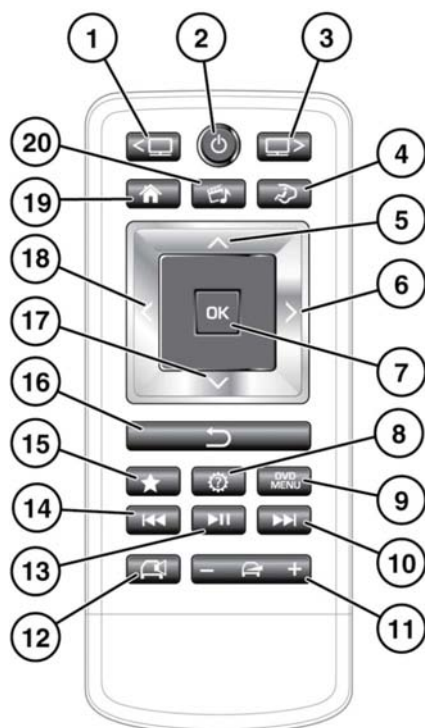
**Note:** Always use good quality batteries of the same type.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on battery disposal from a retailer/authorized repairer and/or the local authority.

## Rear seat screens

### REAR SEAT REMOTE CONTROL



E163203

#### NOTICE

Store the remote control in the storage area provided in the rear seat center armrest, when not in use, to prevent accidental damage. See **124, REAR CONSOLE STORAGE**.

1. **Left screen** button: Press to select or reactivate the screen when in stand-by mode (illuminates when selected).
2. **Power** button: Press and release to switch the selected screen on and off (all selected audio from sources will continue).

Press and hold to switch off the system completely (audio and video source will stop).

3. **Right screen** button: Press to select or reactivate the screen when in stand-by mode (illuminates when selected).
4. **Rear climate** button: Press to toggle between the **CLIMATE** and **SEATS** screens.
5. **Up** button: Press to move up the selection.\*
6. **Right** button: Press to move right.\*
7. **OK** button: Press to confirm selection.
8. **Settings** button: Some settings for features displayed on the rear screens are available, however, full functionality is controlled from the front touchscreen.
9. **DVD menu** button: Press to select from the DVD menu.
10. **Forward** button: Press to access the next track, file, channel, or station, depending on the selected media.
11. **Volume control** button: Press to increase, decrease, or mute cabin audio volume (volume control for the headphones is on the side of the headphones).
12. **Cabin audio** button: Press to switch the cabin audio on or off (when switched off, the headphone's audio will be available).
13. **Play or Pause** button: Press to play or pause media.
14. **Backward** button: Press to access the previous track, file, channel, or station depending on the selected media.
15. **Favorite** button: Press to select a favorite.

## Rear seat screens

**16. Return** button: Press to return to a higher menu level.

**17. Down** button: Press to move down the selection.\*

**18. Left** button: Press to move left.\*

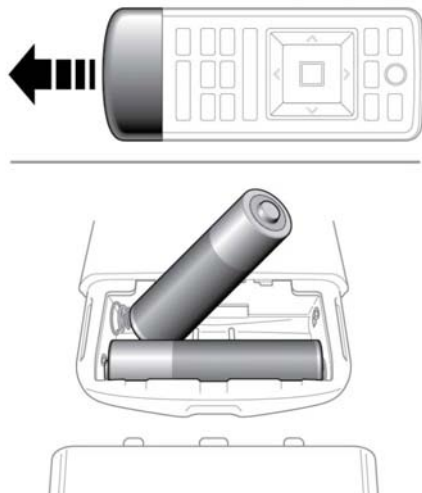
**19. Home** button: Press to select the rear **HOME** screen.

**20. Media source** button: Press once to view the selected media source. Press again to access the **SELECT SOURCE** menu.

\*These are multi-function keys, depending on the source selected.

If the remote control becomes unpaired from the rear screens, re-pair via the **Rear Media Settings** on the touchscreen **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Once this is complete, both the left and right screen buttons will flash twice. See **258, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

### REAR SEAT REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



E167536

Low battery power is indicated by the remote control power button flashing 3 times when pressed.

To replace the batteries:

- Remove the chrome battery cover.
- Install two AAA batteries. Make sure the polarity of the batteries matches that shown inside the remote control battery compartment.

**Note:** The remote control will not operate if the batteries are fitted incorrectly.

**Note:** Always use good quality batteries of the same type.

- Replace the chrome battery cover.



Battery disposal: Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/ authorized repairer and/or the local authority.

### REAR SEAT SCREEN - HOME SCREEN

The rear screens allow rear seat passengers to use selected features, that are also available to the front occupants.

Use the rear screen remote control to operate the rear screen displayed features. See **295, REAR SEAT SCREENS OVERVIEW**.

Some media features can also be controlled directly from the rear seat touchscreen.

The following features are available for use by the rear passengers:

## Rear seat screens

- **Media:** The media system can be viewed from the rear screens. Adjustment of the rear media features are able to be made via the rear screen remote control. Some rear media options can also be controlled directly from rear seat touchscreen. Some of the features available are different to the front touchscreen options. See **269, AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS, 272, HD RADIO™ CONTROLS, 274, SATELLITE RADIO CONTROLS, 278, PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS, and 289, DVD PLAYER CONTROLS.**
- **Navigation:** The navigation system can be viewed from the rear screens. Adjustment of the navigation system feature is able to be made via the rear screen remote control. Some of the features available are different to the front touchscreen options. See **343, REAR SEAT NAVIGATION.**
- **Seats:** The rear seat heating or cooling temperature can be viewed from the rear screens. Adjustment of the rear seat features are able to be made via the rear screen remote control. Some of the features available are different to the front lower touchscreen options. See **302, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT.**
- **Climate:** The rear climate control system can be viewed from the rear screens. Adjustment of the rear climate control features are able to be made via the rear screen remote control. Some of the features available are different to the front lower touchscreen options. The system can be locked via the front touchscreen. A **padlock** icon is displayed when the rear climate control system has been locked.

The rear climate control system cannot be switched off via the rear screens. See **300, REAR CLIMATE CONTROL.**

- **Settings:** Pressing the settings button on the rear screen remote control allows some settings to be controlled. Some media features settings can also be controlled via the **settings** icon on the rear seat touchscreen. Full settings functionality is controlled via the **settings** icon of either, the front touchscreen's home menu or the lower touchscreen controls. See **248, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU** and **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS.**

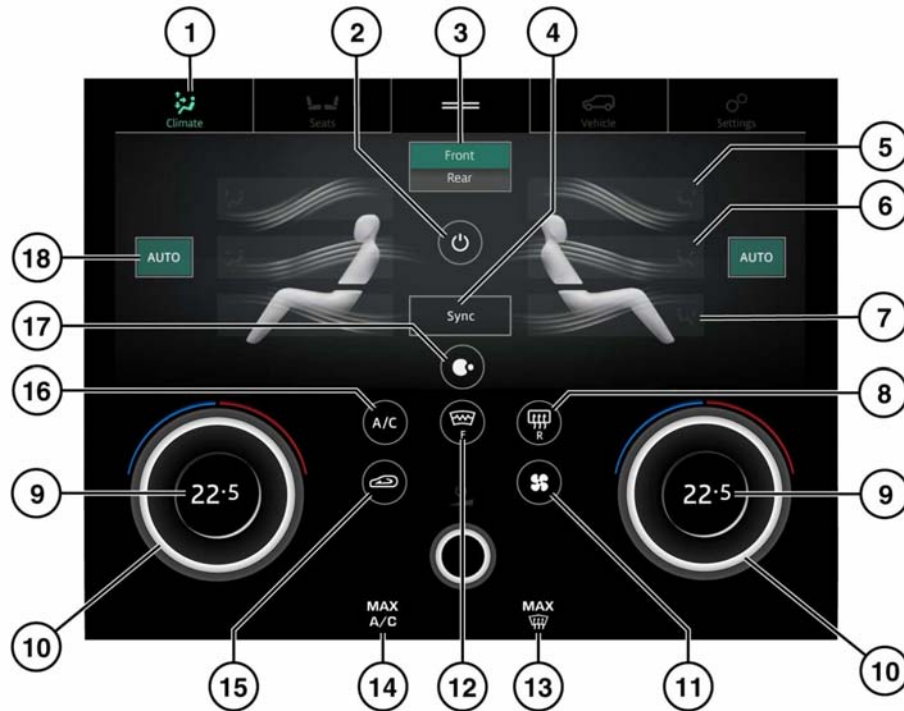
### REAR SEAT SCREENS OVERVIEW

To activate the system using the rear seat remote control, press the appropriate screen select option **(1)** or **(3)**, followed by the power button **(2)**.

Select the desired system. Subsequent selections on the remote control will operate the last selected system.

## Climate and comfort

### FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL



E213306

#### **⚠ WARNING**

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

To access the front climate screen, touch the **Climate** icon on the lower touchscreen. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

1. **Climate** icon: Touch to access the climate screen.



## Climate and comfort

2. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the climate control system on or off.
  3. **Front** or **Rear** soft key: Touch to switch between **Front** climate or **Rear** climate menu screens.
  4. **Sync**: Select to synchronize the front passenger and rear passenger climate settings to the driver's settings.
  5. **Air distribution to the front windshield** icon: Touch to switch on or off.
  6. **Air distribution to the face** icon: Touch to switch on or off.
  7. **Air distribution to the feet** icon: Touch to switch on or off.
  8. **Heated rear window** icon: Touch to switch on or off. If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.
- NOTICE**
- Do not attach labels to the rear window. Do not scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the rear window.*
- Note:** *The heated windshield and rear window operate only when the engine is running.*
9. Cabin temperature and front seat temperature control displays. See **305, HEATED SEATS** and **306, CLIMATE SEATS**.
  10. Rotary controls: Press to switch between, and rotate to adjust cabin or seat temperature.
  11. **Blower speed control** icon: Touch to switch blower speed adjustment on or off. Rotate the passenger rotary control to manually adjust the blower speed. If a manual blower speed adjustment is made, after a few seconds the passenger rotary control display defaults to the temperature setting. The blower speed is displayed within the blower speed control icon.
 

**Note:** *The blower speed is automatically set in **AUTO** mode. Adjusting the blower speed cancels **AUTO** mode. Touch **AUTO** to return to the auto blower speed control.*
  12. **Heated windshield**: Touch to switch on or off. If left on, it deactivates after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.
 

**Note:** *In cold ambient conditions, the windshield and rear window heaters switch on automatically when the engine is started. This function can be switched on or off via **Climate Settings**. See **298, CLIMATE SETTINGS***
  13. **MAX** soft key: Touch and hold to switch maximum defrost for the windshield on or off.
  14. **MAX A/C** soft key: Touch and hold to switch maximum A/C mode on or off.
  15. **Recirculation** icon: Touch to recirculate air inside the vehicle.
    - Touch briefly to select timed recirculation. Recirculation switches off automatically after a set time (dependent on the ambient temperature).
    - Touch and hold to select latched recirculation. Recirculation remains on until the icon is touched again.

## Climate and comfort

**Note:** Prolonged use at low temperatures may cause the windows to fog.

**16. A/C** soft key: Touch to switch the Air Conditioning (A/C) system on or off. The A/C system can be switched on or off independently of the other climate control functions, except when using maximum defrost or MAX A/C functions.

**17. Air ionization** icon: Touch to activate air ionization.

**Note:** Air ionization technology is designed to improve the air quality within the cabin.

**18. AUTO** soft key: Touch to switch fully automatic mode on. Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the various options for **AUTO** mode can be set via the **Climate Settings** menu. See **298, CLIMATE SETTINGS**.

**Note:** *AUTO* mode is the recommended normal operating mode. The Air Conditioning (A/C) and heating and ventilation controls automatically provide an optimum environment at the selected temperature.

**Note:** Some of the icons and soft keys have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.

**Note:** If the climate control system is switched off, pressing an **AUTO** button, **A/C**, **MAX A/C**, or the **MAX** defrost button switches the climate control system on.

**Note:** Water expelled by the A/C system may collect underneath the vehicle, when parked. The expelled water is not a cause for concern.

**The following applies if this vehicle is fitted with an air ionizer.**

United States of America, Federal Insecticide, Fungicide, and Rodenticide Act (FIFRA):

This vehicle, which may be fitted with a regulated pesticide device (air ionizer) was produced at the following facility: **EPA Est. 93184-GBR-1**

California Air Resources Board (ARB), Air Cleaning Devices Regulation:

The following applies to the air ionizer device that may be fitted in this vehicle:

**This air cleaner complies with the federal ozone emissions limit.**

**ARB Certified**

E213553

### CLIMATE SETTINGS

To view the climate settings menu, select the **Settings** icon, on the lower touchscreen, then select **Climate** from the **Lower screen display**.

- **Automatic heated windows:** Automatic operation of the heated windshield and/or the rear heated window can be enabled or disabled.
- **Air purity:** The air quality sensor, for automatic recirculation, can be adjusted. See **299, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.

## Climate and comfort

- **Auto air flow:** The blower speed for automatic operation can be set to **Soft and Quiet**, **Balanced**, or **Powerful and Fast**.
- **Auto sunroof blind:** The auto sunroof blind feature can be enabled or disabled. See **107, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.

### AUTOMATIC RECIRCULATION

The climate control system monitors exterior air pollution, and selects recirculation if it reaches a predetermined level. Automatic recirculation only operates when the **Air Purity** function is active. The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be set via the **Climate Settings** screen. See **299, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.

**Note:** *It is recommended that automatic recirculation is enabled, to maintain the optimum air quality within the vehicle.*

### AIR QUALITY SENSOR

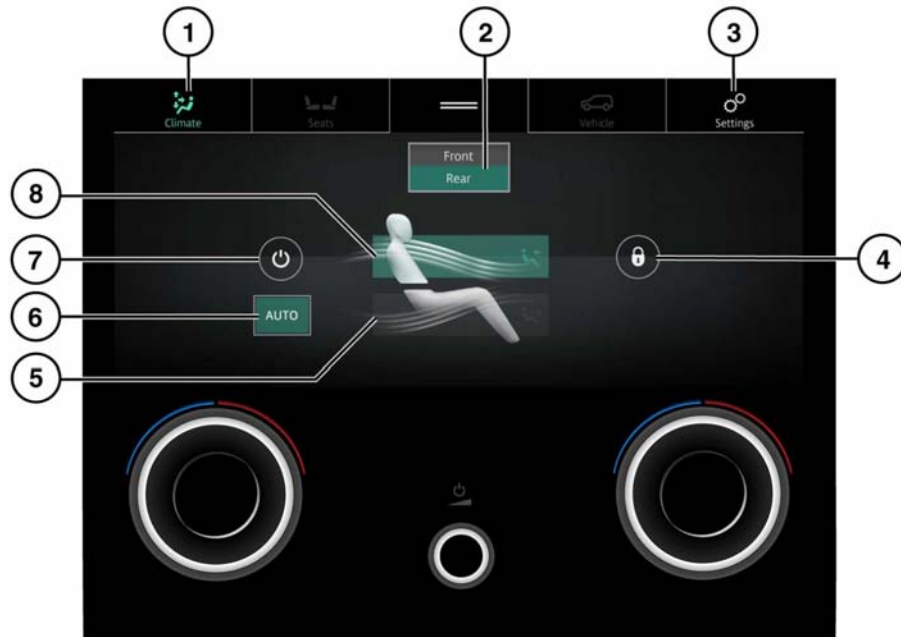
The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be adjusted by changing the **Air Purity** level.

To adjust the **Air Purity** level:

1. Select the **settings** icon, on the lower touchscreen, then select **Climate** from the **Lower screen display**.
2. Select **Air Purity** and then select the appropriate level: **Low**, **Medium**, or **High**.  
To deactivate, touch **OFF**.

## Climate and comfort

### REAR CLIMATE CONTROL



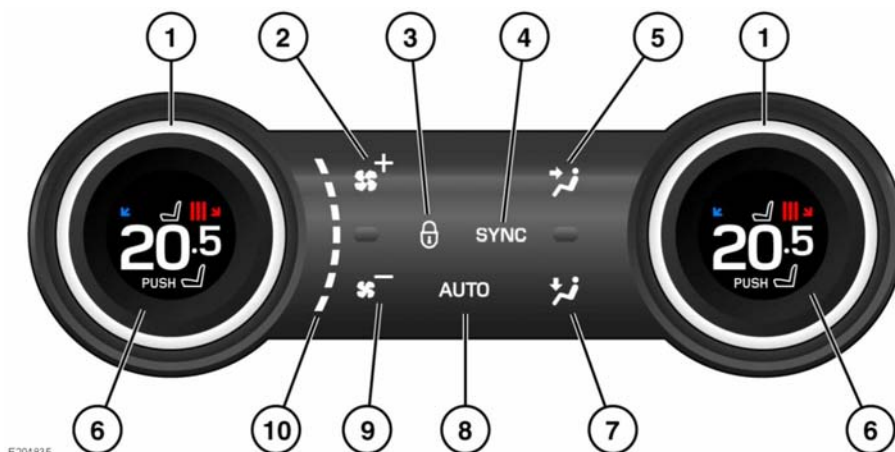
E213307

To access the **rear climate** screen, touch the **climate** icon on the lower touchscreen. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

Control the rear climate as follows:

1. **Climate** icon: Touch to access the **climate** screen.
2. **Front** or **rear** soft key: Touch to switch between the **Front** climate or **Rear** climate menu screens.
3. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **Lower screen display** on the lower touchscreen. Then select **Climate**.
4. **Padlock** icon: Touch to disable the rear climate controls, in order to prevent the rear passengers from adjusting the rear climate settings. Touch again to enable the controls.
5. **Air distribution to the feet** icon: Touch to switch on or off.
6. **AUTO** soft key: Touch to switch automatic operation on.
7. **Power** icon: Touch to switch the rear climate control system on or off.
8. **Air distribution to the face** icon: Touch to switch on or off.

## Climate and comfort



The rear climate can be adjusted with the controls located in the rear of the center console.

Control the rear climate as follows:

1. **Temperature controls:** Rotate to adjust the cabin or seat temperature.
2. **Blower speed increase** button: Press to increase the blower speed.
3. **Padlock** icon: The LED illuminates to show that the rear climate controls have been locked via the driver's controls.
4. **SYNC:** The LED illuminates to show that the rear climate controls have been synchronized to the driver's settings.
5. **Air distribution to the face** button: Press to switch on or off.
6. Press to switch between cabin temperature control and rear seat temperature control. See **305, HEATED SEATS** and **306, CLIMATE SEATS**.
7. **Air distribution to the feet** button: Press to switch on or off.

8. **AUTO** button: Press to switch automatic operation on.

9. **Blower speed decrease** button: Press to decrease the blower speed.

10. **Blower speed level indicator:** The LED displays the current blower speed level.

**Note:** Some of the buttons have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.

**Note:** In addition to the selectable controls, the **REAR CLIMATE** screen displays symbols that indicate the status of heating and ventilation functions.

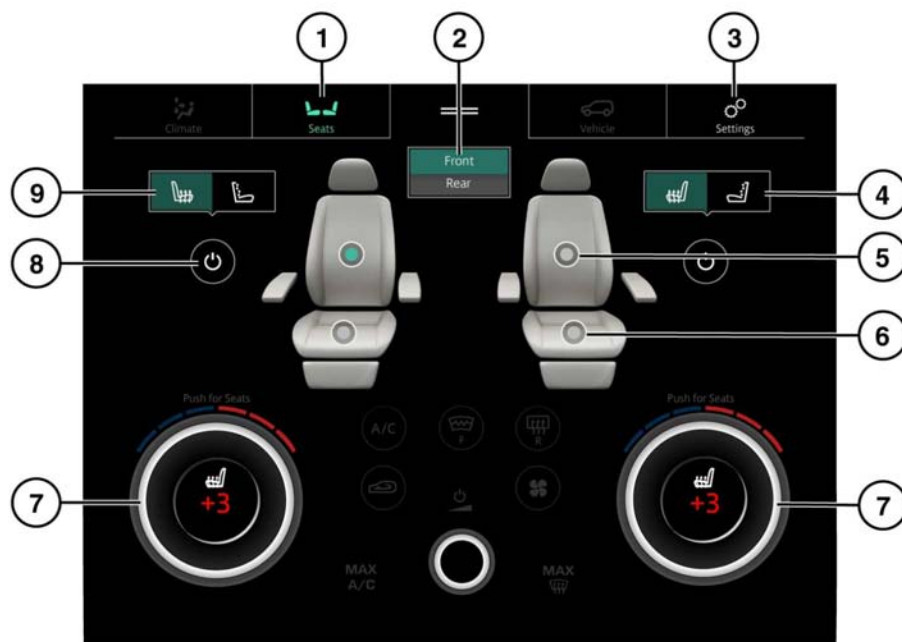
**Note:** If the climate control system is switched off, pressing the rear **AUTO** button or the blower speed increase button switches the climate control system on.

**Note:** If the system is in defrost mode, all rear controls are disabled and no airflow is available to the rear occupants.

## Climate and comfort

### SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT

#### Front seat comfort and adjustment



E204836

To access the **seats** screen, touch the **seats** icon on the lower touchscreen. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

Control the seat comfort and adjustment as follows:

1. **Seats** icon: Touch to access the **seats** screen.
2. **Front** or **rear** icon: Touch to switch between **Front** seats or **Rear** seats menu screens.
3. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **Lower screen display** on the lower touchscreen. Select **Seats**.
4. **Seat massage** icon: Touch to select the seat massage function for the respective seat. See **306, SEAT MASSAGE**.
5. **Seat top zone** icon: Touch to select, or deselect, the top zone for the respective seat.

## Climate and comfort

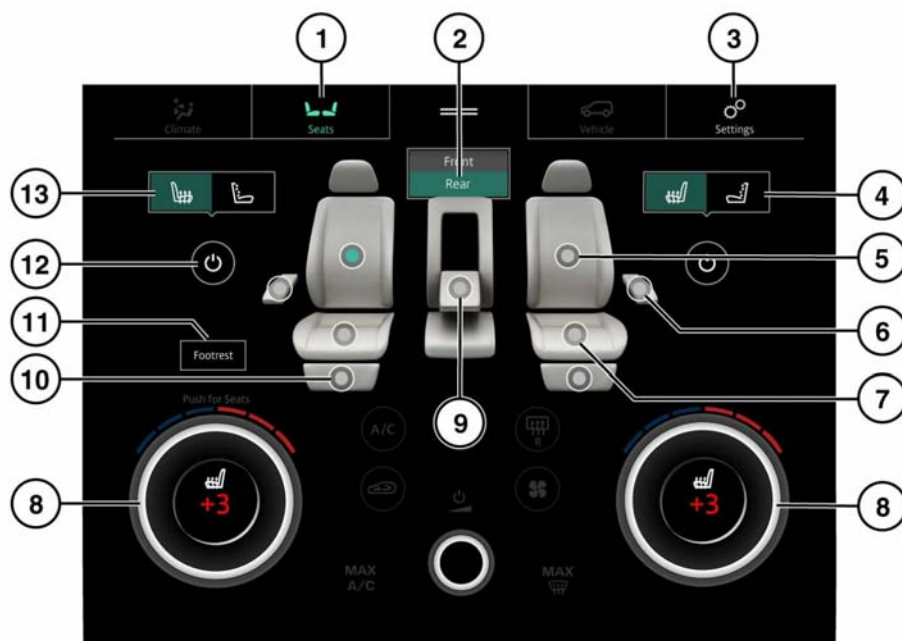
6. **Seat base zone** icon: Touch to select, or deselect, the base zone for the respective seat.
7. Rotary controls: Press to select or deselect the seat control function. Rotate to adjust the seat temperature or massage intensity.
8. **Power** icon: Touch the respective seat power icon to switch the selected function on or off, for massage, heated or climate seat.
9. **Heated or climate seat** icon: Touch to select the heated or climate seat function for the respective seat. See **305, HEATED SEATS** or **306, CLIMATE SEATS**.

## Climate and comfort

### Rear seat comfort and adjustment

#### **NOTICE**

Always make sure the heated footrest option is switched off before stowage. Failure to deselect the heating option can result in discoloration and distortion of the front passenger seat trim.



E215954

To access the **seats** screen, touch the **seats** icon on the lower touchscreen. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

Control the seat comfort and adjustment as follows:

1. **Seats** icon: Touch to access the **seats** screen.
2. **Front** or **rear** icon: Touch to switch between **Front** seats or **Rear** seats menu screens.
3. **Settings** icon: Touch to access the **Lower screen display** on the lower touchscreen. Select **Seats**.



## Climate and comfort

4. **Seat massage** icon: Touch to select the seat massage function for the respective seat. See **306, SEAT MASSAGE**.
5. **Seat top zone** icon: Touch to select, or deselect, the top zone for the respective seat.
6. **Heated armrest** icon: Select the heated or climate seat icon (13). Touch to select, or deselect, the heated armrest function for the respective seat. Adjust the temperature of the heated armrest via the rotary control.
7. **Seat base zone** icon: Touch to select, or deselect, the base zone for the respective seat.
8. **Rotary controls**: Press to select, or deselect, the seat control function. Rotate to adjust the seat temperature or massage intensity.
9. **Heated center armrest** icon: Select the **heated or climate seat** icon (13). Touch to select, or deselect, the heated center armrest function. Adjust the temperature of the heated center armrest via the rotary control.
10. **Heated calf rest** icon: Select the **heated or climate seat** icon (13). Touch to select, or deselect, the heated calf rest function for the respective seat. Adjust the temperature of the heated calf rest via the rotary control.
11. **Heated footrest** icon: Select the **heated or climate seat** icon (13). Touch to select, or deselect, the heated footrest function. Adjust the temperature of the heated footrest via the rotary control.

**Note:** The heated footrest is only available on vehicles with executive class seating and is only fitted behind the front passenger seat.

Make sure the heated footrest option has been deselected before storage.

See **34, REAR SEAT COMFORT POSITION**

12. **Power** icon: Touch the respective seat power icon to switch the selected function on or off, for massage, heated or climate seat.

13. **Heated or climate seat** icon: Touch to select the heated or climate seat function for the respective seat. See **305, HEATED SEATS** or **306, CLIMATE SEATS**.

### HEATED SEATS

**Note:** Heated seats consume a large amount of battery power. They only operate when the engine is running.

**Note:** The heated rear seats (non-climate) can only be operated by pressing the buttons located at the rear of the center console.



Heated seat icon.

Touch the relevant heated seat icon to switch the required heated seat on at the maximum setting. The three LED indicators in the button illuminate.

Touch a second time to set the heated seat at the medium setting. Two LED indicators illuminate.

Touch a third time to set the heated seat at the lowest setting. One LED indicator illuminates.

Touch a fourth time to switch off.

## Climate and comfort

**Note:** The heated front seats are controlled via the lower touchscreen. See **306, CLIMATE SEATS**.

**Note:** On vehicles with rear climate seats, the rear heated seats are controlled in the same manner as climate seats. See **306, CLIMATE SEATS**.

### CLIMATE SEATS

**Note:** The climate seats only operate when the engine is running.

To access the **heated or climate seats** screen, touch the **seats** icon on the lower touchscreen. Touch the **heated or climate seats** icon. See **302, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

1. Touch the respective seat **power** icon to switch the selected climate seat on or off.
2. Touch to select, or deselect, the respective **seat zone** icon: Top, base or both icons.
3. Rotate the outer part of the rotary control to adjust the seat temperature. See **302, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

**Note:** The temperature status of the selected seat zone is displayed on the touchscreen. The status range is red for heated operation and blue for cooled operation.

**Note:** The rotary control displays a numeric **+** or **-** status. The outline of the rotary control illuminates to display red for heated operation and blue for cooled operation.

### SEAT MESSAGE

**Note:** Seat massage does not operate when the vehicle's interior temperature is in extreme cold or hot climate conditions. Seat massage only operates when the engine is switched on.

**Note:** Seat massage pauses for 5 seconds if any adjustments are made to the lumbar, bolster, or shoulder sections of the seat.

To access the **seat massage** screen, touch the **seats** icon (1) on the lower touchscreen. Touch the respective **seat massage** icon (4). See **302, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

1. Touch the **power** icon for the respective seat to switch the selected seat massage on or off. See **302, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.
2. Touch the top **seat zone** icon for the respective seat. See **302, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.
3. Touch the icon of the desired massage program: **Rolling, Up, Down, Upper Back**, or **Lower Back** massage.
  - Touch the icon of the desired massage format: **Wave, Pulse, Pulse Duo**, or **Combination**.

**Note:** On vehicles with executive class seating, an additional format of **Hot Stone** is available. Hot stone provides increased central heat for the spine.
4. Rotate the outer part of the rotary control to adjust the seat massage intensity. See **302, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

**Note:** The outline of the rotary control illuminates to indicate the level of seat massage intensity.

## Climate and comfort

**Auto Massage** can be set in **Seat Settings**. See **307, SEAT SETTINGS**.

**Note:** The massage programs have a 20 minute cycle. Reselect for repeated use.

### SEAT SETTINGS

**Seats** settings can be accessed via the **Settings** icon on the lower touchscreen. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

Touch the **Settings** icon to access the **Lower screen display** on the lower touchscreen, then select **Seats**.

The following options can be selected:

- **Auto Massage:** Switch the automatic massage feature **On** or **Off**.
- **Time delay:** Touch to select the time delay options. A time delay for the seat massage can be set from the start of a journey.

### COMFORT CONTROLLER

The comfort controller enables control of the rear seat environment including, climate seat, heated seat, and seat massage functions, via a downloaded smartphone app. The **Comfort Controller** app is only available on vehicles with executive class seats.

In order to use **Comfort Controller**, first download the **Comfort Controller** app to a phone.

Downloading and installing the app:

1. Search for and download the **Comfort Controller** app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. When the installation is complete, open the **Comfort Controller** app.

3. Follow the app's Quick Start Guide (QSG) instructions to complete the set-up process.

**Note:** The availability and functionality of **Comfort Controller** app depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is used.

### TEMPERATURE DIFFERENTIATION

The temperature selected via the Climate Control system is 'perceived'. The system will endeavour to regulate the temperature to the selected values.

The actual temperature in the cabin may differ somewhat due to the effects of internal and external factors, including ambient temperature, sun load and direction.

Based on these factors, the system will automatically compensate the airflow level, direction and temperature which can give differences between the left and right hand air vents. This may result in some temperature differentiation within the cabin.



## Parking features

### USING THE PARKING AID

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The sensors for the parking aid system do not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until the objects are dangerously close. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed maneuvers.

#### **NOTICE**

The parking aid sensors may also be externally influenced by noise generated from air brakes, emergency vehicles, motorcycles, pneumatic drills, and high wind. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during low speed maneuvers.

#### **NOTICE**

The sensors for the parking aid system may not detect some obstructions. For example, narrow posts or small objects close to the ground. Objects above sensor level may not be detected, e.g., when approaching a flatbed truck, the protruding part of the flatbed may not be detected.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not aim a high pressure water jet directly at any of the sensors when washing the vehicle. Only use approved vehicle shampoo. Do not use abrasive materials, or hard or sharp objects, to clean the sensors. Failure to follow these guidelines may result in damage to the system, or cause a system fault.

#### **NOTICE**

Particular care must be taken when using the parking aid system if accessories are fitted to the front or rear of the vehicle. For example, a cycle rack mounted in a position where it obstructs operation of the parking aid sensor(s). If the affected sensor(s) is obstructed, the sensor(s) only indicates the distance from the bumper to the cycle rack. Any obstacle beyond the detected accessory may not be indicated on the touchscreen display.

**Note:** The sensors must be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

**Note:** If a trailer is connected to an approved trailer socket, the rear parking sensors are disabled. If the trailer's electrical plug is not connected to the socket, or a non-approved towing system is fitted, the parking sensors do not operate as intended.

**Note:** The parking aid pop-up screen is displayed when a possible threat is detected.

## Parking features



E203363

**Note:** The parking aid settings pop-up menu is only accessible when the parking aid feature is enabled, and the parking aid pop-up screen is displayed.

1. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Touch **Parking aid settings** to access the **PARKING AID SETTINGS** screen.
2. **Parking aid** icon: Touch to activate the parking aid system.
3. Vehicle steering trajectory lines: Projected reversing path, based on the current steering wheel position.
4. Parking aid sensor detection zones:
  - Gray blocks indicate objects detected that do not pose a threat, i.e., not in a collision path with the vehicle.
  - Colored blocks indicate objects detected that pose collision threats.
5. **Camera** icon: Touch to select the cameras feature.

6. **Volume** icon: Touch to lower the volume of the beeps for the parking aid system.

The parking aid system assists the driver while maneuvering the vehicle at low speed in confined spaces. When active, object tracking along the front, sides, and rear of the vehicle is displayed on the touchscreen. The front, side, and outer rear sensors monitor a fixed distance around the vehicle. The inner rear sensors monitor a greater distance at the rear of the vehicle. The four side sensors provide 360° parking aid monitoring along the vehicle's sides, thereby, creating a virtual detection zone.

The parking aid system also detects low objects, e.g., curbs in the front and rear detection zones. The curbs are tracked as the vehicle approaches, even when the curbs are no longer seen by the sensors.



## Parking features

**Note:** At vehicle start-up, the front sensors may not detect low objects, even if the objects were detected during the original parking maneuver.

While the vehicle is passing an object within its sensor range, the vehicle's integrated systems calculate its steering trajectory. The trajectory lines (3) are displayed on the touchscreen in the parking aid monitored area. The steering trajectory lines indicate the projected path of the vehicle, based on the current steering wheel position. To configure the appearance of the trajectory lines, select the **settings** icon (1) to access the **PARKING AID SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Trajectory lines On** or **Off**.

**Note:** The trajectory lines selection is retained across all ignition cycles.

If a detected object is calculated to be a collision threat, it is displayed as colored blocks. The distance from a collision threat is color coded: yellow to amber to red, with red being the closest. Other detected objects that are not a collision threat are displayed as gray blocks.

**Note:** When the parking aid system is active, the system only provides information of obstacles when a threat is detected.

A warning tone sounds, which increases in speed as the vehicle approaches the object. The tone becomes continuous when the object is within 12 in (300 mm) of the vehicle. The warning tone sounds from the area in which a collision threat has been detected.

While the vehicle is stationary, the sensors for the parking aid system do not detect objects or people approaching from the side. Also, at vehicle start-up, the vehicle has no sensor information about side objects or people. In these situations, ! is displayed on the touchscreen in these virtual detection zones.

To manually enable the parking aid system, touch the **parking aid** icon (2). The icon illuminates while the parking aid system is enabled. Touch the icon (2) again to disable the system. The LED extinguishes.

The parking aid system also activates if Reverse (R) or Neutral (N) is selected.

The parking aid system can be set to activate automatically for when:

- The vehicle's speed falls below 6 mph (10 km/h).
- Drive (D) is selected.

To enable the auto on feature, select the **settings** icon (1) to access the **PARKING AID SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Automatic Front Parking Aid ON**.

**Note:** The auto on feature selection is retained across all ignition cycles.

### PARKING AID VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the parking aid warning tones, rotate the media volume control while the tones are active. See 260, **MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Touch the **volume** icon on the touchscreen, in the parking aid or camera features, to reduce the volume for that maneuver only. See 308, **USING THE PARKING AID**, 320, **SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**, and 308, **USING THE PARKING AID**.

## Parking features

### PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The parking aid system is deactivated and cannot be reactivated if:

- The vehicle's speed is greater than 10 mph (16 km/h).
- Park (P) is selected.
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is active.
- Wade sensing is active.
- There is a system fault.

If a parking aid system fault is detected, the instrument panel displays a warning message. If all of the sensors are clean and the fault is not rectified after an ignition cycle, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

### PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

If a parking aid system fault is detected, a long, high-pitched tone sounds and the parking aid icon flashes. See **308, USING THE PARKING AID**.

The touchscreen displays a parking aid warning message. If all of the sensors are clean and, after restarting the engine, the issue persists, contact a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.

### PARK ASSIST

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Park assist is a driving aid only. The driver is responsible for driving with due care and attention during parking maneuvers. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Park assist sensors may not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until the objects are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when maneuvering, and always use the mirrors. Failing to do so can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost, or insects. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications that can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout the parking maneuver. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

#### **NOTICE**

*Park assist sensors may not detect some obstructions, e.g., narrow posts, small objects close to the ground, and mesh fences. In some circumstances, cycles or motorcycles parked alongside the curb may not be detected. Objects above sensor level may not be detected, e.g., when approaching a flatbed truck, the protruding part of the flatbed may not be detected.*

## Parking features

### NOTICE

Do not use parking exit when leaving a perpendicular parking space. Parking exit is programmed for leaving only a parallel parking space. Damage to the vehicle, or surrounding objects, may occur if parking exit is used when leaving a perpendicular parking space.

### NOTICE

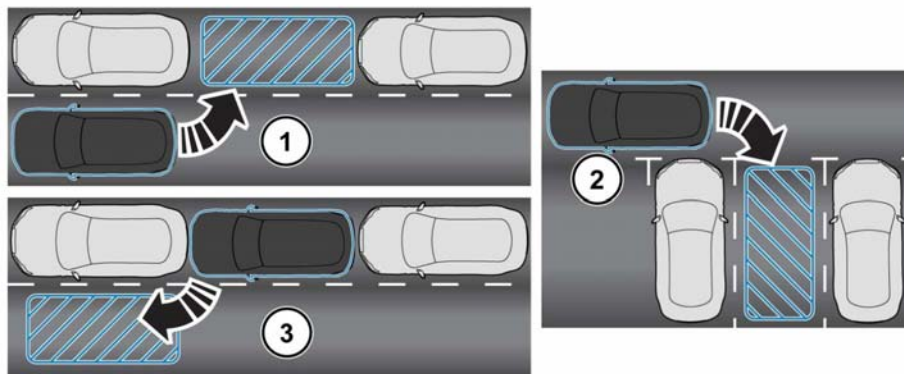
The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout the parking maneuver.

**Note:** To cancel a park assist manoeuvre, at any point, hold or turn the steering wheel. Alternatively, touch the **park assist** icon. See **313, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

**Note:** All of the doors and the tailgate must be securely closed when using park assist.

**Note:** During any park assist maneuver, the parking aid system remains active and emits a warning sound when objects are detected close to the vehicle.

The park assist system is an aid to maneuver the vehicle in and out of a parallel parking space and into a perpendicular parking space only. Park assist takes control of the vehicle's steering system to maneuver the vehicle.



E174896

The park assist system comprises of three modes:

1. Parallel parking: For reversing into a parking space that is parallel to the vehicle.
2. Perpendicular parking: For reversing into a parking space that is at a 90° angle to the vehicle.
3. Parking exit: For exiting only a parallel parking space.



## Parking features

### SELECTING PARK ASSIST

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.



E205821

1. **Park assist icon:** Touch to select **PARK ASSIST**.
2. **Parking exit icon:** Touch to select a parking exit maneuver. If a parking exit maneuver is selected, the icon changes to a **parking** icon.
3. **Parallel/perpendicular parking icon:** Touch to select a parallel or perpendicular parking maneuver.  
*Note: The **parallel/perpendicular parking** icon only displays if the parking space can be offered as a parallel or perpendicular space.*
4. **Park assist maneuver touchscreen main screen:** Provides the driver starting park assist instructions.
5. **Park assist maneuver touchscreen side panel:** Provides the driver step-by-step park assist instructions.
6. **Resume park assist soft key:** If a park assist maneuver is interrupted by the driver's steering wheel intervention or over speeding, the driver can resume the maneuver. Touch **Resume** soft key to continue the maneuver.



## Parking features

7. **Cancel** park assist soft key: If parking assistance is no longer required, touch the **Cancel** soft key to exit the selected park assist maneuver.

Touch the **park assist** icon (1) on the touchscreen to activate the park assist system. The icon illuminates while the park assist system is enabled. Touch the icon (1) again to disable the system. The LED extinguishes.

When the park assist system is active, the system automatically selects a parking space and the required parking maneuver. The driver can change the selected parking space and maneuver by touching icon (3).

For example, when a parallel parking space has been automatically selected by the park assist system, the parallel parking maneuver mode is selected. The driver can change from a parallel parking space/maneuver to perpendicular parking space/maneuver by touching icon (3) and selecting the perpendicular parking maneuver mode.

Only when the vehicle is parallel parked, the driver can use the parking exit feature for the vehicle to exit a parked space. Touch the parking exit icon (2) for the parking exit maneuver to proceed.

**Note:** During a parking exit maneuver, the **parallel/perpendicular parking** icon (3) is not available.

The park assist system can be canceled at any time by touching the **park assist** icon (1) or **Cancel** park assist soft key (7).

## USING PARK ASSIST

### **WARNING**

In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

### **WARNING**

Park assist must not be used if a sensor is damaged, or the bumper is damaged sufficiently enough to affect a sensor mounting point. Failing to follow these guidelines may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

### **WARNING**

Park assist must not be used if a sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, e.g., bumper covers, a cycle rack, or stickers. Failing to follow these guidelines may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

### **NOTICE**

*Park assist must not be used if a temporary spare wheel is in use.*

### **NOTICE**

*Park assist must not be used if the vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle's perimeter.*

## Parking features

### For assistance when parking

**Note:** For park assist to search effectively for a space, the park assist system must maintain a distance of 1.6 ft to 4.9 ft (0.5 m to 1.5 m). The distance of 1.6 ft to 4.9 ft (0.5 m to 1.5 m) is between the vehicle and the row of parked vehicles or obstacles.

As the vehicle is driven forward, the size of a potential parking space is assessed.

**Note:** When park assist auto-searching is active, the instrument panel menu displays a **park assist auto-search** icon<sup>1</sup>.

When park assist is selected and parallel parking/perpendicular parking is active, a space may already have been detected by the auto-searching feature. The detected parking spaces display blue and an instruction message is displayed on the park assist main touchscreen. See **313, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

When a pre-selected parking space is found, a short confirmation tone is given.

**Note:** Detected parking spaces that are too small or non-maneuverable are displayed as gray in the park assist main touchscreen. See **313, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

If more than one valid space is displayed in the park assist main touchscreen, the driver can switch from the pre-selected parking space by touching the preferred parking space on the park assist main touchscreen. See **313, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

The park assist system may determine that other vehicles are too close, on either side, to perform a parking maneuver. A detected space can be rejected, even if it is large enough for the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch park assist off and attempt the maneuver manually.



**Park assist auto-search** icon<sup>1</sup>.

The purpose of the **park assist auto-search** icon<sup>1</sup> is to provide information to the driver that valid parking spaces are being searched for. In order to use park assist, the feature must still be activated using the touchscreen. See **313, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

The **park assist auto-search** icon<sup>1</sup> only displays on the instrument panel when the vehicle is driven under 18 mph (30 km/h) and the park assist system is searching for spaces.

The following images display the different states of the icon in the instrument panel:



No valid parking slots.



Valid parking space on the right.



Valid parking space on the left.



Valid parking spaces on both side.



## Parking features

For assistance when exiting a parallel parking space

### **WARNING**

The parking exit mode operates only when the vehicle has been parallel parked. Parking exit does not maneuver the vehicle from a perpendicular parking space. The driver is responsible and must not to use parking exit mode to exit a perpendicular parking.

### **WARNING**

**Do not perform a parking exit maneuver until instructions display on the touchscreen.**

Select **parking exit** icon. See **313, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

When the vehicle is parallel parked, the park assist system automatically determines the most appropriate side for a parking exit maneuver. The driver can override the pre-selected side for a parking exit maneuver by using the turn signals. The operated turn signals notify the park assist system on which side the driver intends to leave the parking space.

For the parking exit mode to operate correctly, the vehicle must be parked in a space where other vehicles or objects are either:

- Parked in-front of the vehicle.
- Parked in-front and behind the vehicle.

**Note:** *Sufficient space is required in-front and behind of the vehicle for parking exit mode to operate correctly.*

All park assist features

### **WARNING**

Although the vehicle takes control during the parking or exiting maneuver, the driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout. If the maneuver is not as expected, take control of the steering and make necessary adjustments. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

**Note:** *During any park assist maneuver, the parking aid system will remain active.*

For all park assist modes, follow the instructions on the touchscreen main screen or touchscreen side panel, until the parking or exiting maneuver is complete. See **313, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.

A park assist maneuver cancels if:

- The **park assist** icon is touched. See **313, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.
- The **Cancel** soft key on the park assist side-panel touchscreen is selected. See **313, SELECTING PARK ASSIST**.
- The parking aid system has detected an object that sounds a warning tone for longer than 10 seconds.
- The ABS system is operated.
- A parallel parking maneuver has exceeded the maximum of 9 shuffles.
- A perpendicular parking maneuver has exceeded the maximum of 7 shuffles.
- The park assist instructions are not followed.
- Park (**P**) is selected for more than 10 minutes.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 4 mph (7 km/h).

## Parking features

- Wade sensing is enabled.

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone sounds and the instrument panel displays a warning message. If all of the sensors are clean and the fault is not rectified after an ignition cycle, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

### PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS

#### WARNING

**Park assist is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, good observation and a safe driving style. The driver is responsible for making sure that reversing maneuvers are carried out safely at all times. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not aim a high pressure water jet directly at any of the sensors when washing the vehicle. Only use approved vehicle shampoo. Do not use abrasive materials, or hard or sharp objects, to clean the sensors. Failing to follow these guidelines may result in damage to the system, or a system fault.*

**Note:** *If an approved tow bar is fitted, park assist adjusts to compensate for the extra length.*

The park assist system is not available if:

- The vehicle's speed is greater than 18 mph (30 km/h).
- All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC) is on.
- Wade sensing is active.
- Reverse (R) is selected.
- The suspension height is set to off-road.

- There is a system fault.
- A trailer is connected.

The park assist system may provide inaccurate results if:

- The size or shape of the parking space changes after it was measured.
- There is an irregular curb alongside the parking space, or the curb is covered with leaves, snow, etc.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle.
- The sensors are misaligned due to a minor collision or impact.
- The vehicle had a repair or alteration that was not approved by a retailer/authorized repairer.
- The vehicle is fitted with non-approved wheels or tires.
- The vehicle's tire pressures are not set to the vehicle's recommended specification.
- The vehicle tires have significant tire wear.
- The vehicle is fitted with replacement tires. After the normal running-in period, the system adapts to the replacement tires.
- One of the parked vehicles has an attachment at a raised height such as a flatbed truck, snow plow, or hoist.
- The parking space is located on a corner or bend.
- The sensors are dirty or covered in mud, ice, or snow, etc.
- The weather is foggy, raining, or snowing, etc.
- The road surface is uneven or rutted.



## Parking features

- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is thin or wedge shaped.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction that is elevated and/or protruding, such as ledges or tree branches.
- The vehicle encounters an obstruction with corners and sharp edges.
- A non-approved tow bar or trailer hitch is fitted.
- The sensors are in close proximity to hot exhaust gasses from nearby vehicles.
- The sensors are in close proximity to noise generated from emergency vehicles, motorcycles, etc.
- The sensors have been damaged during vehicle cleaning.
- There may not be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle for the front to swing out during the maneuver.
- The vehicle may have been driven more than 5 ft (1.5 m) from the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven within 16 in (41 cm) to the row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven in Reverse (**R**). Park assist searches for a parking space only when the vehicle is in Drive (**D**).
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

The following may be a reason why park assist has not positioned the vehicle accurately within the space:

- One or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See **317, PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS**.

### PARK ASSIST TROUBLESHOOTING

The following may be a reason why the park assist system is not searching for a parking space:

- The system may not be activated.
- The vehicle may be traveling above 18 mph (30 km/h).
- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow, etc.
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

The following may be a reason why the park assist system does not offer a certain parking space:

- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice, or snow, etc.
- The space may not be large enough to accommodate the vehicle.

## Cameras

## REAR CAMERA

**⚠ WARNING**

The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when maneuvering the vehicle. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

**⚠ WARNING**

The camera must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper that may interfere with the camera. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

**NOTICE**

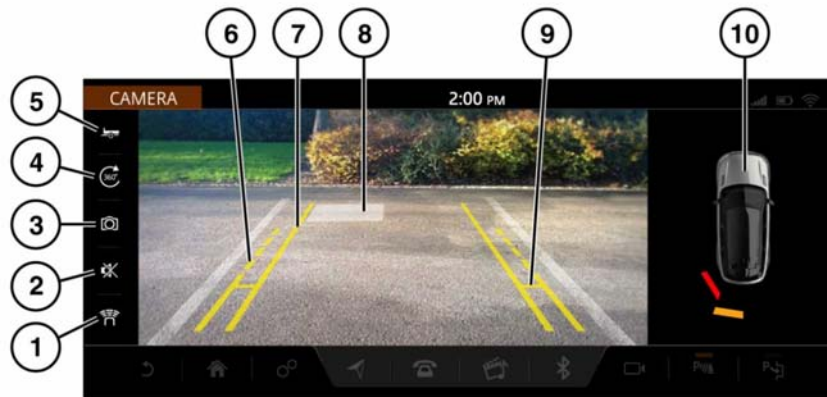
*Some overhanging objects or barriers, which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the camera.*

The rear camera is located above the rear license plate.

When Reverse (**R**) is selected, the touchscreen automatically displays a high definition, color image from the rear of the vehicle. Overlaid on the image are lines to aid with reversing and parking.

**Note:** The rear camera display has priority over the parking aids display and many other touchscreen features. To cancel the rear camera display, at any time, touch the **home** icon or the **return** icon. See **248**, **TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

## Cameras



E204135

1. **Parking aid graphics** icon: Touch to switch the parking aid graphics on or off.
2. **Volume** icon: Touch to lower the volume of the beeps for the parking aid system.
3. **Camera** icon: Touch to select an alternative camera view.
4. **360° surround camera view** icon: Touch for a bird's-eye 360° view of the vehicle and its immediate surroundings, using all of the cameras.
5. **Tow assist** icon: Touch for trailer profile setup. See **144, TOW ASSIST**.
6. **Parking guidance broken lines**: Indicate the safe working width of the vehicle. The door mirrors are included.
7. **Parking guidance solid line**: The projected reversing path, based on the current position of the steering wheel.
8. **Parking aid information**: Colored blocks indicate detected collision threats.

9. **Tailgate access line**: Do not reverse beyond this line if access to the tailgate is required.
10. **Parking aid plan view**: Touch to view the full screen view of the parking aid feature.

The rear camera display discontinues automatically when either of the following apply:

- Drive (D) is selected for longer than 5 seconds.
- Drive (D) is selected and/or the vehicle's speed is greater than 11 mph (18 km/h).

### SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**The driver is responsible for detecting obstacles and estimating the vehicle's distance from them when maneuvering the vehicle. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**



## Cameras

### ⚠ WARNING

The cameras must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud, or insects. Failure to keep the cameras clear may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

### ⚠ WARNING

Do not attach stickers or objects to the cameras. Failure to keep the camera clear from obstructions may result in miscalculations or false indications, which can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

### NOTICE

The camera may not detect some overhanging objects or barriers, which could cause damage to the vehicle.

**Note:** The camera feature becomes inactive when traveling at vehicle speeds above 10 mph (6 km/h).

The surround camera system consists of four cameras, located as follows:

- One is located in the center of the front lower grille.
- One is located underneath each of the exterior door mirrors.
- One is located just above the rear license plate.

**Note:** The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.



E216248

1. **Parking aid plan view:** Touch to view the full screen view of the parking aid feature.
2. **Camera icon:** Touch to select the camera feature.
3. **Settings icon:** Touch to select the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu.
  - **Parking guidance:** Select **ON** or **OFF**.

## Cameras

- **Parking aid graphics:** Select **ON** or **OFF**.
- **Parking aid plan view:** Select **ON** or **OFF**.
- **Default camera view selection:** Touch **List** to setup.

**Note:** Depending on the vehicle specification, the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu may include further camera settings. When the list includes six or more feature settings, a scroll bar is displayed.

4. **Parking aid graphics** icon: Touch to switch the parking aid graphics on or off.
5. **Volume** icon: Touch to lower the volume of the parking aid warning tones.
6. **Camera selection** icon: Touch to select an alternative camera view:
  - Front camera view.
  - Front intersection view.
  - Door mirror camera view.
  - Rear intersection camera view.
  - Rear camera view.

**Note:** When **camera selection** icon (6) is touched, a pop-out menu is displayed to select an alternative camera view.

7. **360° surround camera view** icon: Touch for a bird's-eye 360° view of the vehicle and its immediate surroundings, using all of the cameras.
8. **Tow assist** icon: Touch for trailer profile setup. See **144, TOW ASSIST**.

### Camera shortcuts



The function of the **camera** icon varies, depending on the selected gear and the vehicle's road speed. The camera function gives the following options:

- When in a forward gear, at speeds below 6 mph (10 km/h):
  - Press once to select the front intersection view.
  - Press twice to select the rear intersection view.
  - Press a third time to return to the front intersection view.
- When in Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**):
  - Press once to select the 360° surround camera view.
  - Press twice to select the front intersection view.
  - Press a third time to select the rear intersection view.
- When in Reverse (**R**):
  - Press once to select the rear intersection view.
  - Press twice to select the front intersection view.
  - Press a third time to return to the rear intersection view.

### Pan and zoom tools

When in a full screen view of a camera image, touch the image to display the pan and zoom tools. The pan and zoom tools allow the image to be viewed at three levels of detail and can be manipulated left, right, up, and down. Double tap the image to jump to the middle level of zoomed detail and allow the same pan and zoom functionality.

## FORWARD VEHICLE GUIDANCE

**Note:** Forward vehicle guidance is only available with a surround camera system.

Forward vehicle guidance provides touchscreen views of the area directly ahead of the vehicle that may not be visible to the driver. The touchscreen displays the projected forward steering path, based on the current steering wheel position. Object detection ahead is also included when front parking aid sensors are active. The feature can be useful when maneuvering through a narrow gap or around obstacles.

The projected steering path and object detection can be enabled or disabled via the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu. See **320, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM**.

Forward vehicle guidance activates when the plan view, or front camera view, is selected from the **CAMERA** screen. The projected forward steering path and object detection ahead displays when the vehicle is in a forward gear or in Neutral (**N**). The vehicle must be traveling at less than 10 mph (16 km/h).

**Note:** If a fault is detected with the front parking aid sensors, the touchscreen displays a warning message. If all of the sensors are clean, and after the vehicle's electrical system is restarted the issue persists, contact a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.



## Phone

### PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW

#### WARNING

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**Note:** The touchscreen displays the list in the order that the calls were recorded. If this information is not available on the connected phone, the list displays as sent from the phone. Some phones may arrange the list in another order.

**Note:** The system removes duplicate entries of the same call type from the same caller. For example, multiple calls from the same caller are reduced to one call.

**Note:** Duplicated icons can be operated on the lower touchscreen when the phone widget is displayed. Further information on the lower touchscreen can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

**Note:** The availability and functionality of **Messages** depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is being used.

The phone system can be operated and viewed via the touchscreen, lower touchscreen, or instrument panel.

To access phone features, a phone must be paired with the vehicle. Further information on pairing a phone can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **328, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

To access the **PHONE** screen, touch **Phone (3)** on the touchscreen **HOME** screen. See **248, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

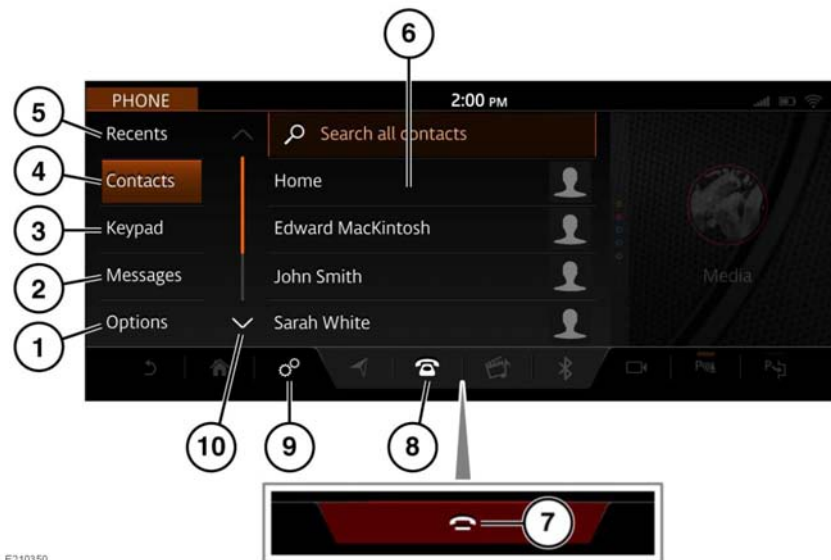
To access **PHONE** screen on the lower touchscreen, swipe left or right, until the **PHONE** screen displays. If the **PHONE** screen does not display, setup is required within the lower touchscreen display settings. See **259, LOWER TOUCH SCREEN DISPLAY SETTINGS**.

Alternatively, to access **PHONE** screen in the instrument panel, press the **MENU** button to activate the instrument panel menu. Search **Phone** and press **OK**. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The phone system can also be operated via voice commands. Further information on voice control can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **348, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

## Phone

### Phone system: Touchscreen



E210350

1. **Options:** Touch to access the following options:
  - **Voicemail.**
  - **Change phone.**
  - **Auto reject.**
2. **Messages:** Touch to display a list of received messages.
3. **Keypad:** Touch to access the keypad dialing mode.
4. **Contacts:** Touch to view the downloaded contacts.
5. **Recents:** Touch to display a list of recently dialed, received, and missed calls. When a call is unanswered or missed, the number is indicated in the top right corner of the **Recents** soft key.
6. **Feature display:** The selected feature is displayed in this area.
7. **End call icon:** When a call is in progress, the **end call** icon is displayed. Press to end the call.
8. **Phone icon:** Touch to select the **PHONE** screen. When the **PHONE** screen is selected, the icon changes to an active icon. Touch the icon to select an alternative paired phone. Alternatively, when receiving an incoming call, an active green icon displays. Touch to answer the incoming call.
9. **Settings icon:** Touch to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select one of the following options to manage the features: **Settings for all phones**, **Settings for 'name of phone'**, and **Bluetooth settings**.

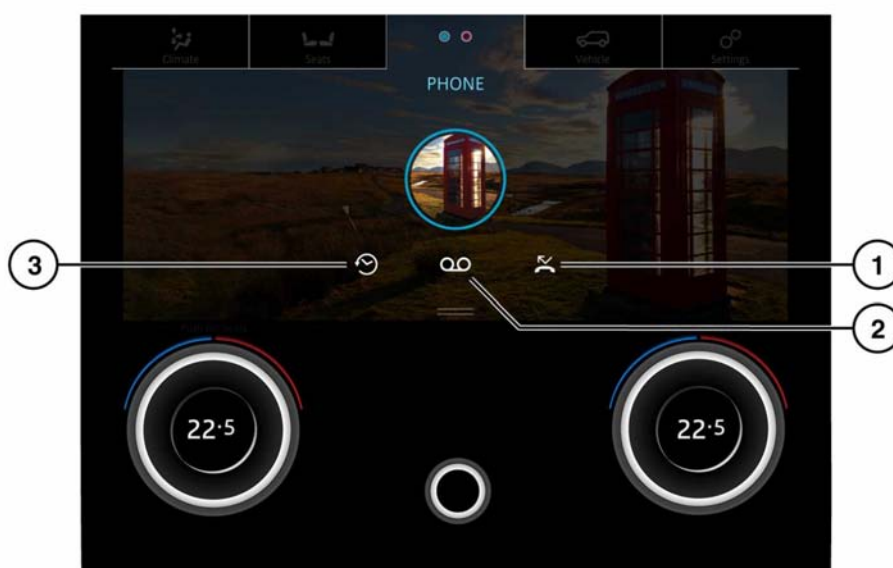


## Phone

- 10.** Scroll bar: If more than five features are available, touch the scroll bar or arrows to move up or down the list. Alternatively, swipe the list in the direction required.

## Phone

## Phone system: Lower touchscreen



E200698

1. **Auto-reject** icon: Touch to access auto-reject options.
2. **Voicemail** icon: Touch to access voicemail options.
3. **Recents** icon: Touch to display a list of recently dialed, received, and missed calls.

## PHONE SAFETY

**⚠ WARNING**

Switch off the phone in areas with a high explosion risk, e.g., filling stations, fuel storage areas, or chemical factories. Further high explosion risks are found where the air contains fuel vapor, chemicals, or metal dust. The phone could trigger an explosion or cause a fire.



## Phone

### **⚠️ WARNING**

Always store the phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.

### **⚠️ WARNING**

The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or the device's manufacturer whether any such devices that the vehicle's occupants are using are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

### **⚠️ WARNING**

Even when using the Bluetooth® wireless technology hands-free feature, using the phone while driving is dangerous. The use of a phone diverts the driver's attention from the traffic situation. When using the phone, stop at an appropriate place where other vehicles are not endangered or inconvenienced.

### **⚠️ WARNING**

Drivers should talk on the phone only when it is safe to do so and when such use does not distract the driver from the road. In some states, it is illegal to use the phone while driving.

### **⚠️ WARNING**

Drivers should never text message while driving. Texting while driving diverts attention from the road and can lead to accidents, which may cause serious injury or death.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 8.7 in (22 cm) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker. The recommendation is to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. The recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

### **PHONE COMPATIBILITY**

Please refer to the **OWNERSHIP** section of the website at: [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com) for a list of compatible phones.

**Note:** The Bluetooth® wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage, and the network provider. Phones are warranted by the phone manufacturer, not by the vehicle manufacturer.

### **PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**

**Note:** The process of pairing and connecting with the vehicle, from the phone, varies depending on the type of phone used.

**Note:** The process of pairing and connecting the phone is the same for both the touchscreen and the lower touchscreen.

Pairing and connecting a phone:

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure that the touchscreen or lower touchscreen is active.



## Phone

2. When pairing a device for the first time, select **Tap to connect phone** from the touchscreen **HOME** screen. See **248, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**. Alternatively, select **Tap to connect phone** from the lower touchscreen **PHONE** screen. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**. The vehicle's **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device is discoverable.
3. Using the phone, search for **Bluetooth** devices. On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See the phone's operating instructions for further information. The vehicle's discoverable **Bluetooth** name is the same as the vehicle's name.
4. When the vehicle's name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes**, when prompted, to confirm the pairing. Alternatively, some older phones request a PIN to be entered. Either enter the PIN **1234**, or select **Yes**, to confirm that the PIN displayed on the phone matches the vehicle's PIN.
5. If there is a prompt for a **phonebook** or **contacts** download, accept it. See **331, CONTACTS**.  
***Note:** When prompted on the user's phone, allow vehicle access to download the phonebook or contacts.*
6. Once the phone is paired and connected to the system, select the **return** icon or the **PHONE** screen. See **248, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**. See **251, LOWER TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS**.

**Note:** Some phones require the **Bluetooth** device pairing to be set as authorized or trusted, in order to automatically connect. Refer to the phone's operating instructions for further information.

To select the paired phone's settings, select the **settings** icon from the **PHONE** screen. Select **Phone settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. A list of all paired phones is displayed. Touch the paired phone's name.

Paired phones have the option to be used as a phone, a media device, or both. Device types can be selected via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All settings**, and then select **Connectivity**. In the connectivity list select **Bluetooth**, and then the **Paired devices** list to manage any devices.

### MANAGING TWO CALLS

**Note:** When more than two calls, e.g., a conference call, are active on the phone when connecting to the vehicle's phone system, the calls are maintained. However, a maximum of two call details are displayed. When more than two calls are in progress when connecting, any calls that are not active, i.e., on hold or incoming, are rejected.

Two calls can be taken on the same phone. Notification is given when a second call is received. When accepting a second call, the first call is automatically put on hold.

Alternatively, a second call can be dialed from the displayed screen options. From the screen options, select **Add Call** and then **Contacts** to display the list of contacts. Select **Keypad** to enter the number.

## Phone

When there are two separate calls, the **hold** icon changes to a **swap** icon. Touch the **swap** icon, or the contact's name or number, to swap between the current call and the call on hold.

Touch and hold the **end call** icon to end the current call and return to the remaining call. Touch the **end call** icon to end both calls.

### MERGE CALLS

If two calls are in progress on the same phone, both calls can be merged into one conference call. Select the displayed **Merge** option.

While the calls are merged, touch the **hold** icon or the **mute** icon to mute both calls. Alternatively, touch the **end call** icon to end both calls.

**Merge** cannot be deselected. If one caller ends the call, the remaining call stays active.

### PHONE SYSTEM ICONS

Depending on the part of the phone system in use, the following icons display on the touch screen:



**Call** icon: Touch to send or accept a call.



**End call** icon: Touch to end or reject a call.



**Hold** icon: Touch to hold a call. Touch again to return to the call.



**Swap** icon: Touch to swap between connected calls.



**Handset** icon: Touch to switch the call to the phone handset.



**Mute** icon: Touch to mute the microphone and initiate privacy mode. While selected, the caller cannot hear the conversation.



Phone signal strength indicator.



Phone battery level indicator.

### STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS



E200717

1. Press to increase the volume. Sweep clockwise to increase the volume during a call.
2. Press to decrease the volume. Sweep counter-clockwise to decrease the volume during a call.

## Phone

3. Press to answer an incoming call. Press again to end a call. Press to access the recent calls list on the touch screen. Press and hold to access the contacts list on the touch screen.

4. Phone not in use.

5. Press to end a call.

**Note:** The user must scroll through a contact list by touching the touchscreen.

**Note:** Press and hold button **3** to display the contact list on the touchscreen.

### PHONE CALL VOLUME

While a phone call is active, rotate the media system's volume control to adjust the call volume. Alternatively, adjust via the steering wheel controls. See **330, STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS**.

If the media system is in use when a phone call is active, the media system source is muted for the duration of the call.

### MICROPHONE VOLUME

The microphone's volume can be adjusted. Select **Phone Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, followed by the **Settings** option for the required phone. To adjust the **Microphone Volume**, touch **+** or **-** to adjust to the required level.

### CONTACTS

Contacts stored in the memory of a paired phone can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle's **Contacts** list. The contact list is downloaded each time the phone is connected to the system. See **328, PHONE COMPATIBILITY**.

Certain phones store the contacts in two different areas: the SIM card and the phone's memory. The vehicle's system accesses only those numbers stored in the phone's memory.

To access contacts on touchscreen:

1. From the **PHONE** screen, select **Contacts**. See **324, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. Use the scroll bar, or swipe the list, to search the list alphabetically.
3. Identify the required contact from the displayed list. Touch to call. When a contact has more than one number stored, select the required number from the list.

**Note:** To view the entire list, use the scroll bar.

To access contacts on lower touchscreen:

1. From the **PHONE** screen, select the **recents** icon. See **324, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
2. Swipe the list, to view the most recently dialed, received, or missed contact.
3. Identify the required contact from the displayed list. Touch to call.

To access contacts via the instrument panel:

1. Select **Phone** from the instrument panel menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
2. Select **Recents** from the **Phone** menu.
3. Use the steering wheel controls to scroll through the displayed list. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.
4. Identify the required contact from the displayed list. Press **OK** on the steering wheel controls to call.



## Phone

If the phone supports contact cards, contact information can be viewed in the vehicle's **Contacts** list.

The order in which the **Contacts** list is displayed can be changed:

1. Select the **settings** icon from the **PHONE** screen.
2. Select **Phone Settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
3. Select the required phone. Select **First name** or **Last name** to change the display for the connected phone.

To delete the **Contacts** list:

1. Select the **settings** icon from the **PHONE** screen.
2. Select **Phone settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
3. Select **Delete from car** for the connected phone.

See **324, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

Once the **Contacts** list is deleted, **Auto update contacts** is unavailable for selection until the paired phone's contact list is downloaded again.

**Note:** If a contact, or the **Contacts** list, is deleted, incoming calls display the number but no name.

### DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

#### Export controls

The product contains commodities, technology, or software exported from the United States (US) in accordance with the Export Administration regulations. Diversion contrary to US or Canadian law is prohibited.

#### United States of America

The device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device may not cause harmful interference.
2. The device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Note:** The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### Canada

The device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC-RSS-210 and IC-RSS-251. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. The device may not cause interference.
2. The device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

The equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC Radio Frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC Radio Frequency (RF) Exposure rules. The equipment has very low levels of RF energy that is deemed to comply without Maximum Permissible Exposure evaluation (MPE).

But it is desirable that it should be fitted and operated with at least 8 in (20 cm) and more between the radiator and person's body, excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet, and ankles.

## Phone

USA FCC ID: A269ZUA130.

Canada IC: 700BIAM2101.

**Note:** Changes or modifications, not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

**Note:** The equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. The equipment limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential fitment.

The equipment generates, uses, and can radiate Radio Frequency (RF) energy.

When not fitted and used in accordance with the instructions, the equipment may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular fitment.

If the equipment causes harmful interference to radio or television reception, when turning the equipment off and on. The user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the retailer/authorized repairer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

## RECEIVING TEXT MESSAGES

**⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**⚠ WARNING**

**Drivers should never text message while driving. Texting while driving diverts attention from the road and can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**Note:** The message feature is not compatible with all phones. For further information please refer to the Land Rover website at: [www.landrover.com](http://www.landrover.com).

**Note:** The availability and functionality of **Messages** depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is being used.

**Note:** The **Messages** soft key does not display on the touchscreen, if the user declines access via the mobile phone to download messages.

To access text messages via the touchscreen, a phone must be paired with the vehicle. For further information on pairing a phone, can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **328, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

When receiving an incoming text message, the touchscreen displays either a pop up or banner notification.

A pop up notification displays the following options:

## Phone



**Call icon:** Touch to call the sender of the text message.

**Read out** soft key: Touch for the text message to be read out as an audio message.

Alternatively, a banner notification informs the driver a new message is received. The received message can only be viewed in the **Messages** list.

To access the **Messages** list on the touchscreen:

- From the **PHONE** screen, select **Messages**. See **324, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.
- Use the scroll bar, to search the list.
- Identify the required text message from the displayed list and select.
- The selected message allows for the following options:
  - Call.
  - Read out.
  - Reply: Provides a list of templates that the user can reply with, e.g., **Please give me a call** or **Can't talk right now**. Select the required reply. Alternatively, the user can edit and create a message template to reply with.

**Note:** The **Reply** option is only available when the vehicle is stationary.

The user can access received messages and send replies via voice commands. For further information can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **348, USING VOICE CONTROL**.

To view message settings, select the **settings** icon. See **324, PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW**.

Select **Phone settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

Select **Settings for all phones** from the **PHONE SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

The following options are available:

- **Sort order**
- **Messaging**
- **Message tones**
- **Message alert**
- **Edit message templates.**

## Bluetooth®

## BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION



**Bluetooth®** wireless technology is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

**Note:** The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc and any use of such marks by Jaguar Land Rover Limited is under license.

The vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology system supports **Bluetooth** wireless technology Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP), and Message Access Profile (MAP).

**Note:** HFP, A2DP and AVRCP profiles can be connected independently. A phone can be connected via one profile, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.

Before making use of the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology phone system, the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device must be paired and connected to the vehicle's system. The recommended method of connection is via the device to the vehicle. See **328, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's system attempts to connect with the last connected phone or media device.

Phones and media devices have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics. The vehicle's system may take a few seconds to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the media sound volume and also reduce the ventilation fan speed slightly.

**Note:** Some device's require the **Bluetooth** wireless technology device pairing feature to be set as authorized or trusted in order to automatically connect. Refer to the device's operating instructions for further information.

## Navigation

### THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

#### WARNING

**In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

**Note:** The speed camera alert feature is not available in certain markets.

**Note:** The speed camera alert feature can be enabled or disabled in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **344, SETTINGS**.

**Note:** Certain features and location-based services utilize the vehicle's current location. Features that are able to utilize mobile data, and the vehicle's location, can be managed in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **344, SETTINGS**.

Navigation instruction is by map and turn information displayed on the touchscreen and in the instrument panel, and can be complemented by voice guidance. The system uses signals from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites, and information from vehicle sensors and data stored on the hard drive. The vehicle's position is established using this information.

Using this combination of data sources, the vehicle's navigation computer enables the driver to plan and follow a route map to the desired destination.

The touchscreen is used to control navigation via menus and map displays. The vehicle's instrument panel can be set up to display navigation instructions and maps.

The requirements of national Road Traffic Regulations always apply.

Observation of traffic signs and local traffic regulations always take priority.

The navigation system serves solely as an aid to navigation. In particular, the navigation system cannot be used as an aid to orientation when visibility is poor.

GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as roads under raised highways, and tunnels.

However, direction and speed sensors on the vehicle minimize any adverse effect on the navigation system. Normal operation resumes once the obstruction has been passed.

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position shown on the screen to be incorrect. Incorrect vehicle positioning may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on or beneath elevated roads.
- Driving between tall buildings.
- Two roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another location.
- The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
- The vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

### USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

#### WARNING

**In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**



## Navigation

### ⚠ WARNING

The navigation system is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Drivers should not assume that a feature will correct errors in judgement when driving. The driver is responsible for staying alert, driving safely, and for being in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. The driver is responsible for determining the safety of the route suggested by the navigation system. The navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.

### ⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

To access the navigation system, touch the **Navigation** soft key on the touchscreen's **HOME** menu. Alternatively, select the **navigation** icon. See **248, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

**Note:** A first time user should set up personal preferences in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. Personal preferences include settings for managing which features can connect to the internet when on the home network or while roaming. The settings are applied whenever navigation is used. See **344, SETTINGS**.



E200805



## Navigation

When navigation is selected and the vehicle is stationary, the navigation system displays a map view of the current vehicle position. The touchscreen displays a side panel containing access tiles.

**Note:** The quick access tiles act as shortcuts, to allow quick access to certain navigation system functionality.

**Note:** The quick access tiles are hidden when the vehicle's speed reaches a predetermined level. The quick access tiles do not display again until the ignition is switched off and back on again. If required, the options can be accessed via the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **344, SETTINGS**.

**Note:** If the navigation system is started when the vehicle's speed is already above the predetermined level, the quick access tiles do not display.

Control the navigation system as follows:

1. **Scroll bar:** Touch to scroll up or down the tile list.
2. **Quick access tile options:** Options include:
  - My commute.
  - Fuel search.
  - Recent destinations.
  - Home.
  - License information.
3. **The current vehicle position and direction.**

4. **View options icon:** Touch to select **2D**, **3D**, **North facing**, or **Satellite** map view. When guidance is active, combination views based on **2D**, **3D**, **North facing**, and **Satellite** map views become available, such as **Traffic**, **Maneuvers**, **Compass**, **Full route**, and **Route remaining**. See **345, VIEW OPTIONS**.

**Note:** Internet connectivity is required for satellite map view.

5. **Navigation menu icon:** Touch to select the **NAVIGATION MENU**. See **339, MAIN MENU**.
6. **Settings icon:** Touch to select the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Navigation settings** to view or adjust the settings. See **344, SETTINGS**.
7. **Return icon:** Touch to return to a higher menu level.

When the vehicle is in motion and no active route is selected, an assistance map is displayed.

## Navigation

### MAIN MENU

#### ⚠ WARNING

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.



E209467



When displayed, touch the **navigation menu** icon to access the **NAVIGATION MENU**.

**Note:** Some of the options listed are only available when a route has been selected.

The following options are available:

1. **Type a place name, category or address:** Provides a choice of options for typing an address, destination, or search for a Point of Interest (POI). See **340, ADDRESS ENTRY** and **341, PLACES**.
2. **Search:** Type the required text into the search box. See **341, SEARCH**.

3. **Places:** Select from the Point of Interest (POI) categories listed. See **341, PLACES**.
4. **Your Destinations:** Displays saved locations, e.g., home address, saved favorites, and the most recent destinations.

## Navigation

**Note:** When signed into a Touch Pro Duo navigation profile and InControl navigation account, destinations can be automatically synchronized. Destinations are synchronized between the vehicle, the internet, and the **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app. See **356, CONNECTED NAVIGATION SET-UP** and **357, CONNECTED NAVIGATION**.

5. **Enter address** icon: Touch to enter a full detailed address. See **340, ADDRESS ENTRY**.
6. **Mute**: Touch to mute the navigation system's voice guidance.
7. **Stop Guidance**: Cancels the current route guidance, if a route is selected.
8. **Edit**: Touch to edit the current route. See **345, EDIT ROUTE**.

### ADDRESS ENTRY

To enter a full address:

1. Touch **Type a place name, category or address** box on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen. Alternatively, touch the **Search** soft key on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen. See **339, MAIN MENU**.
2. Touch the **enter address** icon on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen. See **339, MAIN MENU**.
3. Input the following information:
  - **Country, State, or Province**.
  - **City, Town, or Zip code**. Previous entries and narrowed search results are displayed. Select the required entry and touch **Ok**.

- **Street name, Number, or Intersection**, if applicable. Previous entries and narrowed search results are displayed. Select the required entry and touch **Ok**.

4. The map displays the entered location, as the address is entered. If the location displayed is correct, touch **Show place details** to confirm.
5. The navigation system calculates and displays a map with the entered location, destination address, and the most appropriate route.
6. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.
7. If the highlighted route is not the desired route, select **Route options** to change the route. The navigation system displays the distance and ETA for each route.
8. Select the chosen route. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

**Note:** The navigation system calculates the routes, based on the selected route preferences, e.g., avoiding toll roads or ferries. The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required via the **Route preferences** soft key.

**Note:** An address can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected. See **345, EDIT ROUTE**.

**Note:** Previous entries, or search results as they are narrowed, are displayed on the touchscreen, behind the keyboard. If required, touch the **hide the keyboard** icon<sup>1</sup> for better access to display results.



Hide keyboard icon<sup>1</sup>.

## Navigation

### SEARCH

To search for a place name, category or address:

1. Touch **Type a place name, category or address** box or **Search** soft key on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen. See **339, MAIN MENU**.

2. Input the required destination and select the required entry.

**Note:** Touch the **hide keyboard** icon<sup>1</sup> to view the search results. Touch the text box to continue typing.

3. The navigation system calculates and displays a map with the entered location, destination address, and the most appropriate route.

4. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

5. If the highlighted route is not the desired route, select **Route options** to change the route. The navigation system displays the distance and ETA for each route.

**Note:** The navigation system calculates the routes, based on the selected route preferences, e.g., avoiding toll roads or ferries. The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required via the **Route preferences** soft key.

6. Select the chosen route. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

If a route is already active, the following list of search areas are available from the drop-down menu:

- **Along the route.**
- **Most relevant.**
- Near the waypoint **1, 2, or 3**, etc.

**Note:** The selected route must include one or more waypoints for this option to be available.

- Input the search choice into the text box. Touch the **hide keyboard** icon<sup>1</sup> to view the search results. Touch the text box to continue typing.
- Select the search result from the list provided.
- Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

**Note:** An address can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected.

**Note:** Previous entries, or search results as they are narrowed, are displayed on the touchscreen, behind the keyboard. If required, touch the **hide keyboard** icon<sup>1</sup> for better access to display results.



**Hide keyboard icon<sup>1</sup>.**

### PLACES

To search for Points of Interests (POI):

- Touch the **Places** soft key on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen. See **339, MAIN MENU**.
- Select a search category from the list:
  - **Gas Station**
  - **Eat & Drink**
  - **Parking Facility**
  - **ATM/Bank/Exchange**
  - **Public Toiler/Rest Area**
  - **Shopping**
  - **Going Out**
  - **Leisure & Outdoor**
  - **Accommodation**
  - **Car Dealer/Repairer**



## Navigation

- **Hospital or Healthcare Facility**
- **Airport**
- **Transport.**

**Note:** Fuel stations can be sorted by the price of the fuel. See **357, CONNECTED NAVIGATION**.

- Select the search result from the list provided.
- The navigation system calculates and displays a map with the entered location, destination address and the most appropriate route.
- Touch **Start** to begin navigation.
- If the highlighted route is not the desired route, select **Route options** to change the route. The navigation system displays the distance and ETA for each route.

**Note:** The navigation system calculates the routes, based on the selected route preferences, e.g., avoiding toll roads or ferries. The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required via the **Route preferences** soft key.

- Select the chosen route. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

The following details and options may also be available:

- **POI phone number:** Touch to view the POIs phone number and to phone the POI, if required.
- **Add to favorites:** Touch to add the selected POI to favorites.
- **Nearest parking lot:** Touch to search for nearby parking lot, if the selected destination or waypoint is not a parking lot.

- Extra information, e.g., postal address, opening times, reviews, and photographic view of the POI.

**Note:** A POI or address can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected.

**Note:** If the vehicle is connected to the internet, the search function can be performed using cloud-based information. The feature can be enabled and disabled in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **344, SETTINGS**.

If a route is already active, the following list of search areas are available from the drop-down menu:

- **Along the route.**
- **Most relevant.**  
**Along the route.**
- Near the waypoint **1, 2, or 3**, etc.

**Note:** The selected route must include one or more waypoints for this option to be available.

- **Near your destination.**

## Navigation

### MAP SPLIT SCREEN



E200452

When a route has been selected, the navigation system displays a guidance map.

1. The current vehicle position and direction.
2. Active route: Next direction display.
3. Selected extra view option: **Traffic**, **Maneuvers**, **Compass**, **Full route**, and **Route remaining**.
4. **View options** icon: Press to select the **2D**, **3D**, **North facing**, or **Satellite** map view.  
*Note: Internet connectivity is required for satellite map view.*
5. Information bar: Displays information including the time, distance, and the ETA.
6. **Settings** icon: Touch to select the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Navigation settings** to view or adjust the settings. See **344, SETTINGS**.

7. Current location.

8. **Return** icon: Touch to return to a higher menu level.

9. **Navigation menu** icon: Touch to access the **NAVIGATION MENU**. See **339, MAIN MENU**.

### MAP AUTO ZOOM

When auto-zoom is enabled, the map automatically zooms in when the vehicle is traveling at slow speeds and zooms out when traveling at higher speeds.

Auto-zoom can be enabled and disabled in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **344, SETTINGS**.

### REAR SEAT NAVIGATION

The navigation system can be viewed from the rear screens and operated via the rear screen's remote.



## Navigation

**Note:** The navigation features available on the rear screens are different from the front touchscreen.

Rear seat passengers can monitor the selected route, e.g., ETA, distance to destination, etc., and view or suggest new locations.

To view the navigation map on a rear screen, select the **home** button on the remote control. Use the cursor controls to select **Navigation**. Press the **OK** button to confirm.

To view the navigation menu, press the **OK** button again. Use the cursor controls to select **Search**, **Browse map**, or **Settings**.

Select **Search**, to display a list of options for selecting a new location. After selecting a new location, select **To Driver**. The driver receives a prompt on the front touchscreen to accept or refuse the selection. See **293, REAR SEAT REMOTE CONTROL** and **295, REAR SEAT SCREENS OVERVIEW**.

### SETTINGS

To view the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu, select the **settings** icon. See **336, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

Select **Navigation settings** from the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

The following options are available:

- **Profile:**
  - **Edit profile:** Edit or set up a Touch Pro Duo profile. See **356, CONNECTED NAVIGATION SET-UP**.
  - **Connected feature settings:** Manage mobile data usage and roaming usage.

- **Map views:**
  - **Map features:** Enable or disable from a list of available features.
  - **Auto-zoom:** Enable or disable auto-zoom. See **343, MAP AUTO ZOOM**.
- **Navigation:**
  - **Route options:** Select to avoid certain road features.
  - **Alerts:** Enable or disable from a list of alerts. See **345, ALERTS**.
- **Advanced:**
  - **Keyboard layouts:** Select extra keyboard layouts.
  - **Manage profile data:** Clear the search history or delete all profile data.
  - **My Commute:** Enable or disable **My Commute** feature.
- **About:**
  - **App details:** View details of the installed navigation system.
  - **Installed maps and updates:** View the details of the maps currently loaded to the vehicle's navigation system, and check for any updates to installed maps. See **346, MAP UPDATES**.
  - **Help topics:** Provides the user information on how to use the navigation system.
  - **Connected services licences:** View connected services licence details.

### NAVIGATION SYSTEM VOLUME

To adjust the volume of the navigation voice guidance, rotate the media system's volume control while spoken guidance is given. See **260, MEDIA CONTROLS**.



## Navigation

**Note:** The volume of the safety camera alert feature is linked to voice guidance volume.

### EDIT ROUTE

A waypoint can be added or deleted, a route rearranged, or a round trip created for a selected route.

**Note:** Waypoints can also be added from the **Search, Places, or Your Destinations** soft key on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen, or by selecting a point on the map. See **339, MAIN MENU**.

Touch the **Edit** soft key on the **NAVIGATION MENU** screen to edit a route. See **339, MAIN MENU**.

The following options can be selected:

- **Add waypoint:** Touch to add a waypoint to the current route.
- **Remove waypoint:** Touch the **trash can** icon<sup>1</sup> to remove the waypoint from the current route.
- **Change the order of the waypoints:** Touch the up and down arrows to re-order the waypoints.
- **Return Journey:** Touch to make a selected destination into a round trip.

**Note:** The return journey does not include any of the selected waypoints. If waypoints are required, the waypoints must be added in the normal manner.



Trash can icon<sup>1</sup>.

### VIEW OPTIONS

Touch the **view options** icon on the map to view the **VIEW OPTIONS** screen. See **336, USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

The navigation map and guidance views can be adjusted as follows:

- **2D:** Flat two-dimensional view.
- **3D:** Three-dimensional perspective view.
- **North facing:** Map view displays in the north position.
- **Satellite:** Bird's-eye view of the surroundings.  
**Note:** Satellite view requires an internet connection.
- **Traffic:** Displays any traffic delays on a selected route.
- **Maneuvers:** Displays a detailed view of the next intersection or turn.
- **Full route:** View of the full route.
- **Compass:** Displays a digital compass, with the vehicle's heading displayed in degrees.
- **Route remaining:** View of the remaining route.

### ALERTS

**Alerts** can be selected from the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **344, SETTINGS**.

The following options are available:

- **Show maneuver details:** A list of the next required maneuvers.
- **Show traffic:** Notification of traffic delays.
- **Intersection view:** Active on multi-lane highways, when approaching an intersection. Intersection view displays the lane information for the next intersection.
- **Safety camera:** Notification of safety cameras.

## Navigation

- **Low fuel:** Available online and offline. Fuel stations are listed by price. The preferred station name and type of fuel can be selected.

### FAVORITES

When detailed information is displayed about an address or place, tap the **add favorite** icon<sup>1</sup> and the place is added to the list of favorites.

Displayed information that is already a favorite displays the **edit favorite** icon<sup>2</sup>. Touch the **edit favorite** icon<sup>2</sup> to view information about the favorite location. The **edit favorite** icon<sup>2</sup> gives the option to change the icon and name, or to delete it from the list of favorites.

If no route is selected, select the required favorite to set it as a destination. If a route is selected, select the required favorite to add it as a waypoint.

**Note:** When signed into a Touch Pro Duo navigation profile and InControl navigation account, destinations can be automatically synchronized. Destinations are synchronized between the vehicle, the internet, and the **Land Rover InControl Route Planner** smartphone app. See **356, CONNECTED NAVIGATION SET-UP** and **357, CONNECTED NAVIGATION**.



Add favorite icon<sup>1</sup>.



Edit favorite icon<sup>2</sup>.

### MAP UPDATES

#### NOTICE

*During any map update, the USB drive must not be removed, or the ignition switched off, before the update is complete. Doing so cancels the map update and potentially leaves the system without any available map data.*

**Note:** Due to the map data file size, it is recommended that a USB 3.0 memory device is used to update the map data.

**Note:** The vehicle must be stationary to enable the map update to start. Once the update process has started, the vehicle may be driven.

**Note:** The navigation system cannot be interacted with until the map update is complete. If a route was active before the map update started, the navigation guidance is limited to voice guidance only.

The map data in the navigation system can be updated using two methods:

- Downloading the updated map data to a USB memory device. Insert the USB drive into the USB socket. Follow the on-screen instructions within the navigation system to update the maps. Map data can be downloaded from the website: [www.landrover.com/navigation](http://www.landrover.com/navigation).

**Note:** Only the USB sockets in the center console cubby box can be used for map updates. See **112, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**.

- Online updates are also offered however the vehicle requires an internet connection to enable the feature.

## Navigation

Information on the installed maps is available in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **344, SETTINGS**.

For further information on navigation system updates, please visit: [www.landrover.com/navigation](http://www.landrover.com/navigation) or contact an retailer/authorized repairer.

### FUEL FINDER

When the fuel level falls below a predetermined level, an alert is triggered and the navigation system searches for nearby fuel stations.

Preferred fuel stations can be stored in the **Alerts** menu. See **345, ALERTS**.

The alert can be enabled and disabled in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. See **344, SETTINGS**.

### INSTRUMENT PANEL VIEW

**Note:** The availability and functionality of navigation maps displayed on the instrument panel depends on the specification of the vehicle.

The instrument panel can be set up to show a view of a full navigation map or a mini navigation map, depending on the instrument panel set up.

**Note:** In this view, essential information, e.g., vehicle speed, fuel level, range, etc., is displayed as an information bar in the instrument panel.

Navigation video turn instructions are also available to the user and are displayed on the instrument panel and Head-Up Display (HUD).

**Note:** Navigation turn instructions are only displayed if route guidance is active.

To display a full navigation map view in the instrument panel, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

### CONNECTED NAVIGATION

A number of features are available that utilize **Connected Navigation**. See **357, CONNECTED NAVIGATION**.

**Note:** Unless stated otherwise, the features listed require an internet connection to function.

The **Connected Navigation** features include:

- **Real Time Traffic Information.**
- **Online Routing.**
- **One Box Search.**
- **Planning Routes and Door to Door Routing.**
- **Share ETA.**
- **Satellite Views.**
- **Street Level Imagery.**
- **Fuel Price Service.**
- **Commute Mode.**
- **Parking Service.**
- **Safety Cameras.**

**Note:** User preferences are available in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu. The settings for managing which features can connect to the internet when on the home network or while roaming can also be applied. See **344, SETTINGS**.

## Voice control

### USING VOICE CONTROL



E218629

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.**

- 1. Voice button:** Press briefly to start a voice session. Press and hold to cancel a voice session.  
A voice session cancels, if:
  - A higher priority activity occurs.
  - The touchscreen displays a warning.
  - There is no user input for a sustained length of time.
- 2. Command list:** Is displayed on the touchscreen, providing feedback and some example commands at each stage of the voice session. Say or select an available command.

The related screen is displayed, when the spoken instructions are understood. The voice session can then continue either manually or by voice. The command bar, at the top of the screen, displays available commands at each stage of the conversation.

- 3. Exit soft key:** Touch to cancel and exit the current voice session and continue manually.

To assist the operation of the voice control, speak the following commands at any time:

- Help.
- Cancel.
- Go back.
- Replay.

**Note:** The voice system has been designed to recognize multiple languages. However, it cannot be guaranteed that the system is compatible with every accent group within those languages.

## Voice control

### VOICE TUTORIAL

To listen to a tutorial detailing the operation of the voice system:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound, then say voice tutorial.

Alternatively, from the **HOME** screen, select the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. Select **Voice**. Select **Tutorial**. See **349, VOICE SETTINGS**.

The voice tutorial can be canceled at any time. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or press and hold the **voice** button.

Alternatively, briefly press the **voice** button and say cancel.

### VOICETAGS

Voicetags enable the user to personalize the voice system. A single name can be used to call up a phone number or radio station.

To add a voicetag:

1. Briefly press the **voice** button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound and say **store phone voicetag**, or **store radio voicetag**.
3. For the radio, the user must be listening to the station they wish to create a voicetag for.

Alternatively, voicetags can be managed via the touchscreen as follows:

1. From the **HOME** screen, select the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen.
2. Select **Voice** and then **Voicetags**.
3. Select the system that the voicetag is to activate: **Phone**, or **Radio**.

Follow the on-screen and audible instructions. See **349, VOICE SETTINGS**.

### VOICE SETTINGS

The following features can be selected from the **Voice** option. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

- **Commands:** View the categories and the example voice commands. Select the > icon to view alternative examples of saying the same command.
- **Voicetags:** View the categories. Select a category to manage the voicetags for the chosen system. See **349, VOICETAGS**.
- **Tutorial:** Select for detailed instructions. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or press and hold the **voice** button. Alternatively, briefly press the **voice** button and say **cancel**. See **349, VOICE TUTORIAL**.

Select **Voice settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. The following settings are displayed:

- **Voice Command Confirmation:** Select **On** or **Off**.
- **Voice Feedback:** Select **On** or **Off**.

Alternatively:

- Briefly press the **voice** button and say **voice confirmation on** or **voice confirmation off**.
- Briefly press the **voice** button and say **voice feedback on** or **voice feedback off**.



## InControl

### INCONTROL OVERVIEW

InControl uses smartphone and in-vehicle mobile technology to remotely connect the vehicle to a number of services and convenience features.

**Note:** Several InControl® features require an internet connection. A data-enabled micro SIM is pre-installed to the vehicle. If a data-enabled micro SIM card has not been supplied, please contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

InControl features for **Remote & Protect™** require an InControl account. To register, connect, and activate an InControl account if not already been activated, please refer to the My Land Rover InControl website at:  
**<https://incontrol.landrover.com>**.

**Note:** An InControl account may have been created by the retailer/authorized repairer for the owner of the vehicle. Alternatively, the owner can create an InControl account. In certain markets, an InControl account can only be created by a retailer/authorized repairer.

**Note:** The **Remote & Protect™**, and **Connected Navigation** features are subscription services. The subscription for these features can be extended after the initial term has expired, for further information, please refer to the retailer/authorized repairer.

**Note:** The owner is responsible to remove the vehicle from the InControl account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred.

**Note:** For further information, please refer to the InControl section on the Land Rover website at: **[www.landrover.com/incontrol](http://www.landrover.com/incontrol)**.

### InControl features

- **Remote & Protect™:**
  - **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app:
    - Vehicle Status.
    - Beep & Flash.
    - Vehicle Security.
    - Remote Climate.
    - Remote Charging - For PHEV vehicles only.
    - Remote Seats.
    - Journeys.
    - Assistance.
    - Settings.
    - Wake Up Timer.
  - SOS Emergency Call.
  - Optimized Land Rover Assistance.
  - Stolen Vehicle Locator.
- **InControl Apps.**
- **Connected Navigation.**
- **Wi-Fi Hotspot.**

### REMOTE & PROTECT™

**Note:** When an InControl account is setup, the user of the account creates a PIN. The PIN is required for certain **Remote & Protect™** features and account management.

**Note:** The availability and functionality of **Remote & Protect™** depends on network connectivity, the specification of the vehicle, and the market in which the vehicle is being used.

The **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app allows the user to find information about the vehicle's health and status on the user's smartphone, while interacting with it remotely. The smartphone app also displays vehicle information, including fuel level, range, and odometer value.

**Note:** Features of the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app can be viewed using the **Demo Mode** function. The features are also explained in the smartphone's app tour on the **Settings** page.

In order to use **Remote & Protect™**, first download the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app.

Downloading and installing:

1. Search for and download the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. When the installation is complete, open the launcher. Select the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app icon.
3. Sign in to the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app using the InControl account created.

**Note:** Not all smartphones are compatible. For compatibility information on Apple smartphones, please refer to the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app download page from the Apple App Store. For compatibility information on Android smartphones, please refer to the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app download page from the Google Play Store.

**Note:** Apple and iPhone™ are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

**Note:** Google Play Store is a registered trademark of Google Inc.

#### Vehicle Location

The **Vehicle Location** section of the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app displays a map displaying the vehicle's parked location and the user's location.

#### Vehicle Status

The **Vehicle Status** section of the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app displays the latest status of vehicle alerts such as a low oil level. Each status gives an indication of the health of each alert, as well as offering advice on how to resolve any alerts.

#### Beep & Flash

The **Beep & Flash** section of the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app locates the vehicle by flashing the vehicle's lights and sounding the horn.

**Note:** The driver is responsible for complying with all regulations in force for that country, regarding the use of vehicle horns.

#### Vehicle Security

The **Vehicle Security** section of the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app displays the open and closed status of all the doors and windows. **Vehicle Security** also displays the locked and unlocked status of the vehicle.



## InControl

**Vehicle Security** allows the user to lock and unlock the vehicle remotely. If either lock or unlock cannot be performed, the phone screen displays an error message. For added security, the lock or unlock function requires a PIN code to be entered.

When the vehicle is locked remotely, it is secured to the maximum possible level allowed in the market in which the vehicle was intended for original sale.

**Note:** *If any window(s) is in an open position, the vehicle does not lock remotely, unless the window is closed. In some markets, remote closing of the windows is not permitted.*

When the vehicle is unlocked remotely, it relocks after 45 seconds if no door or aperture is opened.

**Note:** *The driver is responsible for knowing the location of the vehicle and for making sure that the vehicle is secured.*

### Remote Climate

**Remote Climate** allows the engine of an automatic transmission vehicle to be started remotely, and also allows the engine to run for up to 30 minutes. The

**Remote Climate** feature provides a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of the driver entering the vehicle. Press the **Engine START** soft key on the **Remote Climate** section of the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app and enter the InControl account PIN. A target temperature can be set.

**Remote Climate** does not function if any of the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle's fuel level is low.
- The vehicle's battery charge level is low.

- The vehicle is not locked and alarmed.
- A window, door, hood, or the tailgate is open.
- The engine has been manually started.
- A system error occurs with any required vehicle system.
- A theft has been reported to the stolen vehicle monitoring center.
- The vehicle's alarm is sounding.
- A crash event has been detected.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- The automatic transmission is not in Park (P).
- The brake pedal or accelerator pedal is pressed.

**Note:** *Some markets may prohibit the use of remote engine starting. The driver is responsible for knowing if this function can legally be used.*

### Remote Climate for PHEV vehicles only

The default method for providing a comfortable cabin temperature is through electric climate conditioning rather than remotely starting the engine.

The user can initiate the climate control directly via an on/off toggle switch on the

**Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app. The user can also set a departure timer which allows the temperature to be managed at a desired time using the smartphone app.

**Note:** *Departure timers can be managed from within the vehicle, or via the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app.*

### Remote Charging

**Note:** *The **Remote Charging** feature is available for PHEV vehicles only.*



The **Remote Charging** feature allows the user to view the status of charging, and control the charging process remotely via the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app. The following information is available in the app:

- Current battery charge level.
- EV Range and Combined Range.
- Charging status.
- Plug connection status.
- Charging rate (when charging).
- Time until charge completion (when charging).

The user can also set departure timers and a preferred charging period to manage when the vehicle will charge, and manage preferences relating to charging notifications.

#### Remote Seats

The **Remote Seats** section of the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app allows the user to adjust the position of rear seats, arm-rest, and ski-hatch in advance of entering the vehicle.

**Note:** The **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app only allows electric rear seat and head restraint movement if the vehicle is locked.

**Note:** The **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app operations depends on the vehicle specification.

#### Journeys

The **Journeys** section of the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app displays the most recently completed journeys over 1 mile.

**Note:** The **Journeys** feature can be enabled or disabled via the **Settings** section of the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app, or the My Land Rover InControl website at: <https://incontrol.landrover.com>.

**Note:** Stored journeys can be viewed, deleted, or exported as a .csv file to assist with business expenses.

#### Assistance

The **Assistance** section of the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app displays the vehicle's VIN and registration number. Direct calls can be made to the **Optimized Land Rover Assistance** call center for breakdown assistance. In the event of a vehicle theft, direct calls can be made to the stolen vehicle monitoring call center.

#### Settings

The **Settings** section of the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app provides the user access to the vehicle, account details, and journey preferences. The **Settings** screen also displays all of the vehicles associated with the account.

#### Wake Up Timer

The **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app features enter a low power mode 96 hours after the last engine stop. The low power mode action conserves vehicle battery life.

When the vehicle is parked for an extended period, e.g., when on vacation, or on a business trip, the user can operate the **Wake Up Timer** feature. The feature wakes up the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app features on a selected date. Battery power is then reserved for the wake up.

## InControl

**Note:** Any date within a 31 day period can be chosen.

### SOS Emergency Call

There are two states of SOS emergency call: Automatic and manual operation.

In a crash situation, where the air bags have deployed, an automatic emergency call is made to the emergency services. In a non-crash situation, when emergency assistance is required, the emergency call button can be used manually.

In both states, the button flashes yellow until the emergency services answer the call, at which point the flashing stops.

The vehicle's location, owner details, vehicle details, and the problem are automatically sent to the call center. The appropriate emergency services are despatched to the vehicle's location. Contact with the emergency services agent can be made, at any time, by pressing the SOS emergency call button.



The SOS emergency call button is located in the overhead console, on the right side. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Press and release the button's cover to reveal the button. A red LED illuminates in the button. Press the button for 3 seconds to make a direct call to the emergency services.

After use, push the button's cover back into place.

**Note:** If the vehicle is traveling in a different country, the SOS emergency call may still connect. However, the vehicle's location and the vehicle's details may not be automatically sent to the local provider.

There is a single battery that maintains full system operation in the event that the vehicle's battery is disconnected or disabled. The battery is guaranteed for the vehicle's warranty period. If the battery requires replacement, the instrument panel displays the message **SOS Limited**. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer for a replacement battery.

If a fault is detected with the SOS emergency call system, the instrument panel displays the message **SOS Limited**. If this occurs, the vehicle can still be driven, but consult a retailer/authorized repairer at the earliest opportunity.

### Optimized Land Rover Assistance



The **Optimized Land Rover Assistance** call button is located in the overhead console, on the left side. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

In the event of a breakdown, press and release the button's cover to reveal the button. A blue LED illuminates in the button. Press the button for 3 seconds to make a direct call to the **Optimized Land Rover Assistance** call center. The button flashes until the call center answers the call, at which point the LED changes to yellow. The vehicle's location, owner details, and vehicle details are automatically relayed to the call center.

The **Optimized Land Rover Assistance** call center sends roadside assistance to the vehicle's location. When the light flashes, push the button for 3 seconds to answer the call.

After use, push the button's cover back into place.

### Stolen Vehicle Locator

In the event that the vehicle is stolen:

1. First, contact the police and file a police report.
2. Contact the stolen vehicle monitoring center via the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app. Alternatively, use the phone number on the InControl website, please refer to the Land Rover website at: [www.landrover.com/incontrol](http://www.landrover.com/incontrol).
3. Provide the stolen vehicle monitoring center with the police report number.

The stolen vehicle monitoring center liaises with the police to pinpoint the exact location of the stolen vehicle. While tracking the vehicle, access to the **Land Rover InControl Remote** smartphone app and the user's InControl account, is unavailable until the vehicle has been recovered.

## INCONTROL APPS

### WARNING

In the interests of safety, operate, adjust, or view the system only when it is safe to do so. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

### WARNING

Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

The **Land Rover InControl Apps** allow operation of a number of smartphone apps via the vehicle's touchscreen.

**Note:** Not all smartphones are compatible. For compatibility information on Apple smartphones, please refer to the **Land Rover InControl Apps** download page from the Apple App Store. For compatibility information on Android smartphones, please refer to the **Land Rover InControl Apps** download page from the Google Play Store.

In order to use **InControl Apps**, first download the **Land Rover InControl Apps** launcher to a smartphone.

**Note:** The **Land Rover InControl Apps** data usage is charged from the user's smartphone.

Downloading and installing the app:

1. Search for and download **Land Rover InControl Apps** from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. When the installation is complete, open the launcher. Select the **Land Rover InControl Apps** icon.
3. Follow the app's Quick Start Guide (QSG) instructions to complete the setup process.

**Note:** The availability and functionality of **Land Rover InControl Apps** depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is used.

**Note:** Apps that are not suitable for use while driving, e.g., gaming apps, are not available on **Land Rover InControl Apps**.

The **Land Rover InControl Apps** launcher screen displays apps installed on the user's smartphone at the top of the screen. The vehicle's touchscreen replicates the **Land Rover InControl Apps** screen. To adjust the order of the apps, touch the icon on the vehicle's touchscreen and drag it to the required position.

## InControl

Apps not installed within the user's smartphone but are available to use with **Land Rover InControl Apps** display in the **More apps** section of the screen. Scroll down to see the full list. Tap the required app and install. The new app will appear at the top of the screen once installed.

The **Options** menu within **Land Rover InControl Apps**, allows the user to access the following:

- News about the latest app releases.
- Settings menu: Editing of keyboard and permissions.
- Information such as Legal, Data privacy and FAQ's.
- Quick Start Guide (QSG).

To view an app on the vehicle's touchscreen, connect the smartphone via the USB cable to the vehicle's USB socket. The socket is located in the center console's cubby box.

To open **InControl Apps** on the touchscreen, select the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu on the touchscreen. Select the **InControl Apps** option, which will open the launcher.

Alternatively, to set **InControl Apps** to launch automatically, select the **settings** icon. Select **All settings**. From the list select **Features**. Search **InControl Apps** and select to change the launch preferences.

Some apps require a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology connection. Make sure that the phone is paired via the **Bluetooth®** device connection. See **328, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE**.

**Note:** Apple and iPhone™ are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

**Note:** Google Play Store is a registered trademark of Google Inc.

## CONNECTED NAVIGATION SET-UP

In order to benefit from the full range of **Connected Navigation** features, the vehicle requires connection to the internet. Please complete the following steps:

1. Fitting a SIM card.
2. Enable mobile data connectivity.
3. Create a Touch Pro Duo navigation profile.
4. Create an InControl navigation account.

### Fitting a SIM card

**Note:** A data-enabled micro SIM card is supplied and pre-installed to the vehicle. If a data-enabled micro SIM card has not been fitted, please contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

If a data-enabled micro SIM card requires fitting, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **363, FITTING A SIM CARD**.

### Enable mobile data connectivity

**Note:** For all SIM cards, please check and enable mobile data connectivity if required.

Enabling mobile data allows the data from the micro SIM card to be used for **Connected Navigation**. To enable mobile data, please refer to the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **364, MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY**.

### Create a Touch Pro Duo navigation profile

The Touch Pro Duo navigation profile allows the user to select favorite destinations, previous destinations, and navigation settings.

**Note:** *More than one Touch Pro Duo navigation profile can be created.*

On first use of Touch Pro Duo navigation, the user will be prompted to create and name a profile.

When prompted, scroll to the bottom of the page, and select **Turn On All** to enable all connected navigation features.

Alternatively, the user can enable **Connected Navigation** features individually by selecting **Turn On** next to each feature. See **344, SETTINGS**.

To disable **Connected Navigation** features, select **Cancel**.

### Create an InControl navigation account

**Note:** *An InControl navigation account is required to use certain **Connected Navigation** features.*

Once a Touch Pro Duo navigation profile has been created, the user will have to create an InControl navigation account.

In the main navigation screen, select **Sign In**.

Follow the on-screen instructions to register a new account.

## CONNECTED NAVIGATION

A selection of **Connected Navigation** features are available to enhance the navigation system. To access certain features, **Connected Navigation** setup is required. See **356, CONNECTED NAVIGATION SET-UP**.

**Note:** ***Connected Navigation** features are market dependant and may not be available on the vehicle.*

Available features:

### Real Time Traffic Information

Uses live traffic data feeds, allowing for better traffic information, planning, and rerouting, for the user to complete the journey more efficiently. Traffic information is displayed on the navigation map as color coded:

- Red: Very heavy traffic or stationary traffic.
- Amber: Heavy traffic.
- Green: Free-flowing traffic.
- Black: Closed road.

**Note:** ***Real Time Traffic Information** does not automatically reroute journeys.*

### Online Routing

While on route to a destination the navigation system will monitor live traffic conditions and takes into account typical traffic patterns for that time of day, keeping the user on the optimum route.

**Note:** ***Online Routing** can be used in conjunction with **Commute Mode**.*

### One Box Search

The user can search the surrounding area for places of interest. The system can access expert destination information, travel tips and inspiration as well as online travel reviews of the local area.

**Note:** ***One Box Search** is supplemented with data from the internet to provide more accurate results.*

## InControl

### Planning Routes and Door to Door Routing

Before starting a route, the user can use the optional **Land Rover Route Planner** smartphone app, online search, or saved destinations to set a destination. The smartphone app uses the Cloud to send the selected destination automatically to the vehicle's navigation screen.

Once parked, the **Land Rover Route Planner** smartphone app will guide the user to the selected destination which includes public transport options.

**Note:** The **Land Rover Route Planner** smartphone app is only available in selected markets.

Downloading and installing:

- Search for and download the **Land Rover Route Planner** smartphone app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
- When the installation is complete, open the launcher. Select the **Land Rover Route Planner** smartphone app icon.

**Note:** To sign in to the **Land Rover Route Planner** smartphone app, use the same email address and password used to setup the InControl navigation account.

**Note:** Apple and iPhone™ are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

**Note:** Google Play Store is a registered trademark of Google Inc.

### Share ETA

The user can share the Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) so the selected contact(s) will know exactly when arriving to destination, as calculated by the navigation guidance system.

If the user is running late to the destination, Share ETA can send automatic updates via text messages or email, without any further action from the user.

**Note:** Contacts need to be setup within the Touch Pro Duo navigation profile.

### Satellite View

Provides an overhead map view of the vehicle's surroundings.

**Note:** If the **Satellite View** feature is used continuously, it may consume large amounts of mobile data. Check the data allowance is appropriately configured for providing high-data services.

### Street Level Imagery

Provides a 360° panoramic street view in selected locations and markets only.

### Fuel Price Service

Locates fuel filling stations and compares fuel prices. Available in selected locations.

### Commute Mode

Allows the navigation system to learn regular commutes and automatically advises the user of the expected journey time based on live and historical traffic movements without the user having to input a destination.

The navigation system learns the routes the user takes for a set destination and advises which of those is the quickest.

**Note:** **Commute Mode** can be turned on and off dependent on driver preference. See **344, SETTINGS**.

### Parking Service

As the user approaches a destination, Touch Pro Duo navigation system can display where parking is available. Simply tap on the preferred parking lot. The navigation system updates to direct the user to it. Price and availability of parking is also displayed in selected markets.

### Safety Cameras

The **Safety Cameras** feature provides the location of potential accident black spots, or areas that have been identified as a potential danger by the presence of safety cameras. Available in selected locations only.

### Live Apps

**Note:** Live Apps requires a suitable, data-enabled micro SIM to be fitted to the vehicle. See **356, CONNECTED NAVIGATION SET-UP**.

**Note:** Live apps are updated in real-time using data from the micro SIM Card.

Live Apps are a range of embedded applications that are displayed as a soft key on the vehicle's touchscreen.

Live Apps do not require the connection of a smartphone to the vehicle and offers an expanding range of apps such as News, Weather, Flight Tracker and Online Media.

**Note:** The availability of Live Apps services and features may vary by market. For further information, please refer to the My Land Rover InControl website at: <https://incontrol.landrover.com>.

To access Live Apps feature:

Select **Live** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **256, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Select **Update**, if updates and new apps are available.

**Note:** A green down-arrow is displayed on the **Update tile** when updates are available.

**Note:** Live Apps features require an active InControl account to login and manage preferences. To register, connect, and activate an InControl account if it has not already been activated, please refer to the My Land Rover InControl website at: <https://incontrol.landrover.com>.

**Note:** To be able to quickly log in and out of the feature and store personal information, enter a nickname and setup a PIN.

### Online Media

The **Online Media** application allows the user to access media content such as music and podcasts directly from the vehicle using subscription streaming services.

Some music streaming services may require a valid account to be linked in order to access content.

In order to link an account, please refer to the My Land Rover InControl website at: <https://incontrol.landrover.com>. Select the **Connected Accounts** section within the **My Account** area. The **Connected Accounts** screen lists the available providers, and allows the user to link the InControl account to a relevant provider account.

### WI-FI HOTSPOT

**Note:** Wi-Fi Hotspot requires a suitable data-enabled micro SIM card contract.

**Note:** 4G mobile connectivity cannot be guaranteed in all locations.



## InControl

The Wi-Fi Hotspot feature provides in-vehicle access to 4G internet, enabling up to eight wireless devices to be used simultaneously in the vehicle.

Before enabling Wi-Fi Hotspot, please make sure that a data-enabled micro SIM card has been fitted. See **363, FITTING A SIM CARD**.

To enable Wi-Fi Hotspot, select the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All Settings**, followed by **Connectivity**.

The **CONNECTIVITY** pop-up menu displays the following options:

- **Bluetooth**
- **Mobile Data**
- **Hotspot**
- **Wi-Fi**.

Touch the **Hotspot** toggle to create a vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.

Touch **Hotspot** to display the vehicle's Wi-Fi Hotspot name and password. The Wi-Fi Hotspot name is computer generated by the vehicle and cannot be changed to a password of choice.

**Note:** To change the password, touch the **refresh** icon. A new preset password is generated.

To connect a device to the vehicle's Wi-Fi Hotspot, switch the device's Wi-Fi to **ON**. Select the vehicle's Wi-Fi Hotspot name on the device. Insert the password.



## Web browser

### WEB BROWSER HOMEPAGE



E218600

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.**

The web browser is only accessible when the vehicle is stationary.

1. **Search bar:** Touch to display the keyboard. Enter a keyword or website address. To delete the text, touch and hold the **delete** icon on the keyboard screen.
2. **Screen display:** Touch and hold the screen, dragging it up or down to scroll through web pages that are larger than the viewable area.
3. **Settings icon:** Touch to access the **Web Browser Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **362, WEB BROWSER SETTINGS**.

4. **Return icon:** Touch to exit the web browser and return to the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. If viewing favorites, touch to return to the web browser screen.

5. **Full screen icon:** Select to maximize the viewable area by hiding the header, footer, and search bar. When in full screen view, touch the:

- **show all** icon to display the header, footer, and search bar.
- **+** icon to zoom in.

- **-** icon to zoom out.

Alternatively, pinch two fingers together to zoom out, or stretch them apart to zoom in.

Double tap the screen to reset the page to its original size.

**Note:** Touch and hold the zoom in and out widget to move it to a new location on the screen.



## Web browser

6. **Homepage** icon: Touch to display the homepage.  
When the web browser is used for the first time, the default Land Rover homepage displays until a new homepage is set.  
To set the homepage, select the favorites list by touching the **favorites** icon (10). Touch the **home** icon next to a favorite to make it the homepage. Touch the **return** icon to apply the change.
  7. **Refresh** icon: Touch to refresh the displayed web page.
  8. **Backward** icon: Touch to show the previous web page.
  9. **Forward** icon: Touch to show the next web page.
  10. **Favorites** icon: Touch to add a website to the favorites list. This icon is highlighted when the displayed web page is set as a favorite. The web page name can be amended by touching the text. To:
    - View a favorite: Select a favorite from the favorites list to display in the web browser.
    - Delete a favorite: Touch the **favorites** icon next to an entry in the favorites list to deselect it, followed by the **return** icon to apply the changes and delete it from the list.
- **Delete Browsing Data:** Select to delete all browsing data (all cookies and cached data is removed).
  - **Always Delete Browsing Data on Vehicle Shutdown:** If switched **ON**, cookies and cached files are deleted when the vehicle's engine and ignition is switched off.

**Note:** *It is recommended to delete all browsing data on change of vehicle ownership.*

### WEB BROWSER SETTINGS

To access the **Web Browser Settings**, select the **settings** icon on the **WEB BROWSER** screen. The **SETTINGS** pop-up menu displays. Touch **Web Browser Settings**. The settings options are:

- **Delete Favorites:** Select to delete all favorite websites.

## Connectivity

### CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW

Internet connectivity requires a data-enabled micro SIM card or an in-range internal or external Wi-Fi network.

The following methods allow for internet connectivity:

- **Mobile Data:** Allows the vehicle to connect to the internet via a mobile network, using a data-enabled micro SIM card. See **364, MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY**.
- **Wi-Fi Hotspot:** Creates a Wi-Fi hotspot in the vehicle, to allow internet connection of Wi-Fi equipped devices, e.g., a tablet, laptop, or a smartphone. Also allows sharing of media between the Wi-Fi equipped devices inside the vehicle. See **359, WI-FI HOTSPOT**.

**Note:** *Wi-Fi Hotspot is only available with **Connect Pro**.*

- **Wi-Fi:** Allows the vehicle to connect to the internet using an external Wi-Fi network. See **365, WI-FI CONNECTIVITY**.

**Note:** *Not all vehicles are fitted with **Wi-Fi** and **Mobile Data**.*

### FITTING A SIM CARD

#### **NOTICE**

*Make sure the micro SIM card is located correctly into the card holder. Failure to do so may damage the micro SIM card or SIM card reader.*

**Note:** *Some network operators may lock SIM cards to operate in specific devices only. Contact the network operator if the SIM card requires unlocking.*

**Note:** *Jaguar Land Rover advise using micro SIM cards only. Micro SIM card adaptors are not recommended.*

A micro SIM card must be inserted into the SIM card holder. The SIM card reader utilizes a SIM interface. If the current micro SIM card is a different size, e.g., a nano SIM, an adaptor or replacement SIM card is required.

The SIM card reader slot is located in the center console's cubby box.



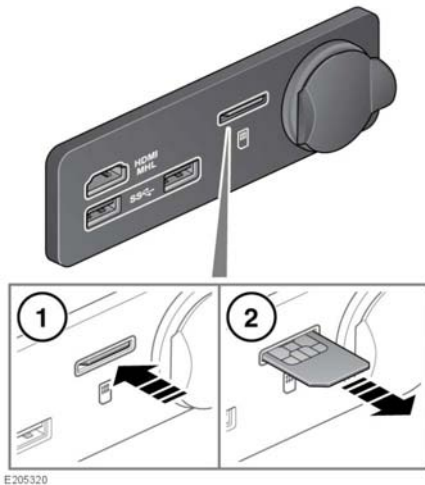
E205319

To fit a micro SIM card, insert the card with the contacts facing up and the shortest end facing out. The card should not be protruding once correctly inserted.

**Note:** *Push the micro SIM card 2 mm further into the slot to firmly engage the latch.*

Once the micro SIM card is fitted, enable mobile data connectivity. See **364, MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY**.

## Connectivity



To remove a SIM card, gently push in (1) and release (2).

### MOBILE DATA CONNECTIVITY

Mobile data requires the installation of a data-enabled micro SIM card. See **363, FITTING A SIM CARD**.

To enable **Mobile data**, select the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All settings**, followed by **Connectivity**.

The **CONNECTIVITY** pop-up menu displays **Bluetooth**, **Mobile Data**, **Hotspot**, and **Wi-Fi**.

Touch the **Mobile Data** toggle, to enable Mobile data. When displayed, select **Agree** to agree to the terms and conditions.

**Note:** Mobile data connectivity is indicated by an icon at the top of the screen. See **365, CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS**.

Touch **Mobile Data** to access the **MOBILE SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

The **MOBILE SETTINGS** pop-up menu displays **Network provider**, **Roaming**, **Usage limit**, **Usage**, and **SIM PIN**.

**Network provider:** The network provider of the inserted SIM is displayed. To change the APN settings, select the network provider's name to open the **NETWORK PROVIDER** screen. Set **Auto Select** to **Off**. Add the **Network**, **Username**, and **Password**. Select **Connect**.

**Roaming:** Data roaming is set to **Off** as default. Select **On** to enable roaming.

**Usage limit:** The usage limit is set to **Off** as default. Select **On** to enable usage limit.

**Usage:** The usage counter displays the total data usage for the month. The usage counter resets on the 1st day of the month, as default. When the usage limit is set to **On**, the usage limit also displays.

Select **Usage** to change the usage limit and the monthly reset date. Use the reset counter to reset the current usage to zero.

**SIM PIN:** A PIN can be set or changed for the inserted SIM card.

Remember SIM PIN:

1. Select **On** to remember.
2. Select **Off** to forget the PIN.

**About:**

From the **CONNECTIVITY** menu screen, select **About** to display the vehicle's MAC address and IMEI number.

To reset all connectivity settings to default, select **Reset** and then select **Yes**.

## Connectivity

### WI-FI CONNECTIVITY

#### WARNING

**Do not adjust the touchscreen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.**

Wi-Fi allows the vehicle to connect to the internet using an external Wi-Fi network.

To enable Wi-Fi, select the **settings** icon to access the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **All settings**, followed by **Connectivity**.

The **CONNECTIVITY** pop-up menu displays **Bluetooth**, **Mobile Data**, **Hotspot**, and **Wi-Fi**.

Touch the **Wi-Fi** toggle, to enable Wi-Fi.

Touch **Wi-Fi** to view any Wi-Fi networks in range.

To connect to an unknown network, select the network name. When the Wi-Fi network is password protected, a keyboard displays to allow entry of the password.

To connect to a known network, select the network and touch **Connect**, or to forget this network, touch **Forget**.

To connect to a hidden network, select **Add network** from the network list. Enter the **Network name**, **Security type**, and **Password**, and press **Connect**.

### CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS

The icons at the top of the screen display the type of cellular or Wi-Fi connection, as follows:



Connecting.



E (edge) mobile network connectivity.



2G mobile network connectivity.



3G mobile network connectivity.



4G mobile network connectivity.



No mobile network connection.



When the vehicle is connected to an external hotspot, a **Wi-Fi** icon is displayed instead of a **cellular** icon.

**Note:** Depending on the network connectivity, some features and services, including Wi-Fi, may not operate as expected, or at all. A strong 3G or 4G connection is required.

### SOFTWARE UPDATES

The vehicle may support the download and installation of over the air software updates. Over the air software allows certain components of the vehicle to be kept up-to-date without the need to visit a retailer/authorized repairer.

When a new software update is available, a notification will display on the touchscreen upon starting or switching off the vehicle. Follow the step-by-step instructions to accept the update and begin the download process, alternatively postpone the update to a later date.

**Note:** The download of data may incur costs.



## Connectivity

On completion of the software download, accept the on-screen prompt to begin the install process. Switch off and exit the vehicle, making sure that it is in a locked and alarmed state. Upon successful completion of the update, an on-screen notification is given.

**Note:** *It may take up to 30 minutes to complete the update process.*

To complete a software update observe the following conditions:

- The new software must be successfully downloaded onto the vehicle via the in-built SIM or a personal SIM card.
- The vehicle needs cellular connectivity during the process of performing a software update. See **363, CONNECTIVITY OVERVIEW**.
- The vehicle has to be locked and alarmed for up to 30 minutes.
- The terms and conditions for the download and install must be accepted.
- The vehicle update must not be interrupted, either by the vehicle owner or by loss of cellular connectivity.
- The vehicle may need to be associated to an active InControl account. See **350, INCONTROL OVERVIEW**.

**Note:** *Availability of over the air updates may vary depending on market and vehicle specification.*

## Fuel and refueling

### SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

#### **WARNING**

Make sure you read and observe all the warning listed below. Failure to observe the warnings may cause a fire or explosion, resulting in serious injury or death.

#### **WARNING**

Do not smoke, use an exposed flame, or cause sparks while refueling.

#### **WARNING**

Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition.

#### **WARNING**

Switch off the engine when refueling, as it is both a source of extreme temperature and electrical sparks.

#### **WARNING**

When refueling, switch off any personal electronic devices such as cell phones or music players.

#### **WARNING**

Do not overfill the fuel tank, as this may cause spillage when the vehicle is driven. Spillage may also occur if the fuel expands in high ambient temperatures, potentially leading to a fire or explosion that can cause serious injury or death.

#### **WARNING**

Only use containers specifically designed for carrying fuel and always remove them from the vehicle to fill them.

### GASOLINE ENGINED VEHICLES

#### **NOTICE**

*Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Unapproved products may be harmful to fuel system components on the vehicle.*

### OCTANE RATING

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 87 AKI as severe engine damage may occur.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes, e.g., manganese-based or fuel additives. Doing so may adversely affect the vehicle's emission control systems and affect the vehicle's warranty.*

The vehicle manufacturer recommends the use of premium unleaded gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (Anti-Knock Index). Using the correct fuel specification helps to maintain the vehicle's performance, fuel economy, and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 87 AKI. Using a lower specification fuel may reduce the vehicle's performance, increase fuel consumption, cause an audible engine knock, and other driveability problems.



## Fuel and refueling

Consult a retailer/authorized repairer if an engine knock is detected, while holding a steady speed on level roads. Also consult a retailer/authorized repairer if a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even if using fuel to the recommended octane rating. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle which is not covered by the vehicle's warranty.

**Note:** An occasional, light engine knock when accelerating or climbing hills is acceptable.

**Note:** Federal law requires that gasoline octane ratings be posted on the pumps.

### ETHANOL

#### NOTICE

*Do not use E85 fuels with 85% ethanol content, as serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.*

#### NOTICE

*Do not use fuels containing more than 15% ethanol. Inadequate fuel can reduce engine performance and may cause damage to engine components.*

Fuels containing up to 15% ethanol may be used, e.g., E10 and E15.

Make sure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Most drivers do not notice any operating difference with fuel containing ethanol. If driveability issues are experienced, revert to using fuel containing no more than 10% ethanol. If the issues remain, use premium quality unleaded fuel instead.

### METHANOL

#### NOTICE

*Wherever possible, avoid using fuel containing methanol.*

Using fuel containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage, which may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty.

### METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether (MTBE) can be used. The ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel must not exceed 15%. MTBE is an ether-based compound derived from gasoline. MTBE has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

### DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

#### NOTICE

*Do not attempt to start the engine if an incorrect fuel is added to the vehicle's fuel tank, e.g., gasoline instead of diesel. Inadequate fuel can reduce engine performance and may cause damage to engine components. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer immediately.*

#### NOTICE

*The vehicle manufacturer cannot accept any responsibility for any damage caused by running the vehicle with an incorrect fuel.*

**Note:** If a diesel engine is difficult to start in extreme cold temperatures of 5°F (-15°C) or less, consult a retailer/authorized repairer for assistance.



## Fuel and refueling

Use high quality diesel fuel, in accordance with the American Society for Testing and Materials standard (ASTM) D975 Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD), or an equivalent standard.

The vehicle has the latest after-treatment systems to meet the US Low Emissions Vehicle (LEV) standards. To make sure of emissions compliance and maintain correct engine performance, only the use of ULSD fuel is recommended, in accordance with the ASTM D975 ULSD standard.

Do not use any fuel additives. Do not add paraffin or gasoline to diesel fuels.

### Bio-diesel

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not use bio-diesel blends above 20% (B20). inadequate blends may damage the vehicle's engine or fuel system.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Bio-diesel blends above 5% (B5) are not recommended. Higher proportions may damage the vehicle's engine or fuel system.*

Bio-diesel is a blend of diesel fuel and bio-fuel. Bio-fuel is produced from renewable and crop-based sources such as rapeseed, palm oil, food waste, animal fat, etc. The properties and characteristics of bio-diesel can vary significantly, according to the source of the bio-fuel and ambient conditions.

Highway diesel fuel in the US is generally known as Ultra Low Sulphur Diesel (ULSD). ULSD can contain up to a maximum of 5% bio-diesel (B5), in accordance with ASTM D975 ULSD standard.

Some states in the US offer incentives to use bio-diesel blends higher than 5% bio fuel. Bio-diesel is required to be clearly labelled on the fuel pump, according to the percentage of the bio-diesel blend. For example, B10 is 10% bio-diesel, B20 is 20% bio-diesel, etc.

The vehicle is designed to run with fuel at a maximum blend of 5% bio-diesel (B5). Jaguar Land Rover encourages the use of ULSD in accordance with ASTM D975, which has a maximum of 5% bio-diesel (B5). Continuous and prolonged use of B10 and/or B20 can lead to fuel system blockages and degradation of engine oil lubricating properties.

If the use of B10 and/or B20 is unavoidable, the following is recommended:

- Check the engine oil level weekly. If any noticeable increase in engine oil level occurs, regardless of the mileage since the last service, contact a retailer/authorized repairer for advice. See **396, CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL**.
- Adhere strictly to the service schedule.
- Fill the fuel tank with ULSD conforming to ASTM D975 ULSD standard if the vehicle is not going to be driven for a period of several weeks.

### SULFUR CONTENT

#### **NOTICE**

*Using an incorrect specification of fuel will cause serious damage to the engine and the exhaust after-treatment system. The vehicle's warranty does not cover this. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorized repairer for advice.*



## Fuel and refueling

Vehicles with a diesel engine require the use of Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel. In accordance with the American Society for Testing and Materials standard ASTM D975 ULSD, or the World Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) standards. The fuel must also meet the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) standards.

This vehicle must be operated only with ultra low sulfur diesel fuel (that is, diesel fuel meeting EPA specifications for highway diesel fuel, including a 15 ppm sulfur cap).

### DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) must be kept out of children's reach, to avoid serious injury or death.**

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Read the label for safety precautions when using DEF, to avoid injury.**

#### **NOTICE**

*DEF must be stored in the original container, in a cool, dry, and well-ventilated area. Observe the manufacturer's storage and handling recommendations.*

#### **NOTICE**

*DEF has a strong odor and can stain clothing or upholstery. Take care not to spill the fluid when performing a top-up procedure. In the event of spillage, rinse immediately with clean water.*

#### **NOTICE**

*When refilling, make sure that the correct specification of DEF is used. Use of the incorrect fluid can result in serious damage to the vehicle. In this situation, do not start the engine, contact a retailer/authorized repairer immediately.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not overfill the DEF tank, as damage to DEF system may occur.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not use commercial vehicle DEF dispensing nozzles. The vehicle's DEF system is not designed to be refilled under these higher pressures. The flow-rate of these pumps can result in serious damage to the vehicle.*

Vehicles with a diesel engine have a tank containing Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF). DEF is used to make sure that correct exhaust emissions are achieved. DEF is also known as AdBlue®, AUS 32, and ARLA 32. AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA).

Dependent on the current geographical location, correct use of the DEF system may be a legal requirement. Running the vehicle without the correct specification of DEF may be a criminal offence. Always use the correct DEF specification, and the correct quantity of DEF. See **469, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**, and also see **471, CAPACITIES**.

The consumption of DEF can vary greatly. An average of 0.74 US gallons (2.8 L) of DEF is used per 1 000 miles (1 600 km), but this consumption rate can be significantly affected by driving style, road and weather conditions.

## Fuel and refueling

The distance until the DEF tank is empty and the volume of DEF required for refill can be viewed in the vehicle's instrument panel:

1. Switch on the ignition. See **170, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION.**
2. Press the **MENU** button on the steering wheel control.
3. Use the steering wheel control to navigate to highlight **Vehicle info.**
4. Press the **OK** button to confirm selection.
5. Scroll down to highlight **Next service.**
6. Press the **OK** button to confirm selection. The Diesel Exhaust Fluid range and refill volume is displayed.

The instrument panel displays a series of messages when the DEF level becomes low, the volume of DEF required for refill also accompanies each message:

- The first message states that the DEF level is at a level where a top up is advised.
- The second message is accompanied by an AMBER warning icon and states to refill the DEF tank.
- The third message starts a countdown of the distance remaining until the DEF tank is empty, after which the vehicle will fail to start.
- The final message is accompanied by a RED warning icon and is displayed when the distance remaining is zero and states that no further restarts are possible until DEF is added to the tank.

**Note:** When the DEF level becomes low, a notification message displays in the message center. Refill the DEF tank at the earliest opportunity. A retailer/authorized repairer can be contacted to arrange a full DEF refill.

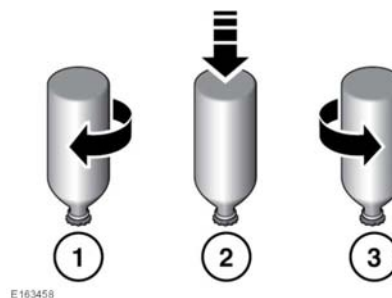
To perform a full DEF system refill, it is recommended to contact a retailer/authorized repairer. If required, DEF can be added to the tank by following the top-up procedure.

The volume of DEF required to restart the engine is shown in the message center. Use the appropriate number of refill bottles to top-up the vehicle. A standard-sized non-drip refill bottle contains 0.5 US gallons (1.9 L) of DEF. Refill bottles are available from a retailer/authorized repairer.

To perform a DEF top-up procedure:

Locate the DEF tank. See **394, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS.**

Turn the tank filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.



1. Place the refill bottle over the tank filler cap aperture and turn clockwise, until locked into position.
2. Press the base of the refill bottle, until all of the fluid has completely drained into the tank.

## Fuel and refueling

3. Turn the refill bottle counter-clockwise and remove.
4. Repeat the procedure with subsequent refill bottles.
5. Replace the tank filler cap and continually turn clockwise until hand tight.

If a DEF warning lamp, or a message illuminates with a red warning icon, seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity. The possible events for this include DEF system malfunctions, incorrect fluid, and fluid quality. See **83, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)**, and also see **86, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)**.

**Note:** In extremely low temperatures below 14°F (-10°C), DEF may freeze in the tank, making refilling difficult. Move the vehicle into a warmer environment, e.g., a garage. Raise the ambient temperature, in order to thaw the DEF, before attempting to top-up. In these conditions, it may take up to 1 hour of driving before the low DEF message extinguishes.

**Note:** When starting and stopping the engine, operation of the DEF pumps may be heard, but this is no cause for concern.

**Note:** The engine/transmission (amber) warning lamp may illuminate after a refill. In this event, start the engine, run for approximately 30 seconds, and then switch off the engine. Do this three times in succession.

### REFORMULATED GASOLINE

Reformulated gasoline is specially formulated to help further reduce the vehicle's exhaust emissions. The vehicle manufacturer fully supports all efforts to protect and maintain the ambient air quality, and encourages the use of reformulated gasoline, where available.

### RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

#### NOTICE

*Avoid running out of fuel. Doing so can cause damage to the vehicle's engine, fuel and emission control systems.*

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 1.1 US gallons (4 L) is required to restart the engine. See **374, FUEL FILLER FLAP**.

The vehicle should be left with the ignition switched on for 5 minutes after refueling, before attempting to restart the engine. The vehicle needs to be driven 1 to 3 miles (1.6 to 5 km), in order to reset the engine management and monitoring systems.



E173721

## Fuel and refueling

Vehicles with a diesel engine are supplied with an active misfueling device, e.g., a visible metal flap in the filler neck. These vehicles require the use of the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle to refill the fuel tank with a fuel can. Insert the funnel into the filler neck, fully and squarely, to open the active misfueling device. See **376, ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELING PROTECTION DEVICE**.

**Note:** If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.

### WATER IN FUEL

#### **NOTICE**

*If a water in fuel warning message displays in the instrument panel, an excessive amount of water has collected in the fuel system. In this event, consult a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible. Water in fuel can damage engine components or fuel system.*

### DIESEL ENGINES

#### **NOTICE**

*Running out of fuel draws air into the fuel system and may cause serious damage to the fuel injection system. In this event, seek qualified assistance immediately.*

Vehicles with a diesel engine have a system that prevents the fuel tank from emptying completely. When the fuel reaches a minimum level, the system stops the engine.

If the fuel gauge indicates a low fuel level, or the low fuel warning lamp illuminates, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. See **87, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**.

If the system's protection function has activated, the vehicle must be refueled immediately.

A minimum of 1.1 gallons (4.5 L) of fuel is required to enable the engine to be restarted. After refueling, use the following procedure:

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button and crank the engine for 5 seconds. See **9, DRIVER CONTROLS**.
3. Release the **START/STOP** button.
4. With the brake pedal still pressed, press and release the **START/STOP** button to crank the engine. The engine should start within approximately 5 seconds.

**Note:** If the engine does not start, pause for 10 seconds with the ignition switched on, then repeat the complete procedure from the beginning.

#### **NOTICE**

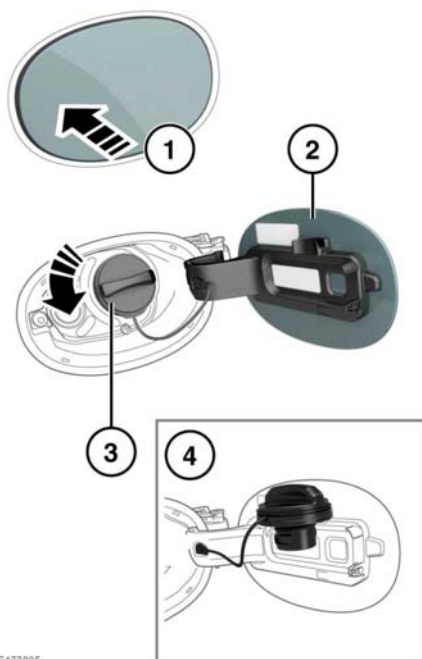
*Do not crank the engine for longer than 30 seconds continuously. Doing so may damage engine components.*

## Fuel and refueling

### FUEL FILLER FLAP

#### ⚠ WARNING

Take note of all warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the filler flap. Failure to do so may result in injury or death.



E177085

The fuel filler flap is located on the right side of the vehicle, at the rear.

1. Press and release the rear of the fuel filler flap to unlatch.
2. Pull the flap open. The label on the inside of the flap indicates the correct fuel for the vehicle.
3. Turn the filler cap counter-clockwise to undo.

4. Use the retaining clip to keep the filler cap out of the way while fueling.

When replacing the filler cap, turn it clockwise until the ratchet clicks.

To close the filler flap, push the flap until it is securely latched.

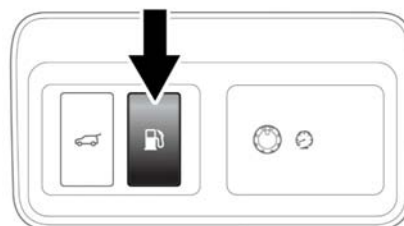
### FUEL FILLER FLAP LOCK

**Note:** Make sure that the vehicle is refueled shortly after the refueling button is pressed. Failure to do so may result in the fuel tank not being filled to the required level. If in doubt, check the fuel level gauge in the instrument panel before continuing the journey, to prevent running out of fuel.

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEV) have a locking fuel filler flap and an isolation valve on the fuel tank.

The vehicle cannot be refueled until the following has occurred:

- The isolation valve on the fuel tank is open.
- The fuel tank is depressurized.
- The fuel filler flap is unlocked.



E205539

To enable refueling, carry out the following:

## Fuel and refueling

1. Switch off the vehicle's ignition, apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), and make sure that the transmission is engaged in Park (P).
2. Press the refueling button located in the lower switch panel at the driver's side of the dashboard. The isolation valve on the fuel tank opens to depressurize the fuel tank. The fuel filler flap unlocks. The instrument panel displays a message to confirm that the fuel filler flap is unlocking.
3. The instrument panel displays a message to confirm that the fuel filler flap is unlocked and the vehicle can be refueled. See **374, FUEL FILLER FLAP**.

The isolation valve on the fuel tank remains open for approximately 10 minutes, at which point the valve shuts, preventing further refueling. If further refueling is required, repeat the above process to open the isolation valve on the fuel tank.

**Note:** Make sure that the vehicle is stationary. The fuel filler flap does not unlock, and the isolation valve on the fuel tank does not open, if the vehicle is moving. The instrument panel displays a message to confirm that the vehicle's speed is too high.

**Note:** Make sure that the fuel filler flap is closed after refueling. The instrument panel displays a message to confirm that the fuel filler flap is not fully closed.

If a fault is detected on either the fuel filler flap system, or on the isolation valve system on the fuel tank, the instrument panel displays a message. In this event, consult a retailer/authorized repairer or roadside assistance. See **350, REMOTE & PROTECT™**.

### FUEL FILLER

#### WARNING

Take note of all warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap. Failure to do so may result in injury or death.

#### WARNING

When refueling, make sure that all of the windows, doors, and the panoramic roof are fully closed. Use extreme care and caution if young children or animals are in the vehicle. Failure to do so may result serious injury or death.

#### WARNING

Do not attempt to fill the tank past its maximum capacity. If the vehicle is parked on a slope, or in direct sunlight or high ambient temperatures, expansion of the fuel can cause spillage. Potentially leading to a fire or explosion.

#### **NOTICE**

Check the fuel pump information carefully, to make sure that the correct fuel is used to refuel the vehicle. Using incorrect fuel may damage the vehicle's engine.

#### **NOTICE**

Never leave the fuel pump nozzle unattended while refueling. Doing so may cause damage to the vehicle.

#### **NOTICE**

If the vehicle is filled with the incorrect fuel, it is essential to seek qualified assistance before starting the engine. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's engine.

## Fuel and refueling

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

### ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELING PROTECTION DEVICE

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not force an incorrectly sized fuel pump nozzle into the filler neck. Forcing an incorrectly sized fuel pump nozzle into the filler neck may result in damage to the vehicle.*



E176483

Vehicles with a diesel engine have an active misfueling protection device. A metal flap is visible in the fuel filler neck when the fuel filler cap is removed. The active misfueling protection device helps to prevent the fuel tank from being filled with the incorrect fuel, e.g., gasoline.

Automatic release occurs if a correctly sized, diesel fuel pump filler nozzle is inserted, fully and squarely, into the vehicle's fuel filler neck, as illustrated.

**Note:** To refuel with a fuel can, use the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle. See **372, RUNNING OUT OF FUEL**.

### FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel. Never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the tank is empty. When refueling the vehicle after the indicated range reads zero, it may not be possible to add the maximum fuel quantity. The fuel tank retains a small reserve of fuel. See **471, CAPACITIES**.



## Maintenance

### BREAKING-IN

The vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods, but the moving parts of the engine must still break-in, relative to each other. The process occurs mainly in the first 2 000 miles (3 000 km) of operation.

During this breaking-in period of 2 000 miles (3 000 km), observe and follow the instructions below:

- Do not fully press the accelerator pedal during starts and normal driving.
- Avoid high engine speeds (rpm) until the engine has reached its full operating temperature.
- Avoid laboring the engine by operating the engine in too high a gear at low speeds.
- Gradually increase engine and road speeds.
- Avoid continuous operation at high engine speed and abrupt stops.
- Avoid frequent cold starts followed by short-distance driving.
- Preferably take longer trips.
- Do not participate in track days, sports driving schools, or any similar events.

### AIR CONDITIONING (A/C)

#### WARNING

With reference to US legislation relating to Air Conditioning (A/C) refrigerants, J2845 Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile Air Conditioning (A/C) Systems (HFO-1234yf), states that under no circumstances should any part of the A/C system be serviced, dismantled, or replaced by anyone other than suitably qualified and certified personnel. Make sure that the refrigerant is correctly contained at all times. Failure to adhere to the above may result in serious personal injury or death.

#### WARNING

All replacement parts for the Air Conditioning (A/C) system must be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment. All replacement parts must comply with the relevant SAE standard (J2842). Contact a retailer/authorized repairer for advice. Failure to do so may lead to serious personal injury or death.

The following symbols may be used on an under-hood label and are relevant to the refrigerant fluid:



Caution.



Flammable refrigerant.



Required registered technician to service A/C.

## Maintenance



Air Conditioning (A/C) symbol.



Lubricant symbol.

### OWNER MAINTENANCE

#### **NOTICE**

Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tire wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay. It may cause damage to the vehicle.

In addition to the routine maintenance, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently.

#### DAILY CHECKS

- Operation of the lights, horn, turn signals, wipers, washers, and warning lamps.
- Operation of the seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from the Air Conditioning (A/C) system are normal.

#### WEEKLY CHECKS

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant level.
- Brake fluid level.
- Dynamic response fluid level.
- Windshield washer fluid level.
- Tire pressures and condition.
- Operate the Air Conditioning (A/C) system.

**Note:** The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.

### STORING A HYBRID VEHICLE

#### **NOTICE**

Always keep the hybrid battery charged to a minimum charge level of 25%. Failure to do so may result in damage to the hybrid battery.

#### **NOTICE**

Make sure that the 12V battery remains connected, and in a sufficiently charged state, during the storage period.

In the event of long term storage, make sure to charge the hybrid battery every 30 days.

Using the vehicle's charging cable to connect to an external charging station is the recommended method for charging the hybrid battery. In this event the instrument panel displays the current hybrid battery charge level. See **152, CONNECTING A CHARGING CABLE**.

Alternatively, the hybrid battery is charged when driving the vehicle. If required, deactivate the auto stop/start system to prevent operation of the electric motor. See **174, DEACTIVATING AUTO STOP/START**.

The current hybrid battery charge level can be viewed in the instrument panel's power gauge display. See **74, INSTRUMENT PANEL: HYBRID VEHICLES**.

**Note:** In extreme cold climate conditions store the vehicle in a warmer area to protect it from the environment.

## Maintenance

If the vehicle cannot be charged using the charging cable or via normal driving, then the following procedure may be used:

1. Make sure that adequate ventilation is available.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Never start the engine or leave it running, when the vehicle is in an enclosed space without adequate ventilation. Exhaust gases are poisonous and inhalation can cause unconsciousness and potentially lead to serious injury or death.**

2. To maintain control of the vehicle, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
3. Make sure the transmission is engaged in Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**).
4. Start and run the engine.
5. Make sure the instrument panel is configured to display the tachometer. See **74, INSTRUMENT PANEL: HYBRID VEHICLES**.
6. Lightly press and continually hold the accelerator pedal at approximately 1 500 rpm, to allow the engine to charge the hybrid battery.
7. Switch off the engine when the battery gauge indicates a charge level of 25%.

### **ARDUOUS DRIVING CONDITIONS**

When a vehicle is operated in extremely arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to servicing requirements.

Arduous driving conditions include:

- Driving in dusty and/or sandy conditions.

- Driving on rough and/or muddy roads.
- Frequent wading.
- Frequent driving at high speeds in high ambient temperatures above 122°F (50°C).
- Frequent driving in severe cold weather below -40°F (-40°C).
- Frequent driving in mountainous conditions.
- Frequent trailer towing.
- Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials on the driving surface.

Contact a retailer/authorised repairer for advice.

### **EXHAUST FILTER**

Diesel vehicles equipped with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) have more efficient emissions control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the exhaust filter during normal driving.

Cleaning of the exhaust filter, also known as regeneration, occurs automatically between approximately every 186 to 559 miles (300 to 900 km). Cleaning depends on driving conditions and requires the engine to reach its normal operating temperature.

Self-cleaning takes place when the vehicle is driven steadily at speeds between 37 mph to 70 mph (60 km/h to 112 km/h). The process normally takes 10 to 20 minutes. Self-cleaning can occur at lower vehicle speeds, but the process may take a little longer at a 30 mph (48 km/h) average speed.

## Maintenance

### Exhaust filter self-cleaning

Some driving conditions, e.g., frequently driving short distances in slow-moving traffic or in cold weather, may not provide sufficient opportunity to begin the exhaust filter self-cleaning automatically. When this occurs, a warning icon is displayed in the instrument panel, depending on status, as follows:



- Amber: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is required. Driving above 37 mph (60 km/h) for 20 minutes should clean the filter.

**Note:** Failure to follow the above driving approach to enable filter self-cleaning may result in reduced vehicle performance. The amber exhaust filter icon is eventually replaced by a red exhaust filter icon. The filter may need to be replaced.

- Green: Exhaust filter self-cleaning is complete.
- Red: The exhaust filter is full. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.

**Note:** A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during exhaust filter self-cleaning.

**Note:** If diesel fuel with a high sulfur content is used regularly, the exhaust may emit a cloud of smoke at the start of the self-cleaning process. The smoke is a result of the sulfur deposit being burnt off and is no cause for concern. Only use ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel.

### ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

#### NOTICE

No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction, which increases the risk of theft.

### AIR BAG SYSTEM

#### ⚠ WARNING

The components that make up the air bag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the air bag module, which could result in serious injury or death. Air bags should only be repaired by an authorized repairer.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Certain components of the vehicle, such as air bag modules and seat belt pre-tensioners, may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end-of-life disposal. Failure to dispose of these materials safely could result in serious injury or death. See: [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

To prevent malfunction of the air bag system, always consult a retailer/authorized repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a cell phone, two-way radio, or sound system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.

## Maintenance

- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the air bag system components. The components include the steering wheel, steering column, and instrument and dashboard panels.
- Any modification to the dashboard panels or steering wheel.

### PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

#### WARNING

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### WARNING

The fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous and could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants, and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle's warranty.

#### WARNING

Jaguar Land Rover Limited will not accept any liability for death, personal injury, or damage to property, which may occur as a result of fitment of non-approved accessories or the carrying out of non-approved conversions to the vehicle.

#### WARNING

With reference to US legislation relating to Air Conditioning (A/C) refrigerants, J2845 Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile Air Conditioning (A/C) Systems (HFO-1234yf) states that under no circumstances should any part of the A/C system be serviced, dismantled, or replaced by anyone other than suitably qualified and certified personnel. Make sure that the refrigerant is correctly contained at all times.

#### WARNING

All replacement parts for the Air Conditioning (A/C) system must be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment. All replacement parts must comply with the relevant SAE standard. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer for advice.

The following symbol may be used on an under-hood label and is relevant to the refrigerant fluid.



Extremely flammable. Chemicals that have an extremely low flash point and boiling point, and gases that catch fire when in contact with air.

### ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)

Any dynamometer testing should only be carried out by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practiced by retailers/authorized repairers.

## Maintenance

### SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

Make sure the following warnings have been read and fully understood. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch the engine, exhaust, or cooling system components until the engine has cooled. Handling any of these components when hot may cause personal injury.

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

Never leave the engine running when the vehicle is in a garage. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

Do not work beneath the vehicle with the wheel changing jack as the only means of support. The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. To avoid injury, always use correctly-rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped. Always pay attention to fans in operation to avoid personal injury.

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

Remove metal wristbands and jewelry, before working in the engine compartment. Failure to do so can lead to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the ignition turned on. Doing so may result in electric shock.

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals. Such contacts may result in serious personal injury or death.

### POISONOUS FLUIDS

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds. Fluids may cause serious injuries or infection.

Fluids used in motor vehicles are poisonous and should not be consumed or brought into contact with open wounds.

For safety, always read and obey all instructions printed on labels and containers.

### USED ENGINE OIL

Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.

## Maintenance

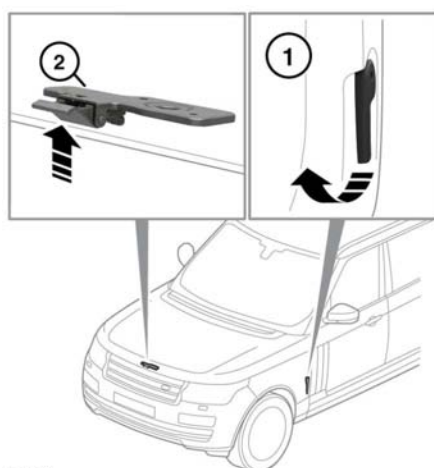


Pollution of drains, waterways, or soil is illegal. Use authorized waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

### OPENING THE HOOD

#### ⚠ WARNING

Before opening the hood, make sure that the ignition is switched off and the smart key is removed from the vehicle. Failure to do so can potentially result in serious injury or death.



E142616

1. Pull the handle, located in the left front footwell.
2. Pull the hood safety catch, located underneath the center of the hood at the front. Raise the hood.

### CLOSING THE HOOD

#### ⚠ WARNING

Before closing the hood, make sure that no-one is obstructing the closing area and that hands and clothes are clear. Failure to do so can result in personal injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not drive with the hood secured by the safety catch alone. An unsecured hood may obstruct driving visibility, potentially leading to personal injury or death.

#### NOTICE

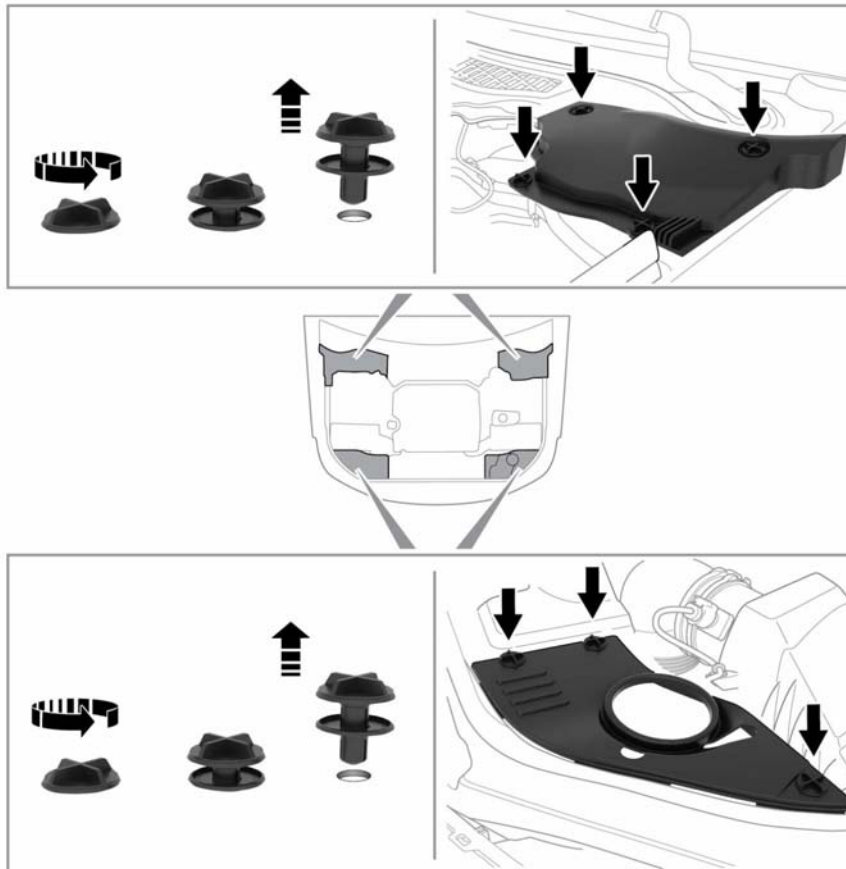
When closing the hood, make sure to stand in front of the vehicle. Do not attempt to close the hood while standing at the side of the vehicle. Doing so may result in incorrect latching of the hood.

To close the hood:

1. Using both hands to make sure of an even closure, lower the hood and let it drop from a height of between 8 to 20 in (20 to 50 cm).
2. Try to lift the front edge of the hood near both corners to check that it is securely engaged.
3. If the hood lifts slightly, it is not properly latched. Open the hood again, and with a little more force, try again to close it.

## Maintenance

### UNDER-HOOD COVERS REMOVAL



E151131

1. Release and remove the turnbuckle clips securing the cover.
2. Lift the edge of the cover and slide to remove.

### UNDER-HOOD COVERS REFITTING

#### **NOTICE**

*Before refitting the under hood covers, make sure no pipes, cables or other items, have been trapped between the cover and casing.*



## Maintenance

1. Place the cover over the casing, making sure the 4 holes are aligned.
2. Push the cover down firmly and fasten the 4 turnbuckle clips.

### FUEL SYSTEM

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician. Doing so may lead to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure that sparks and open flames are kept away from the engine compartment, as doing so may lead to fire or explosion, leading to serious personal injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Wear protective clothing, including, where possible, gloves made from an impervious material to avoid accidents that could lead to serious injuries or death.

### CHANGING A BULB

#### **⚠ WARNING**

High voltage is required to ignite the gas and metal vapor which are used to power xenon lights. Contact with this voltage can cause serious injury. Replacement or maintenance of xenon lights should be carried out only by suitably qualified personnel.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Xenon light units operate at a very high temperature. Make sure that the light units have cooled before attempting to touch them.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Xenon light units contain mercury which is highly toxic and can be extremely harmful.

#### **NOTICE**

*All lights are either LED or xenon units and must only be replaced by a retailer/authorized repairer.*

### WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

#### **NOTICE**

*To avoid damage to the hood, do not lift the wiper blades when they are in the normal parked position.*

**Note:** The smart key must remain in the vehicle while the wiper blades are replaced.

**Note:** Fit only replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.

**Note:** Replace the wiper blades in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Before changing a wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the service position as follows:

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off.
2. Switch the ignition on and then off again.

## Maintenance

3. Immediately press the wash/wipe control to its lowest position, as if to command a single wipe. Hold this position while switching on the ignition again. The wipers move to the service position. See **98, WIPER OPERATION**.
4. When the new parts have been fitted, switch the ignition off. The wipers return to the park position.

### PANORAMIC ROOF BLIND RESET

The fixed panoramic roof blinds need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or power supply is interrupted.

1. Switch on the engine.
2. With the blinds closed, press the front of the front blind switch and hold it for 10 seconds. See **107, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.
3. After 10 seconds the front and rear blinds fully close. If already in the closed position, an audible click is heard. Release the switch. Within 5 seconds, re-press and hold the front of the front blind switch until the blinds complete a full open and close cycle.
4. Once the rear blind has stopped moving, release the switch.

The blinds can now be operated as normal.

### PANORAMIC ROOF RESET

If the battery is disconnected or the power supply is interrupted while the panoramic roof is partially open, it may need to be recalibrated.

Once the battery is reconnected or the power supply is restored, recalibrate the panoramic roof as follows:

1. Switch the engine on.
2. With the roof and blind closed, press the front of the roof switch and hold for 20 seconds. See **107, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.
3. After 20 seconds, the panoramic roof begins to move. Release the switch. Within 5 seconds, press and hold the front of the roof switch until the blind and roof complete a full open and close cycle.

**Note:** The blind opens first and closes last.

4. Once the blind has stopped moving, release the switch.

The panoramic roof can now be operated as normal.

### WINDOW RESET

The windows need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

**Reset as follows:**

1. Close the window fully. See **107, ELECTRIC WINDOWS**.
2. Release the switch. Lift the switch to the close position and hold for 1 second.
3. Repeat the procedure on each window.

**Note:** Make sure that a minimum of 12 volts is available at all times. It is advisable to have the engine running while resetting the windows.

## Vehicle cleaning

### THE EXTERIOR

#### CAUTION

Following cleaning of the vehicle's exterior particularly with a pressure washer, it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive to dry out the brakes. Wet brakes may impair the vehicle's ability to safely slow down which may result in damage to the vehicle.

#### NOTICE

To prevent damage to your vehicle when using a detailing service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.

#### NOTICE

Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful enough to penetrate suspension joints, door or window seals, and damage trim and door locks. Never aim the water jet directly at any cameras, the engine air intake, heater air intakes, body seals (doors, sunroof, windows, etc.) or at any components which may be damaged (lights, mirrors, exterior trim, suspension seals and gaiters, etc.). Make sure that the pressure washer nozzle is always at a distance of more than 12 inches (300 mm) from any component of the vehicle.

#### NOTICE

Do not use a power wash system in the engine bay area, as it may cause damage.

#### NOTICE

Make sure that you read and comply with all warnings and product instructions supplied with any cleaning products. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

#### NOTICE

Never use cleaning products that are not approved for use on vehicles. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

#### NOTICE

Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible. Remove any such substances immediately.

#### NOTICE

When lifting the wiper blades for cleaning, use the winter park position to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Make sure that the panoramic roof channels are kept clean to allow continued smooth operation of the mechanism.

#### Satin matte paint

#### NOTICE

The vehicle manufacturer recommends the use of specialized satin paint products when cleaning the vehicle's exterior. Any other cleaning or paint protection product may have an adverse effect on the paint finish.

#### NOTICE

Never polish vehicles that have a satin matte paint finish. Polishing causes the finish to shine and may reduce the matte effect.

## Vehicle cleaning

### **NOTICE**

*Do not use an automated car wash. Using unapproved cleaning equipment can cause damage to the vehicle's exterior.*

### **NOTICE**

*Do not affix stickers, films, magnetic plates, or similar items to the vehicle's exterior. Removing such objects can cause damage to the vehicle's paint work.*

Additional care is required when cleaning the exterior of vehicles with a satin matte paint finish. It is recommended to wash the vehicle by hand, using a soft sponge, making sure not to apply high pressure to the paint surface. Avoid washing the vehicle in direct sunlight.

Remove any of the following substances immediately, where possible:

- Insect remains.
- Bird droppings.
- Fingerprints.
- Tree resin.
- Oils, grease, and fuels.
- Wax.
- Tar spots.

### **SENSORS AND CAMERAS**

#### **NOTICE**

*When washing the vehicle, do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors and cameras. Do not use abrasive materials or hard/sharp objects, to clean the sensors and cameras. Only use approved vehicle shampoo. Using unapproved cleaning equipment or method can cause damage to the sensors and cameras.*

Park assist and parking aid sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

Operate the rear screen wash to clean the rear camera lens. See **98, WIPER OPERATION**.

If required, the cameras should be cleaned using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass-cleaning product.

### **UNDER BODY MAINTENANCE**

Regularly flush the under body with plain, clean water, and pay particular attention to areas where mud and debris collect.

If damage or corrosion are detected, have the vehicle checked by a Retailer/Authorized Repairer as soon as possible.

### **ENGINE COMPARTMENT**

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**The high voltage system has no serviceable parts. Never disassemble, remove or replace high voltage components, cables or connectors. Tampering with the high voltage system can cause severe burns or electric shock, which may result in serious injury or death. High voltage cables and connectors are coloured orange for identification purposes. If maintenance or repair is required, always consult a retailer/authorised repairer.**

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment. Pressure washing has the potential to cause damage to certain engine components.*

## Vehicle cleaning

### NOTICE

Make sure that the brake fluid reservoir is kept dry at all times. Only use a clean, dry cloth to clean the brake fluid cap and reservoir. Not doing so can cause damage to the vehicle.

**Note:** Pressure washing has the potential to damage high voltage electrical components and cables.

### AFTER OFF-ROAD DRIVING

#### NOTICE

Make sure that the areas around air intakes and the front grille are clean and clear of debris. Pay particular attention to the lower grille, radiator pack and intercoolers. Failure to do so may cause the engine to overheat, leading to severe engine damage.

Make sure that the vehicle, including the underside, is cleaned as soon as possible after driving off-road.

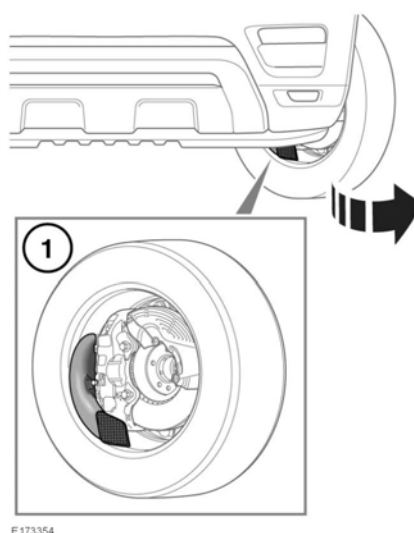
After off-road driving, make sure that the area around the wheel and brake assemblies is clean and clear of debris. Inspect the wheel rims for signs of damage or scoring, and check for unusual brake noise when driving and applying the brakes.

### WARNING

**Do not drive the vehicle with damaged wheels. Driving with damaged wheels can lead to the loss of control over the vehicle and cause serious injury or death.**

### WARNING

If any damage is found, or suspected, to any of the brake components or wheels, have the vehicle checked by a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible. Driving with damaged wheels can lead to the loss of control over the vehicle and cause serious injury or death.



Autobiography vehicles with a V8 gasoline (405 kW) engine are fitted with brake cooling ducts on the front wheels. Pay careful attention to these areas after driving the vehicle off-road. Make sure the cooling duct (1) is clear from debris. A pressure washer may be used, if required. For ease of access, start the engine and turn the steering to the relevant full lock. Switch off the ignition.

Check to make sure that off-road activity has not displaced the cooling duct.



## Vehicle cleaning

### **⚠ WARNING**

Blocked, displaced, or damaged brake cooling ducts reduce on-road braking performance. Have the vehicle checked by a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.

### ALLOY WHEELS

#### **NOTICE**

Use only approved wheel cleaning products. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

### THE INTERIOR

#### **⚠ CAUTION**

Some cleaning products contain substances that are harmful and can cause health problems if used incorrectly. Some cleaning products may cause damage to the vehicle's interior. Make sure to read the manufacturer's instructions carefully.

#### **NOTICE**

To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a detailing service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's Handbook.

### CLEANING SWITCHES AND CONTROLS

#### **NOTICE**

Use a soft, dry, lint-free cloth when cleaning switches or controls. Do not apply excessive pressure when doing so.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not spray liquids directly onto the surface of switches and controls. Liquids leaking into the gaps around switches and controls can damage the electronics of the vehicle.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not use chemical agents, solvents, or domestic cleaning products. Using unapproved cleaning products may damage the vehicle.

#### **NOTICE**

When cleaning, do not allow sharp or abrasive objects to make contact with the components. Using unapproved cleaning equipment may damage the vehicle.

### FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not polish the Instrument panel. Polished surfaces are reflective, and may interfere with the driver's view. Driving with an obstructed view may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

Clean plastic or cloth-faced surfaces with warm water and non-detergent soap, and then wipe clean with a soft cloth.

## Vehicle cleaning

### LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

#### NOTICE

*Only use cleaning products specifically designed for use on leather. Do not use chemical, alcohol, or abrasive materials, as they will cause rapid deterioration of the leather. The use of products, which are not approved, will invalidate the warranty. If in any doubt as to which products to use, consult an retailer/authorized repairer.*

#### NOTICE

*Some materials or fabrics are prone to dye transfer, which can cause unsightly discoloration of lighter colored leathers. Affected areas should be cleaned and re-protected as soon as possible.*

Leather should be cleaned and protected at least every 6 months.

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly, and clean every 1 to 2 months as follows:

1. Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-colored cloth. Avoid over-wetting the leather.
2. If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm, soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
3. Use Land Rover leather cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.

Use Land Rover leather cleaner several times a year to maintain the leather's suppleness and appearance. The cleaner will nourish and moisturize and help to improve the surface protection film against dust and substances.

- Dark clothing may stain leather seats, just like other upholstery products.
- Sharp objects, such as belts, zippers, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather's surface.
- Unless spillages, such as tea, coffee or ink, are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.

If a detailing service is used, make sure that the detailer is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

### SEAT BELTS

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact. Damage to the seat belt can greatly reduce its effectiveness in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.**

Extend the seat belts fully, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended.

**Note:** While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage/wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and rectified by a retailer/authorized repairer.



## Vehicle cleaning

### AIR BAG MODULE COVERS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Air bag covers should be cleaned using only a slightly dampened cloth and a small amount of upholstery cleaner. Some cleaning products may cause damage to air bag covers and air bags which can lead to serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not allow the air bag covers, or surrounding areas, to become contaminated with liquids. Any substance which enters the mechanism can prevent correct deployment of an air bag during an impact and may cause serious injury or death.

### CARPET AND MATS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Correctly secure the floor mats before driving. Never place mats on top of each other. Unsecured or incorrectly positioned mats can obstruct the brake and/or accelerator pedal, which can result in accidents, potentially causing serious injury or death.

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains, a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

### CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not polish the Instrument panel. Polished surfaces are reflective, and may interfere with the driver's view. Driving with an obstructed view may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

#### **NOTICE**

*When cleaning around electrical equipment, such as switches, make sure fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim. Liquids leaking into the gaps around switches and controls can damage the electronics of the vehicle.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as dashboard switches. Certain products may damage the vehicle's electrical equipment.*

Clean the vehicle's screens and displays as follows:

- Clean with the cloth provided with the vehicle.
- Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaners.
- Do not allow sharp, hard or abrasive objects to make contact with the screens.
- Avoid exposing screens to direct sunlight for long periods.
- To prevent errors occurring, make sure only one finger at a time is in contact with the touch screen.
- Do not use excessive pressure.



## Vehicle cleaning

### WIPER BLADES

#### **NOTICE**

*To avoid damage to the wiper blade, do not lift the wiper by the wiper blade. Always lift the wiper by the wiper arm. Not doing so may result in damage to the wiper blade.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not use excessive pressure. Excessive pressure on the wiper blades can damage the blades.*

Heavy contamination on the wiper blades should be removed, using a soft, damp sponge or cloth.

### BLOCKED WASHER JETS

#### **⚠ CAUTION**

**Do not operate the washer jets during unblocking or adjustment. Windshield washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.**

If a washer jet becomes blocked, use a thin strand of wire to unblock the jet, by inserting the wire into the jet. Make sure the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

### REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches in the paint/bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal corrodes quickly, and, if left untreated can result in expensive repairs.

## Fluid level checks

### FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS

#### ⚠ WARNING

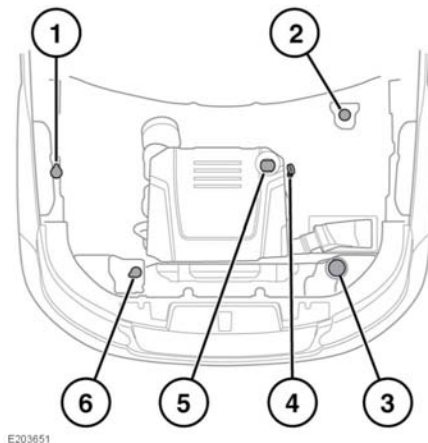
Do not start the engine, or drive the vehicle, if leaked fluid could possibly make contact with a hot surface. Any leaked fluid coming into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust, could result in combustion. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

Always observe and follow the safety precautions when working in the engine compartment. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death.

**Note:** Further information on safety precautions can be found in the relevant section of the Owner's Handbook. See **382, SAFETY IN THE GARAGE**.

A number of simple checks and routine maintenance must be carried out at regular intervals. See **378, WEEKLY CHECKS**.

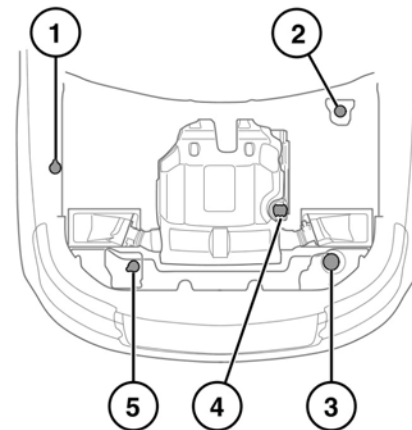
#### 2.0L gasoline engine



E203651

1. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap. All vehicles, except for cold climate vehicles.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
3. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
4. Engine oil level dipstick.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap. Cold climate vehicles only.

#### 3.0L gasoline engine

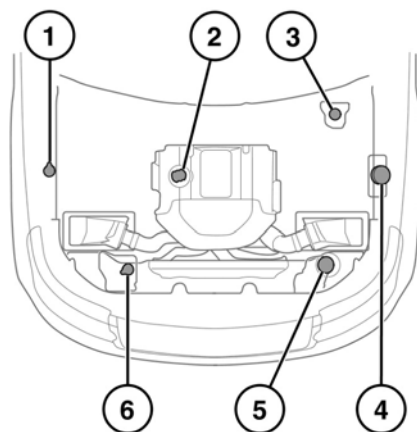


E189446

1. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap. All vehicles, except for cold climate vehicles.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
3. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
4. Engine oil filler cap.
5. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap. Cold climate vehicles only.

## Fluid level checks

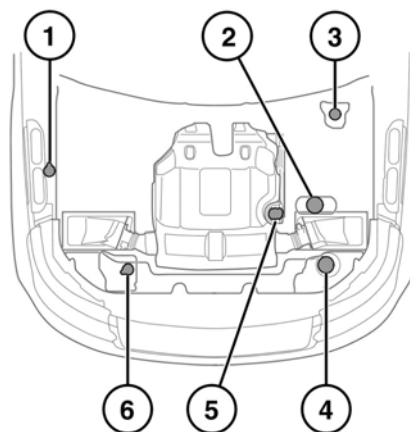
### 3.0L diesel engine



E188447

1. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap. All vehicles, except for cold climate vehicles.
2. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
3. Engine oil filler cap.
4. Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) reservoir filler cap. See **370, DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)**.
5. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
6. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap. Cold climate vehicles only.

### 5.0L gasoline engine



E188448

1. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap. All vehicles, except for cold climate vehicles.
2. Dynamic response fluid reservoir cap (beneath cover).
3. Brake fluid reservoir cap.
4. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
5. Engine oil filler cap.
6. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap. Cold climate vehicles only.

## Fluid level checks

### CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

#### NOTICE

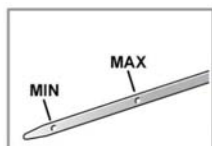
Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in the oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.

Never allow the oil level to fall below the lower mark on the dipstick or the oil level indicator.

If the instrument panel displays the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW**, stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Allowing the engine to continue running with low oil pressure may cause the engine to seize. Seek qualified assistance immediately. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.

Check the engine oil level frequently. Top up, as required, using the correct grade for the engine.

#### Engines with a dipstick



E181178

#### NOTICE

The dipstick on 2.0L gasoline engines features a lug to aid correct fitment. Make sure the lug is correctly aligned with the groove in the dipstick tube. Failure to do this could result in the dipstick not fitting correctly and oil escaping from the engine.

Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.

- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil is cold.

**Note:** If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine and let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint-free cloth.
2. Fully re-insert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level.

If the oil level is nearer to the upper mark on the dipstick, do not add any oil.

If the oil level is below half-way, add 0.5 U.S. quarts (0.5 liters) of oil. Recheck the level and add more oil, if necessary.

If the oil level is below the lower mark, add 1.9 U.S. quarts (1.8 liters) of oil.

Once the oil has reached the correct level on the dipstick, wait 5 minutes and recheck.

#### Engines without a dipstick

Engines without a dipstick feature an electronic monitoring system. The engine oil level is not monitored when the engine is running, or when the vehicle is in motion.

Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

- The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil has reached its normal working temperature (oil is hot).

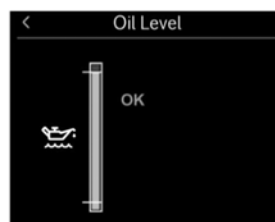
## Fluid level checks

- The engine has been switched off for 10 minutes. The system does not give an accurate reading until the oil level has stabilized.

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

- Switch on the vehicle's ignition. Do not start the engine. See **170, SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION**.
- Select **Oil Level** from the **Vehicle Info** instrument panel menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The instrument panel displays the engine oil level indicator.



E180685

The indicator displays an indication of the oil level. Messages to the right of the indicator advise of any action to be taken.

Message	Action
OK	No action required.
Overfilled	Seek qualified assistance immediately. Do not drive the vehicle as this will cause serious damage to the engine.
Low	Add 1.6 U.S. quarts (1.5 liters) of oil. Recheck the level.
Critically Low	Seek qualified assistance immediately.
Add XX Quarts	Add the advised quantity of oil to the engine. Recheck the level.
Not Available	The oil level is stabilizing. Switch off the ignition. Wait 10 minutes, then recheck the oil level display.
ENGINE OIL LEVEL MONITOR SYSTEM FAULT	Seek qualified assistance immediately.

## Fluid level checks

### TOPPING UP THE OIL

#### NOTICE

*The vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification. See **469, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.*

*Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. A resultant cause, could be engine failure.*

*Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Add engine oil in small quantities. Recheck the level to make sure the engine is not overfilled.*

*Use of the correct oil specification is essential. Make sure the oil is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated.*

To top up the oil:

1. Turn the oil filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.
2. For engines with a dipstick:
  - Add oil to maintain the level between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the dipstick.

**Note:** The approximate quantity of oil required to raise the level from **MIN** to **MAX** is 1.9 U.S. quarts (1.8 liters).
3. For engines with an electronic monitoring system:
  - Add oil, as indicated by the engine oil level indicator messages in the instrument panel.
4. Clean up any oil spilled during topping up.

5. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.
6. To refit the oil filler cap, turn the cap clockwise until a resistance is felt.

### CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

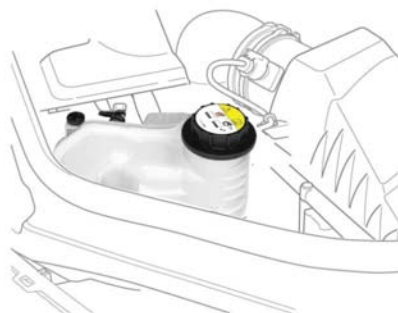
#### NOTICE

*Running the engine without coolant causes serious engine damage.*

#### NOTICE

*If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.*

Check the coolant reservoir level at least every week. Check more frequently in high mileage or arduous conditions. Always check the level when the system is cold.



E151133

Make sure the coolant level remains between the **MIN** and **MAX** indicator marks, located on the side of the expansion tank.

If steam is expelled from the pressure cap, the vehicle must be examined by a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.

## Fluid level checks

If the coolant level has dropped suddenly, or by a large amount, arrange for the vehicle to be examined by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.

### TOPPING UP THE COOLANT

#### WARNING

Never remove the coolant reservoir filler cap when the engine is hot. Escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury.

Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.

Antifreeze is highly flammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with open flames or other sources of ignition, e.g., a hot engine. A fire may result.

#### WARNING

Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

#### **NOTICE**

*When traveling in territories where the water supply contains salt, always make sure to carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water causes serious engine damage.*

#### **NOTICE**

*The use of non-approved antifreeze has an adverse effect on the engine's cooling system and, therefore, engine durability. See **469, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.*

*Antifreeze damages painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately. Wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not use any anti-leak products in the cooling system, as it causes damage to the vehicle.*

Antifreeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The antifreeze content of the coolant must be maintained at 50% to 60% all year round, not just in cold conditions. To make sure the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are maintained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year. Regardless of the distance traveled, the antifreeze should be replaced every 10 years. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components. The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 68°F (20°C) is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°F (-40°C).

To top up the coolant:

1. Rotate the coolant reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Top up to the **MAX** indicator mark on the side of the coolant reservoir. Use a mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze. See **469, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

## Fluid level checks

**Note:** In an emergency, and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable, top up the cooling system with clean water. Be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt, consult a qualified technician.

3. To refit the coolant reservoir filler cap, rotate the filler cap clockwise, until the cap's ratchet clicks at least three times.

### CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID LEVEL

#### ⚠ WARNING

Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long, or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

#### ⚠ WARNING

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is highly flammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with open flames, a hot engine, or other sources of ignition. A fire may result.

#### ⚠ WARNING

**Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.**

If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the Instrument panel will illuminate. See **83, BRAKE (RED)**.

**Note:** If the warning lamp illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, stop the vehicle, as soon as safety permits, by gently applying the brakes. Check and top up the fluid level, if necessary.

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week. Check more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions.



The driver's side cover must be removed to check the brake fluid level. See **394, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS** and **384, UNDER-HOOD COVERS REMOVAL**. Check the brake fluid reservoir level. The level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.



## Fluid level checks

**Note:** The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use, as a result of brake pad wear. The fluid level should not be allowed to drop below the **MIN** mark.

### TOPPING UP THE BRAKE FLUID

#### **NOTICE**

Always use brake fluid which has the correct specification. See **469, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

#### **NOTICE**

Brake fluid damages painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately. Wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

#### **NOTICE**

Only use new fluid from an airtight container. Fluid from open containers, or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture. Contaminated fluid will adversely affect performance, and must not be used.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not top up the brake fluid to the maximum mark unless the brake pads have been replaced. If unsure, seek qualified assistance.

To top up the brake fluid:

1. Clean the brake fluid reservoir and the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Rotate the reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
3. Top up the reservoir to at least the minimum mark.
4. To refit the reservoir filler cap, rotate the cap clockwise.

5. Refit the under-hood cover. See **384, UNDER-HOOD COVERS REFITTING**.

### CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Some windshield washer products are flammable, particularly if high or undiluted concentrations are exposed to sparking. Do not allow windshield washer fluid to come into contact with exposed flames or sources of ignition, as this can cause a fire or explosion.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 40°F (4°C), use a windshield washer fluid with frost protection. In cold weather, failure to use a windshield washer fluid with frost protection could result in impaired vision and increase the risk of a vehicle crash.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not use an antifreeze or a vinegar and water solution in the washer reservoir. Antifreeze damages painted surfaces, while vinegar can damage the windshield washer pump.

#### **NOTICE**

Body panels may suffer discoloration as a result of windshield washer fluid spillage. Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

#### **NOTICE**

Only use approved windshield washer fluid.

## Fluid level checks

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the windshield, rear window and headlight washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with windshield washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer controls periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

### TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID

**Note:** National or local regulations may restrict the use of Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) which are commonly used as antifreeze agents in windshield washer fluid. A windshield washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all climates in which the vehicle is operated.

The washer reservoir supplies the windshield, rear window and headlight washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with windshield washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer controls periodically, to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

Top up the windshield washer fluid as follows:

1. Clean the washer fluid reservoir filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir until the fluid is visible in the filler neck.

4. Replace the filler cap.

Cold climate vehicles also feature a supplemental washer reservoir. The same care points, described above, should be applied to vehicles fitted with a supplemental washer reservoir.

**Note:** On vehicles fitted with a supplemental washer reservoir, always check and top up the main reservoir first.

### CHECKING THE DYNAMIC RESPONSE FLUID LEVEL

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Dynamic response fluid is highly toxic. Keep containers sealed and out of reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Dynamic response fluid is highly flammable. Do not allow leaking dynamic response fluid to come into contact with open flames or other sources of ignition, e.g., a hot engine. A fire may result. If leaking fluid can come into contact with sources of ignition, do not attempt to drive the vehicle to a repair facility. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not start the engine if the fluid level has dropped below the **MIN** mark. Severe damage to the dynamic response system could result.

## Fluid level checks

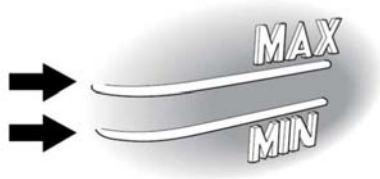
### NOTICE

Seek qualified assistance immediately if there is a noticeable drop in the fluid level.

### NOTICE

If fluid loss is slow, the reservoir may be topped up to the upper level mark to enable the vehicle to be driven to a repair facility for examination. However, qualified assistance is recommended before driving the vehicle.

Check and top up the fluid level with the engine switched off and the system cold.



E150756

The fluid level should be maintained between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

### TOPPING UP THE DYNAMIC RESPONSE FLUID

#### NOTICE

Dynamic response fluid damages painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately. Wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

#### NOTICE

Do not fill the reservoir above the **MAX** mark.

**Note:** Clean the dynamic response fluid reservoir and the filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.



E175690

Top up the fluid level with the engine switched off and the system cold.

To top up the dynamic response fluid:

1. Release the clips and move the reservoir cover aside.
2. Rotate the reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
3. Using the approved fluid, top up the reservoir until the fluid level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks. See **469, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

When the fluid is at the correct level, replace the filler cap and the reservoir cover.

## Vehicle battery

### BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow open flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Make sure, when working near or handling the battery, suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the Owner's Handbook for information, before handling the battery.

### CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 SECOND WARNING STATEMENT

#### ⚠ WARNING

Batteries, Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, and other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

### BATTERY CARE

#### ⚠ DANGER

If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal. Seek medical assistance immediately.

#### ⚠ WARNING

If battery electrolyte comes into contact with eyes, skin, or clothes, remove the affected clothing. Flush the skin and eyes with large amounts of clean water. Seek medical assistance immediately. The battery electrolyte may cause serious injury.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not connect any 12-volt equipment directly to the battery terminals. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion. A spark or an explosion may cause serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Make sure that the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build-up in the battery, potentially resulting in an explosion. An explosion may cause serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not expose the battery to an open flame or spark as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

## Vehicle battery

### **⚠ WARNING**

Never jump start, boost or charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Remove all metal jewelry before working on, or near, the battery. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits potentially resulting in an explosion. A spark or an explosion may cause serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not allow battery electrolyte to contact with skin or eyes. Battery electrolyte is both toxic and corrosive which can result in severe injuries. If battery electrolyte comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothes, remove the affected. Flush the skin or eyes with plenty of water. Seek medical assistance immediately.

### **NOTICE**

*Do not allow battery electrolyte to come into contact with fabrics or painted surfaces. If battery electrolyte comes into contact with any surface, the surface should be washed down immediately with plenty of clean water.*

An Absorbed Glass Matt (AGM) battery is fitted to this vehicle.

### **NOTICE**

*AGM batteries are sealed for life and require no maintenance. Do not attempt to open or remove the top from an AGM battery. Doing so can cause damage to the battery.*

## CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

### **⚠ WARNING**

Remove all metal jewelry before working on, or near, a battery or boost terminals. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery or boost terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, resulting in an explosion.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. Battery posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash the hands thoroughly after handling the battery.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not expose any battery to an open flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not connect the jump leads to any battery terminal on the vehicle. Doing so can cause a spark, which can result in an explosion. Doing so will also result in damage to the charging system.



## Vehicle battery

### **⚠ WARNING**

Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Before attempting to start the vehicle, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied, or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park (P) is selected. Failure to do so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Suitable eye protection must be worn when working in the area of a battery. Battery acid can cause serious injury to eyes.

### **⚠ WARNING**

During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury. Keep sparks and open flames away from the battery.

### **NOTICE**

Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles, other than the jump leads. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle.

### **NOTICE**

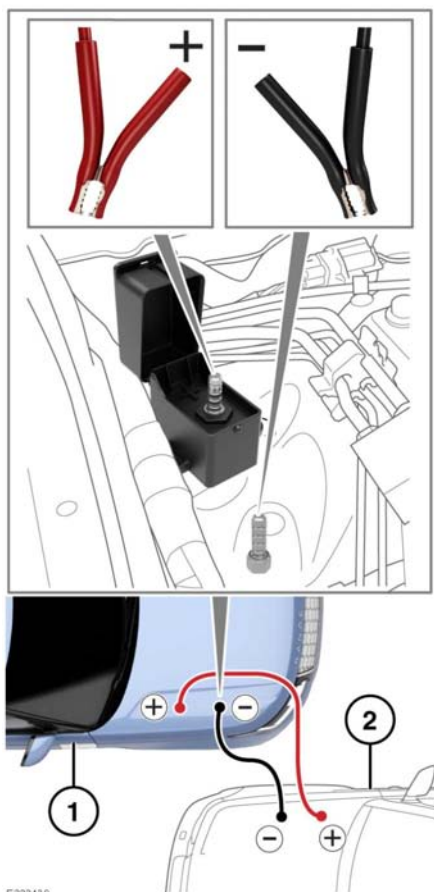
Make sure that any battery or starting aid is a 12 volt device. Unapproved devices can cause damage to the vehicle.

### **NOTICE**

Disconnect the jump leads before operating any electrical equipment. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle.

**Note:** Before connecting the jump leads to the disabled vehicle's boost point terminals, make sure the donor vehicle's boost point connections are correct. Also make sure that all electrical equipment has been switched off.

## Vehicle battery



E222439

1. Disabled vehicle.
2. Donor vehicle.

To connect the jumper cables:

1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead to the recommended positive (+) boost point terminal on the donor vehicle.

**Note:** Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended positive boost terminal.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (red) jump lead to the positive (+) boost point terminal on the disabled vehicle, as illustrated.

3. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the recommended negative (-) boost point terminal on the donor vehicle.

**Note:** Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended negative boost terminal.

4. Connect the other end of the negative (black) jump lead to the negative (-) boost point terminal on the disabled vehicle, as illustrated.

**Note:** Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all four connections are secure.

5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.
6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

**Note:** Do not switch on any electrical circuits on the disabled vehicle until after the jump leads are removed.

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for 2 minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.
9. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
10. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the donor vehicle.
11. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the previously disabled vehicle.
12. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

## Vehicle battery

### CONNECTING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a booster battery, carry out the following:

1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead to the vehicle's positive (+) boost point terminal.
2. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the vehicle's negative (-) boost point terminal.
3. Switch on the starting aid.
4. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the vehicle's boost point terminal.
6. Switch off the starting aid.
7. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the vehicle's boost point terminal.

### REMOVING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

#### NOTICE

*Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.*

Battery removal and refit should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

### CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

#### WARNING

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

#### WARNING

Make sure that the correct type and rating of charger used. Using an unsuitable charger may damage the battery, and could cause the battery to explode.

#### WARNING

Always charge the battery in a well ventilated area away from any open flames, sparks or other ignition sources. During charging the battery can produce a highly explosive and flammable gas.

If the vehicle's battery should require charging, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorized repairer or the local authority.

### REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

#### WARNING

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.



## Vehicle battery

### **⚠ WARNING**

Only install a battery of the same type and rating. Installing an incorrect battery may result in a fire and injury, or damage to the electrical system. If you are in any doubt when installing a battery, seek qualified assistance.

### **⚠ WARNING**

When refitting the battery make sure that no metal objects, or vehicle components, come into contact with the battery terminals.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Switch the ignition off before disconnecting the battery terminals.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Always disconnect the negative terminal first and reconnect last.

If the vehicle's battery should require replacing, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorized repairer or the local authority.

### EFFECTS OF DISCONNECTING

#### **⚠ WARNING**

On Hybrid vehicles, the 12V battery lead remains live, even when the 12V battery is disconnected. Suitable precautions need to be taken by qualified personnel. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death. Consult a repairer/authorised repairer.

Disconnecting the battery can affect a number of vehicle systems, especially if there is insufficient battery power before disconnection. For example, the alarm may trigger, depending on its state when the battery is disconnected. If the alarm does sound, use the smart key, in the normal way, to disarm the security system. The windows may need recalibrating to operate correctly.

### BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If excessive battery discharge occurs, the system begins to shut down non-essential electrical systems in order to protect the battery.

If the IPSM calculates that the battery's condition is not within the set parameters, there are two levels of action which can be taken. Both levels have an accompanying message on the touchscreen, and in the case of the low battery warning, in the instrument panel.



## Vehicle battery

- **Energy Management:** Is displayed on the touchscreen if the engine is not running and if system features are causing excessive battery discharge. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.
- **Low Battery - Please Start Engine:** Is displayed on the touchscreen and in the instrument panel, if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.

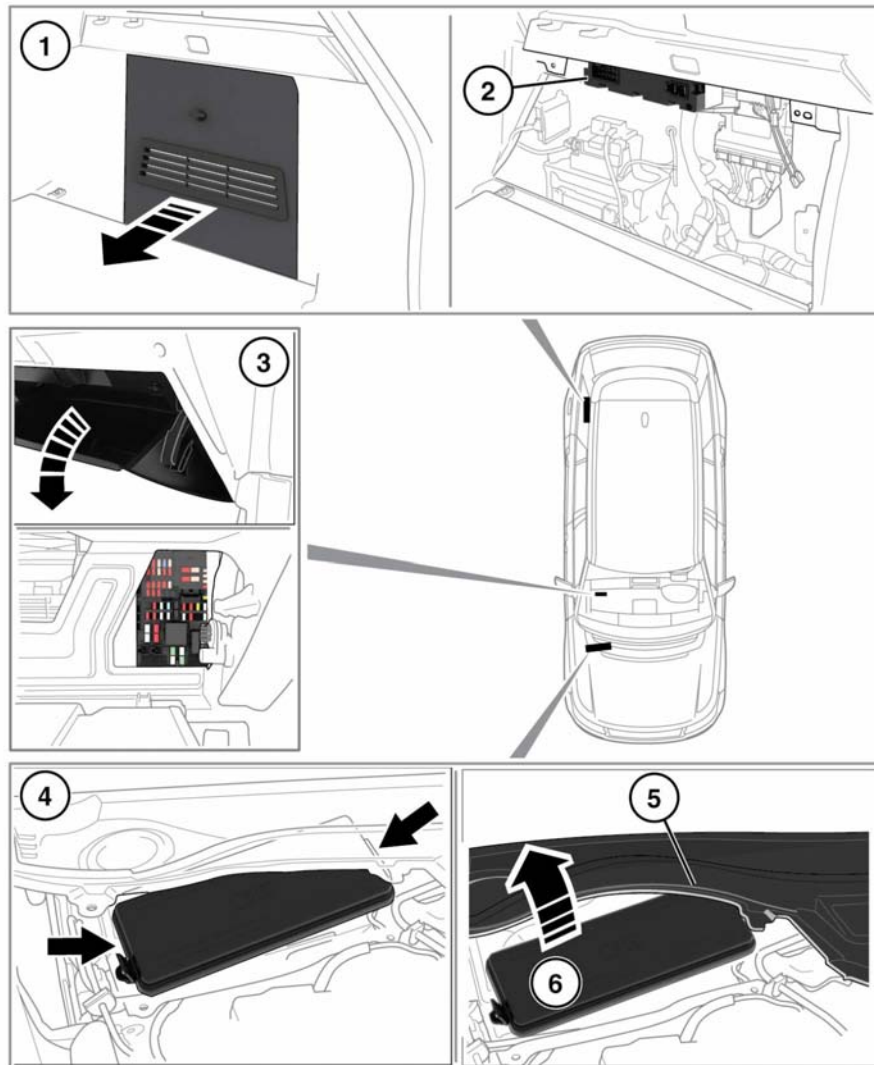
### **NOTICE**

*Only start the engine if it is safe to do so.*

**Note:** *If the message **Low Battery - Please Start Engine** is displayed, drive the vehicle to allow the battery to recover to an acceptable level. Drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 32°F (0°C), or at least 60 minutes if the temperatures are below 32°F (0°C). If normal system operation is not resumed when the engine is switched back off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, restart the engine. If problems still exist, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.*

## Fuses

### FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



E176140

## Fuses

### NOTICE

When a fuse box is exposed, take care to protect the box from moisture. Refit the access panel at the earliest opportunity.

1. To access the loadspace fuse box, open the tailgate. Remove the right-side access panel, by grasping the top of the panel and pulling sharply.

**Note:** Hybrid vehicles feature an additional fuse box, located adjacent the loadspace fuse box. The fuses contained within this fuse box should only be examined or replaced by an authorized retailer/repairer.

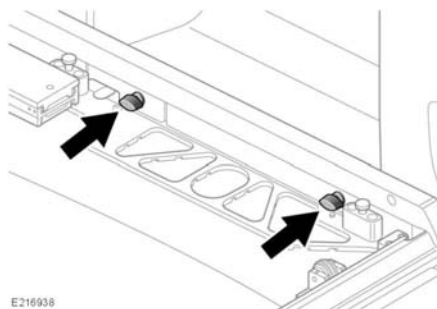
- When refitting the access panel, make sure that the three securing pegs are aligned with their respective holes, before pushing the panel fully home.
2. Loadspace fuse box. A label, located in a slot under the fuse box, shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.
  3. To access the passenger compartment fuse box, open the glovebox. Press the top of the support stay at each end, and lower the glovebox into the footwell. A label on the front of the fuse access panel shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations. Remove the panel to gain access to the fuses. See **112, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**.
  4. To access the engine compartment fuse box, remove the under-hood cover. See **384, UNDER-HOOD COVERS REMOVAL**.
  5. Lift up the edge of the leaf screen panel, just enough to allow removal of the fuse box cover.

6. Remove the fuse box cover, by releasing the clips on each end. A label on the inside of the cover shows the circuits protected and the fuse locations.

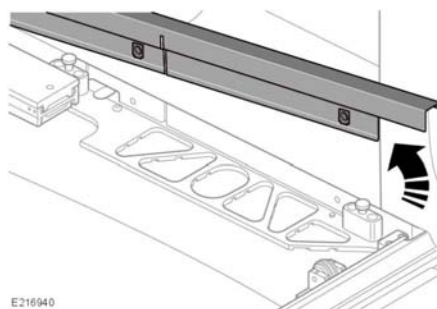
### Loadspace fuse box access on vehicles with a deployable loadspace floor

To access the loadspace fuse box, carry out the following procedure.

Raise the deployable loadspace floor to the open position. See **135, DEPLOYABLE LOADSPACE FLOOR**.



Turn the two fixings on the right-side floor rail through 90°, to release from the spring clip. When released, turn through 90° again, back to the horizontal position and remove from the rail. Keep the fixings in a safe place.



## Fuses

Lift the removable rail section and carefully remove the rail from the vehicle.

Lower the deployable loadspace floor.

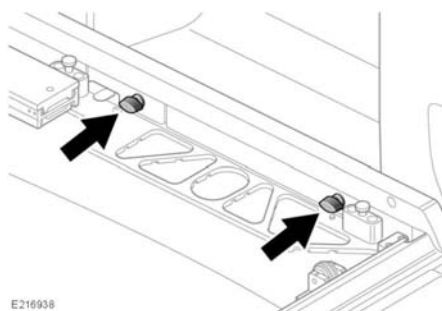
Move the deployable loadspace floor fully backward. See **135, DEPLOYABLE LOADSPACE FLOOR**.

**Note:** Refer to the fuse box location section of the Owner's Handbook for the procedure for removing the side trim panel.

### NOTICE

When removing or replacing the side trim panel, take care to avoid damaging the panel on the floor rail.

To fit the rail, reverse the removal procedure.



Hold the fixings in the horizontal position and firmly push into the rail section. A click is heard as the spring clip engages.

## REPLACING A FUSE

### ⚠ WARNING

**Hybrid vehicles only:** The high voltage system has no serviceable parts. Never disassemble, remove or replace high voltage components, cables or connectors. Tampering with the high voltage system can cause severe burns or electric shock, which may result in serious injury or death. High voltage cables and connectors are coloured orange for identification purposes. If maintenance or repair is required, always consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

### NOTICE

Always switch off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit before replacing a fuse. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

### NOTICE

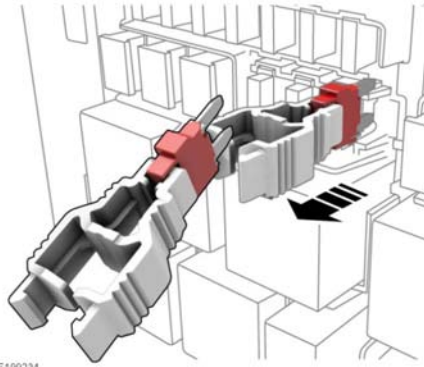
Fit approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of a matching specification. Using an incorrect fuse may result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system and can result in a fire.

### NOTICE

If the replacement fuse blows after fitment, the system should be checked by a retailer/authorized repairer. Further damage could be caused to the vehicle if ignored.

**Note:** Relays and fuses not detailed in this Owner's Handbook should only be replaced by qualified persons.

## Fuses



E199234

If an electrical system has stopped operating, the cause may be a blown fuse. The easiest way to check if a fuse has blown is to first remove it.

To check for a blown fuse:

1. Check the fuse box tables in the Fuses section of the Owner's Handbook to identify the correct fuse.
2. Gain access to the appropriate fuse box. See **411, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS**.
3. Check the fuse box label to locate the correct fuse. Depending on the fuse box, the label is located on the underside of the lid, or on the back of the trim panel.
4. Remove the fuse by pulling it straight out using the removal tool. See **411, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS**.
5. Check for a break in the wire within the fuse. If the wire within the fuse is broken, the fuse has blown and needs replacing. If the wire is still intact, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.
6. Refit or replace the fuse, as appropriate. Make sure the fuse is pushed fully into its correct position.

### ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
1	10	Red.	Auto stop/start (hybrid vehicles only).
2	-	-	-
3	15	Blue.	Hybrid vehicle powertrain.
4	15	Blue.	Hybrid vehicle powertrain.
5	10	Red.	Hybrid vehicle powertrain.
6	-	-	-
7	-	-	-
8	-	-	-
9	25	Clear.	Rear screen washer.
10	15	Blue.	Front fog lights.
11	15	Blue.	Horn.

## Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
12	30	Green.	Right-side headlight washer pump.
13	30	Green.	Left-side headlight washer pump.
14	15	Blue.	Auto stop/start.
15	15	Blue.	Supercharger cooling.
16	25	Clear.	Windshield washer jets.
17	10	Red.	Engine management system.
18	20	Yellow.	Engine management system (gasoline only).
19	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
20	25	Clear.	Engine management system.
21	20	Yellow.	Engine management system.
22	10	Red.	Engine management system (diesel only). Engine cooling fan (gasoline only).
23	10	Red.	Engine management system.
24	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
25	10	Red.	Engine management system (diesel only).
26	-	-	-
27	-	-	-
28	-	-	-
29	5	Tan.	Engine management system. Starter motor. Electrical power management.
30	10	Red.	Heated wiper park.
31	-	-	-
32	10	Red.	Steering wheel.
33	5	Tan.	Transfer box.
34	5	Tan.	Right-side Adaptive Front lighting System (AFS).
35	5	Tan.	Headlight levelling.
36	-	-	-
37	-	-	-



## Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
38	-	-	-
39	5	Tan.	Hybrid vehicle powertrain.
40	15	Blue.	Transmission. Terrain response switch. Gear selector.
41	-	-	-
42	25	Clear.	Left-side headlight.
43	5	Tan.	Hybrid vehicle powertrain.
44	25	Clear.	Right-side headlight.
45	-	-	-
46	-	-	-
47	-	-	-
48	-	-	-
49	5	Tan.	Engine management system.
50	-	-	-
51	10	Red.	Engine management system.
52	-	-	-
53	-	-	-
54	-	-	-
55	-	-	-
56	-	-	-
57	-	-	-
58	-	-	-
59	-	-	-
60	5	Tan.	Heated wiper park.



## Fuses

## PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
1	20	Yellow.	Front cigar lighter.
2	20	Yellow.	Front accessory socket. Rear accessory socket.
3	20	Yellow.	Rear accessory socket.
4	20	Yellow.	Executive armrest USB.
5	-	-	-
6	10	Red.	Climate control (hybrid vehicles only).
7	5	Tan.	Battery back-up sounder.
8	15	Blue.	Auxiliary heater (hybrid vehicles only).
9	-	-	-
10	20	Yellow.	Accessory sockets..
11	30	Green.	Right-side rear seats.
12	20	Yellow.	Panoramic roof.
13	20	Yellow.	Panoramic roof.
14	5	Tan.	All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC).
15	-	-	-
16	-	-	-
17	-	-	-
18	30	Green.	Passenger seat. Left-side rear seat.
19	-	-	-
20	25	Clear.	Left-side rear door.
21	10	Red.	Cool box. 240v plug socket.
22	-	-	-
23	20	Yellow.	Front passenger's seat. Left-side rear seat.
24	25	Clear.	Driver's door switches. Driver's door soft-close. Driver's door power-close.



## Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
25	15	Blue.	Dynamic Stability Control (DSC).
26	10	Red.	Passenger's seat switches.
27	5	Tan.	Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Front overhead console.
28	20	Yellow.	Driver's seat.
29	25	Clear.	Right-side rear door switches.
30	-	-	-
31	-	-	-
32	10	Red.	Hybrid vehicle charging port flap.
33	20	Yellow.	Driver's seat.
34	25	Clear.	Passenger's door switches. Passenger's door soft-close. Passenger's door power-close.
35	5	Tan.	Brake pedal switch.
36	-	-	-
37	-	-	-
38	-	-	-
39	-	-	-
40	-	-	-
41	5	Tan.	Telematics.
42	-	-	-
43	10	Red.	Heated steering wheel.
44	10	Red.	Steering wheel.
45	5	Tan.	Touchscreen buttons. Rear climate control.
46	15	Blue.	Climate control.
47	-	-	-
48	-	-	-
49	5	Tan.	Vehicle immobilizer.
50	-	-	-

## Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
51	-	-	-
52	5	Tan.	Air ionizer.
53	-	-	-
54	5	Tan.	Diagnostic socket.
55	-	-	-
56	10	Red.	Climate control.

## LOADSPACE FUSE BOX

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
1	15	Blue.	Hybrid vehicle powertrain.
2	-	-	-
3	-	-	-
4	10	Red.	Left-side rear seat armrest. Calf rest heater.
5	10	Red.	Right-side rear seat armrest. Calf rest heater.
6	-	-	-
7	5	Tan.	Blind spot monitoring.
8	20	Yellow.	Driver's heated seat.
9	15	Blue.	Driver's seat switches. Front passenger's seat switches.
10	20	Yellow.	Front passenger's heated seat.
11	20	Yellow.	Right-side rear heated seat.
12	15	Blue.	Flashlight. Rear seat switches.
13	20	Yellow	Left-side rear heated seat.
14	-	-	-
15	30	Green.	Fuel system.
16	15	Blue.	Trailer socket.



## Fuses

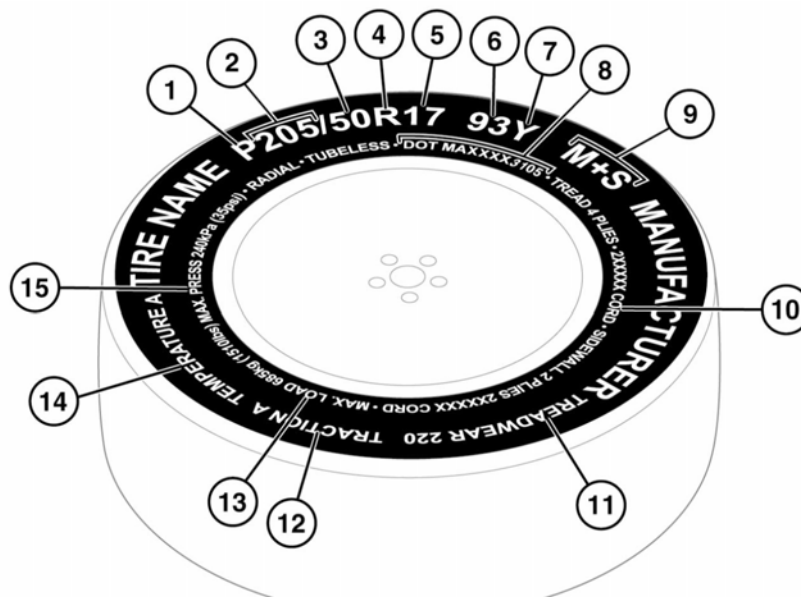
Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
17	10	Red.	Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF).
18	20	Yellow.	Loadspace accessory power socket.
19	20	Yellow.	Rear accessory socket and USB.
20	20	Yellow.	Cubby box accessory socket.
21	20	Yellow.	Loadspace accessory socket.
22	20	Yellow.	Accessory socket (long wheelbase vehicles only).
23	10	Red.	Lower touchscreen.
24	10	Red.	Instrument panel.
25	5	Tan.	Air suspension.
26	2	Gray.	Electronic toll collection.
27	10	Red.	Parking aid. Rear-view mirror. Cameras. Blind spot assist.
28	10	Red.	Head-Up Display (HUD).
29	5	Tan.	Adaptive cruise control.
30	30	Green.	Heated rear screen. Radio frequency filter.
31	-	-	-
32	-	-	-
33	15	Blue.	Rear wiper.
34	-	-	-
35	15	Blue.	Rear console.
36	15	Blue.	Rear console.
37	30	Green.	Driver's seat.
38	-	-	-
39	30	Green.	Deployable side steps.
40	10	Red.	External sound generator (hybrid vehicles only).

## Fuses

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse color	Circuits protected
41	5	Tan.	Rear console. Clock.
42	20	Yellow.	Right-side rear seat.
43	20	Yellow.	Keyless locking.
44	15	Blue.	Trailer socket.
45	15	Blue.	Engine management system. Fuel system.
46	15	Blue.	Fuel system.
47	-	-	-
48	10	Red.	Touchscreen.
49	10	Red.	Gesture tailgate.
50	15	Blue.	Entertainment and information systems.
51	15	Blue.	Entertainment and information systems.
52	10	Red.	Portable media.
53	10	Red.	Portable media.
54	5	Tan.	Occupant sensor.
55	15	Blue.	Air suspension.
56	10	Red.	Air suspension. Continuous variable dampers.
57	5	Tan.	Keyless locking.
58	30	Green.	Front passenger's seat. Left-side rear seat.
59	5	Tan.	Rear-view camera.
60	-	-	-

## Tires

### TIRE MARKINGS



E135318

1. **P** indicates that the tire is for passenger vehicle use. The index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge in mm.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. So, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height will be 102 mm.
4. **R** indicates that the tire is of radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim given in inches.
6. The load index for the tire. The index is not always shown.

### ⚠ WARNING

The load index and speed rating on all replacement tires must be, at least, the same specification as the original equipment tires supplied with the vehicle, except for approved winter tires, off-road, and Professional Off-Road (POR) tires. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorized repairer. Using a replacement tire with a specification different from the manufacturer's original equipment tires may lead to accidents causing serious injury or death.

7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tire should be used for extended periods. See **423, SPEED RATINGS**.

## Tires

8. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN). This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next 2 numbers or letters are the plant code where the tire was manufactured, the last 4 numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number was 3109, the tire was made in the 31st week of 2009. The other numbers are marketing codes used at the manufacturer's discretion. This information can be used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.
9. **M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tire has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.
10. The number of plies in both the tread area, and the sidewall area, indicates how many layers of rubber coated material make up the structure of the tire. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.
11. Wear rate indicator. A tire rated at 400 e.g., will last longer than a tire rated at 200.
12. The traction rating grades a tire's performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest are: **AA, A, B** and **C**.
13. The maximum load which can be carried by the tire.
14. Heat resistance grading. The tire's resistance to heat is grade **A, B** or **C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. The grading is provided for a correctly inflated tire, which is being used within its speed and loading limits.

15. The maximum inflation pressure for the tire. This pressure should not be used for normal driving. See **429, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS**.

**Note:** Approved tires are generally identified by a brand mark J, LR or JLR. Brand markings are specifically excluded for winter and POR tires.

### SPEED RATINGS

Rating	Speed mph (km/h)
Q	99 (160)
R	106 (170)
S	112 (180)
T	118 (190)
U	124 (200)
H	130 (210)
V	149 (240)
W	168 (270)
Y	186 (300)

### TIRE CARE

#### WARNING

**Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.**

#### WARNING

**Do not drive the vehicle if a tire is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated. A tire in such a condition may catastrophically fail and cause an accident.**

## Tires

### ⚠ WARNING

Avoid contaminating the tires with vehicle fluids as they may damage the tire and cause a tire failure, which can result in an accident causing serious injury or death.

### ⚠ WARNING

Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tire, and cause it to fail.

### ⚠ WARNING

If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction e.g., in deep snow, do not exceed the 30 mph (50 km/h) point on the speedometer. Do not allow anyone to stand near or directly behind a tire that might spin.

### ⚠ WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tire. Doing so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

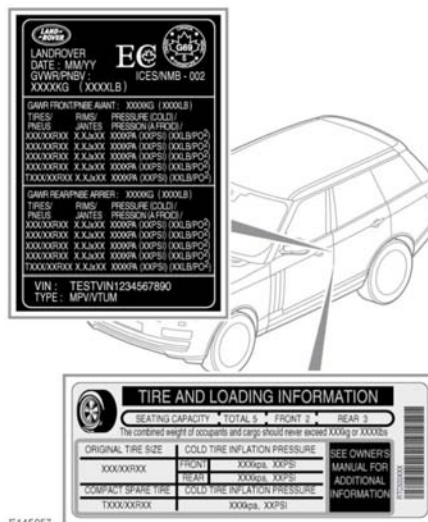
**Note:** Tire condition should be checked after the vehicle has been used off-road. As soon as the vehicle returns to a normal, hard road surface, stop and check for damage to the tire.

All of the vehicle's tires, including the spare should be checked regularly for damage, wear and distortion. If in any doubt about the condition of a tire, have it checked immediately by a tire repair center or a retailer/authorized repairer.

### TIRE PRESSURE LABEL

The recommended tire pressures are listed on a label located in the driver's door opening.

These pressures provide optimum ride and handling characteristics for all normal operating conditions.



- The label contains the following information:
  - The maximum number of occupants, divided between the front and rear of the vehicle.
  - The vehicle's capacity weight, which includes the weight of the driver, passengers and cargo.
  - Cold inflation pressures for the front, rear and spare tires.
  - The size of the tires with which the vehicle was originally equipped.

**Note:** The labels must not be changed, even if different wheels and tires are fitted at a later stage.



## Tires

## TIRE PRESSURES

**⚠ WARNING**

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

**⚠ WARNING**

All tire pressures, including the spare, should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge, when the tires are cold. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure resulting in a loss of vehicle control and potential personal injury.

**⚠ WARNING**

Pressure checks should be carried out only when the tires are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than three hours. Failure to do so may result in serious injury or death. A hot tire, at or below the recommended cold inflation pressure is dangerously under-inflated.

**⚠ WARNING**

Never drive the vehicle if the tire pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tire wear. This can lead to sudden tire failure. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tire wear and poor handling.

**⚠ WARNING**

Do not drive the vehicle with a leaking tire. Even if the tire appears to be inflated it could be dangerously under-inflated and will continue to deflate. Replace the tire or contact an approved repairer. Failure to do so may lead to accidents causing serious injury or death.

**⚠ WARNING**

Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

**⚠ WARNING**

If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tire pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tires to cool before rechecking the pressures. Failure to do so may result in serious injury.

Check the tires, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long trips.

Depending on the market, the tire pressures can be displayed in the instrument panel using the **Vehicle info** and **Tire pressure check** menus. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

The display shows two tire pressures for each tire. The upper figure is the present tire pressure and the lower figure (in brackets) is the recommended tire pressure.

**Note:** The tire pressure units can be configured to display as either psi, bar, or kPa via the **Display settings** menu.

## Tires

If the tire pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected, covered area, e.g., a garage, and then subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tire under-inflation could occur.

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 2 psi (0.14 bar) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

If it is necessary to check tire pressures when the tires are warm, expect the pressures to have increased by up to 4 to 6 psi (0.3 to 0.4 bar). Do not reduce the tire pressures to the cold inflation pressure under these circumstances. Allow the tires to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tire pressures:

### NOTICE

*To avoid damaging the valves, do not apply excessive force or sideways force on the gauge and/or inflator.*

### NOTICE

*To avoid damage to Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tire inflation wands. This is to avoid the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.*

1. Remove the tire valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tire pressure gauge and/or inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tire pressure from the gauge and add air, if required.
4. If air is added to the tire, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. If the tire pressure is too high, remove the gauge and press the center of the valve to allow air out of the tire. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.
6. Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tire pressure is reached.
7. Refit the valve cap.

Lightly laden condition (up to 4 occupants)		
Tire size	Front axle bar (psi, kPa)	Rear axle bar (psi, kPa)
235/65R19 109V	2.3 (34, 230)	2.5 (37, 250)
255/55 R20 110W	2.3 (34, 230)	2.5 (37, 250)
275/45 R21 110W	2.3 (34, 230)	2.5 (37, 250)
275/40 R22 108Y	2.3 (34, 230)	2.5 (37, 250)
T195/70 R20 116M Temporary-use	4.1 (60, 410)	4.1 (60, 410)

## Tires

Normal laden condition (up to 5 occupants plus luggage)		
Tire size	Front axle bar (psi, kPa)	Rear axle bar (psi, kPa)
235/65R19 109V	2.6 (38, 260)	3.1 (45, 310)
255/55 R20 110W	2.5 (37, 250)	3.1 (45, 310)
275/45 R21 110W	2.5 (37, 250)	3.1 (45, 310)
275/40 R22 108Y	2.7 (40, 270)	3.3 (48, 330)
T195/70 R20 116M Temporary-use	4.1 (60, 410)	4.1 (60, 410)

For PHEV vehicles.

Lightly laden condition (up to 4 occupants)		
Tire size	Front axle bar (psi, kPa)	Rear axle bar (psi, kPa)
255/55 R20 110W/Y	2.3 (34, 230)	2.8 (41, 280)
275/45 R21 110W/Y	2.3 (34, 230)	2.8 (41, 280)
T195/70 R20 116M Temporary-use	4.1 (60, 410)	4.1 (60, 410)

Normal laden condition (up to 5 occupants plus luggage)		
Tire size	Front axle bar (psi, kPa)	Rear axle bar (psi, kPa)
255/55 R20 110W/Y	2.8 (41, 280)	3.3 (48, 330)
275/45 R21 110W/Y	2.8 (41, 280)	3.3 (48, 330)
T195/70 R20 116M Temporary-use	4.1 (60, 410)	4.1 (60, 410)

### WARNING

The loading of the vehicle should always be considered when checking and adjusting tire pressures.

### TIRE VALVES

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt from entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tire pressures.

## Tires

Do not use metal valve caps as these can corrode onto the valve threads and be difficult or impossible to remove.

For TPMS tire valves. See **437, TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM**.

### REPLACEMENT TIRES

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Always fit replacement tires of the same type, and wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern. Failure to do so may lead to tire failure due to incorrect installation or use, which can result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The load and speed index ratings on all replacement tires must be, at least, the same specification as the original equipment. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not rotate the tires around the vehicle.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

If the use of tires not recommended by the vehicle manufacturer is unavoidable, make sure to read and fully comply with the tire manufacturer's instructions. Failure to do so may lead to tire failure due to incorrect installation or use.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

If lower speed rated specialist tires are fitted e.g., winter tires or off-road tires then the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitation of the tires. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer for further information.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Always make sure that replacement tires have the correct rating and specifications e.g., load index, size, speed rating) for the vehicle.

#### **NOTICE**

*Tire removal and fitting should be carried out by a retailer/authorized repairer.*

#### **NOTICE**

*Make sure that the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor is not damaged during a tire change.*

When the tread has worn down to approximately 0.07 in (2 mm), wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual reminder.

Tires should be replaced in sets of four. If this is not possible, replace the tires in pairs, both front or both rear. When tires are replaced, the wheels should always be re-balanced and the alignment checked.

Use correct tire specification and pressures. Alternatively, contact a retailer/authorized repairer for advice. See **425, TIRE PRESSURES** or **424, TIRE PRESSURE LABEL**.

## Tires

### PRESSURE COMPENSATION FOR AMBIENT TEMPERATURE CHANGES

Daily ambient temperature variations may lead to intermittent tire pressure warnings. This is normal and should not be considered as a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) fault.

To mitigate the condition, check and adjust the tire pressure before vehicle use at the cold tire condition.

**Note:** Make sure that the correct tire pressures are maintained when moving to areas of differing ambient temperature.

### AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tires can be affected by a softening of the tire sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the effect is to slightly deform the tire at the point where the tire meets the standing surface. This is known as a flat spot.

A flat spot is normal tire behavior. However, when the vehicle is subsequently driven, vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition will steadily improve with extra mileage.

In order to minimize flat spotting while the vehicle is stationary for a long period, tire pressures can be increased to the maximum, as stated on the tire sidewall. Tires must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving (see **424, TIRE PRESSURE LABEL**).

### TIRE DEGRADATION

Tires degrade over time due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that all tires, including the spare, are replaced at least every 6 years from the date of manufacture, but they may require replacement more frequently.

### USING WINTER TIRES

**Note:** M+S (mud and snow) tires have a recognized level of winter performance. However, the **M+S** marking does not necessarily indicate that the tire is a dedicated winter tire.

The **M+S** marking on the tire sidewall indicates an all-season tire designed for use all year round, including cold temperatures, snow and ice. However, all-season tires are inferior to a dedicated winter tires in conditions specific to winter.

**Note:** A dedicated winter tire often has lower speed-rating than the original equipment tire. Consequently, the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitation of the tire. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer for further information. In markets that require a tire's maximum speed label to be fitted, the tire's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. Tire maximum speed labels can be obtained from the tire retailer.



The winter tire symbol identifies dedicated winter tires, which can be fitted if optimum winter traction is required, or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.



## Tires

The tire pressures indicated on the tire pressure label are for use in all conditions on the original equipment tires. If a reduced speed-rated tire is fitted, the recommended pressures are only suitable up to the maximum speed indicated by the tire's speed rating and associated warning sticker when lightly loaded. Vehicle speed should be restricted to below 100 mph (160 km/h) with normal loading.

Winter tires must be fitted to all four wheels.

For optimum traction, tires should be run in for at least 100 miles (160 km) on dry roads, before driving on snow or ice.

Use of dedicated winter tires may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All four wheels must be changed.

If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp flashes for 75 seconds and then remains illuminated. The instrument panel also displays **TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

When the original wheels and tires are refitted, the vehicle needs to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

Approved winter tires				
Wheel size	Tire size	Brand	Pattern	Type
19 in	235/65 R19 109V	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.	Alpine
20 in	255/55 R20 110V	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.	Alpine
	255/55 R20 110V	Michelin.	Latitude Alpin 2.	Alpine
	255/55 R20 110T	Michelin.	Latitude X-Ice North 2	Studded
	255/55 R20 110T	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta 8 SUV.	Studded
	255/55 R20 110R	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta R2 SUV.	Studless
	255/55 R20 110T/Q	Bridgestone.	Blizzak DM-V2.	Studless
	275/50 R20 113T	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta 8 SUV.	Studded
	275/50 R20 113Q/S/R	Bridgestone.	Blizzak DM-V2.	Studless

## Tires

Approved winter tires				
Wheel size	Tire size	Brand	Pattern	Type
21 in	275/45 R21 110V	Michelin.	Latitude Alpin 2.	Alpine
	275/45 R21 110V	Continental.	Cross Contact Winter.	Alpine
	275/45 R21 110V	Pirelli.	Scorpion Winter.	Alpine
	275/45 R21 110T	Nokian.	Hakkapeliitta 8 SUV.	Studded
	275/45 R21 110T	Michelin.	Latitude X-Ice North 2.	Studded
22 in	275/40 R22 108V	Continental.	Cross Contact Winter.	Alpine

**Note:** Studded tires are market dependent. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

**Note:** For information on the latest approved winter tires, contact a retailer/authorized repairer. Alternatively, visit: [www.ownerinfo.landrover.com](http://www.ownerinfo.landrover.com).

If in doubt, or for further information, contact a retailer/authorized repairer. Alternatively, visit: [www.ownerinfo.landrover.com](http://www.ownerinfo.landrover.com).

## ULTRA HIGH PERFORMANCE (UHP) TIRES

### NOTICE

The vehicle may be equipped with high performance, low profile wheel and tire combinations. The low profile, high speed-rated tires may be more susceptible to damage from road hazards, and may not give optimum performance on snow and ice. For improved performance, winter tires should be fitted when conditions dictate.

## USING SNOW CHAINS

### ⚠ WARNING

Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow. Failure to do so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

## Tires

### **⚠ WARNING**

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched off when using traction devices, to avoid accidents that could lead to serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Never exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) when traction devices are fitted. Doing so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Never fit traction devices to a temporary-use spare wheel. Doing so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

**Note:** When using snow chains, select the grass gravel snow program. See **197, GRASS GRAVEL SNOW**.

Traction devices approved by the vehicle manufacturer may be used to improve traction in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow. Traction devices should not be used in off-road conditions where there is no compacted snow.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices have been tested to make sure that they do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer for information.

- The wheels and tires fitted to the vehicle must conform to the specifications of the vehicle manufacturer's original equipment. This helps to enhance the performance of the traction devices. See **422, TIRE MARKINGS**.
- Full chain traction devices can be fitted to the rear wheels of vehicles fitted with 19 and 20 in diameter wheels.
- Half chain traction devices can be fitted to the rear wheels of vehicles fitted with 21 and 22 in diameter wheels.
- Do not fit a traction device to a temporary-use spare wheel.
- Fit traction devices in pairs on the same axle.
- Always read, understand, and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.
- Avoid tire and/or vehicle damage, by removing the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow.

**Note:** Contact a retailer/authorized repairer for details and availability of approved snow chains.

### **UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION**

The following information relates to the tire grading system developed by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) which will grade tires by treadwear, traction and temperature performance.



## Tires

**Note:** Tires that have deep tread and winter tires, are exempt from these markings requirements.

### UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

**Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

In addition to the marking requirements, passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements.

### TREADWEAR

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

#### **NOTICE**

*If treadwear is uneven across the tire, or a tire wears excessively, the vehicle should be checked by a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.*



When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual indicator.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Wear indicators show the minimum tread depth recommended by the manufacturers. Tires which have worn to this point will have reduced grip and poor water displacement characteristics. This can lead to accidents causing serious injury or death.**

**Note:** Local legislation may determine a greater tread depth to that shown by the tire wear indicators. It remains the driver's responsibility to make sure the tread depth meets the local legal requirements. Do not rely on the tread depth indicators alone.

### TRACTION

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are **AA**, **A**, **B**, and **C**. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked **C** may have poor traction performance.

## Tires

### **⚠ WARNING**

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### **TEMPERATURE**

The temperature grades are **A** (the highest), **B**, and **C**, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade **C** corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109. Grades **B** and **A** represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

### **⚠ WARNING**

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. Tire failure could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

### **TIRE GLOSSARY**

**lbf/in<sup>2</sup> or psi:** Pounds per square inch; a US standard unit of measure for pressure.

**kPa:** Kilo Pascal; a metric unit of measure for pressure.

**Cold tire pressure:** Typically the air pressure in a tire which has been standing in excess of 3 hours, or driven for less than 1 mile.

**Maximum permissible inflation pressure:** The maximum pressure to which the tire should be inflated. The pressure is given on the tire sidewall, in lbf/in<sup>2</sup> (psi) and kPa.

**Note:** *The pressure is the maximum allowed by the tire manufacturer. It is not the pressure recommended for use.*

**Curb weight:** The weight of a standard vehicle, including a full tank of fuel, any optional equipment fitted, and with the correct coolant and oil levels.

**Accessory weight:** The combined weight (in excess of those items replaced) of items available as factory fitted equipment.

**Production options weight:** The combined weight of options fitted which weigh in excess of 5 lb (2.3 kg) more than the standard items that they replaced, and are not already considered in curb or accessory weights. Items such as heavy duty brakes, high capacity battery, special trim, etc.

**Vehicle capacity weight:** The number of seats multiplied by 150 lb (68 kg), plus the rated amount of load and luggage.

**Maximum loaded vehicle weight:** The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, plus any production option weights.

**Rim:** The metal support for a tire, or tire and tube, upon which the tire beads are seated.

## Tires

**Bead:** The inner edge of a tire that is shaped to fit to the rim and form an airtight seal. The bead is constructed of steel wires which are wrapped, or reinforced, by the ply cords.

**Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW):** The maximum permissible weight of a vehicle with driver, passengers, load, luggage, and equipment.

**STEPS FOR DETERMINING  
CORRECT LOAD LIMIT**

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lbs.})$
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.



## Tires

The number and weight of passengers affect the cargo and luggage capacity. In the example above, the cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. However, if fewer passengers ride in the vehicle, the luggage load capacity increases. If this vehicle carries three 150 lb passengers, the cargo and luggage load capacity increases to 950 lb:

(3 x 150 = 450 lb, and 1400 - 450 = 950 lb).

If the passengers weigh more, the cargo and luggage load capacity decreases.

### WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

### WARNING

Do not exceed the weight limits specified on the TIRE LOADING INFORMATION label.

### WARNING

Do not exceed the vehicle capacity weight (the total weight of the driver, passengers and cargo) given on the tire information label.

### WARNING

The weight of accessories must also be subtracted from the cargo and luggage load capacity. If you are unsure of the weight of any accessories fitted to your vehicle, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

### WARNING

Overloading the vehicle will have an adverse effect on braking and handling characteristics, which could compromise your safety. Overloading a vehicle may also cause tire damage or failure. Never overload the vehicle.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate the tires. All tire pressures, including the spare, should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge, when the tires are cold. Failure to do so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The TPMS cannot register damage to a tire. Regularly check the condition of the tires, especially if the vehicle is driven off-road. Failure to do so may result in accidents causing serious injury or death.

#### **NOTICE**

When inflating tires, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always make sure that the inflation head is correctly aligned to the valve stem.

#### **NOTICE**

To avoid damage to the TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tire inflation wands. This is to avoid the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

**Note:** Non-approved accessories may interfere with the system. If this occurs, **TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING FAULT** displays in the instrument panel.

**Note:** Different types of tire may affect performance of the TPMS. Always replace tires in accordance with recommendations.

The vehicle is equipped with a TPMS which monitors pressure in each tire, including the full-size spare tire. Compact spare tires are not fitted with sensors and are consequently not monitored.

1



2



E132513

Wheels fitted with TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve (1). All Land Rover non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted (2).

**Note:** At each tire change, a special service kit is required for the TPMS valve.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

### TIRE PRESSURE CHECK

The instrument panel can be used to display the vehicle's tire pressures. The tire pressure figures can be accessed via the **Vehicle info** menu. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

**Note:** The tire pressure units can also be configured to display as either bar, psi, or kPa via the **Vehicle info** and the **Tire information** menus.

When selected, the last known tire pressures are displayed, alongside the recommended cold tire pressures, in brackets.

**Note:** If any of the wheels or tires have been removed, the displayed tire pressures may not be valid. Drive the vehicle for at least 15 minutes, in order to re-calibrate the system.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

### RECOMMENDED TIRE PRESSURE LOOK-UP

The instrument panel can be used to display the recommended cold tire pressures for the vehicle. The tire pressure look-up table can be accessed via the **Vehicle info** and the **Tire information** menus. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Depending on the specification of the vehicle, a number of different values may be displayed to reflect different driving conditions, e.g., high speed driving or for a heavily laden vehicle.

### VEHICLE LOADING

When the vehicle is delivered, tire pressures are set to those displayed on the tire pressure label. See **424, TIRE PRESSURE LABEL**.

If the tire pressures are adjusted to the **Light** (comfort) load setting, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) should be adjusted to suit the vehicle's load and associated recommended tire pressures.

The sensitivity of the TPMS can be adjusted between **Normal** load and **Light** (comfort) load, via the instrument panel menus: **Vehicle info**, **Tire information** and **TPM load setting**.

**Note:** The ignition needs to be switched on, without the engine running. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Every time the ignition is switched on, a TPMS message is displayed in the instrument panel, indicating which load setting is being monitored.

**Note:** The TPMS setting must correspond with the vehicle's current load.

The **Normal** load setting should be used for heavier vehicle loading conditions up to the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), e.g., more than three occupants.

The **Light** (comfort) load setting may only be used during use of the vehicle under light loading conditions, e.g., up to three occupants.

**Note:** Make sure that the tire pressures are correct for the vehicle's current load. See **425, TIRE PRESSURES**.

The instrument panel menus, **Vehicle info** and **Tire pressures** can be used to check the vehicle's current tire pressures.

### FULL SIZE SPARE WHEEL AND TIRE CHANGE

The TPMS automatically recognizes any changes in wheel positions. The vehicle must be stationary for 15 minutes during the wheel and tire change, to make sure that the system can detect the change. After driving above 16 mph (25 km/h), any deflation warning should clear within approximately 5 minutes.

**Note:** Re-inflate the tire, within close proximity of the vehicle, following repairs to a full size spare wheel fitted with tire pressure monitoring. The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp may illuminate if tire inflation is not carried out within close proximity of the vehicle. Should this occur, re-inflate the tire within 197 in (5 m) of the vehicle. See **87, TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)** and **425, TIRE PRESSURES**.



## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

### TEMPORARY USE SPARE WHEEL AND TIRE CHANGE

If the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted, the system automatically recognizes the change in wheel positions. After approximately 10 minutes of driving above 16 mph (25 km/h), the message

**Front(rear) Right(left) tire pressure not monitored** is displayed. The message is accompanied by illumination of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp. See **87, TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)**.

The warning lamp first flashes and then illuminates continuously. Extended use of the temporary-use spare wheel triggers the message **Tire pressure monitoring system fault**.

The TPMS display sequence is activated at every ignition cycle, until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

**Note:** *If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPMS fault investigated.*

### TYPE APPROVAL NUMBERS

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

#### United States of America

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### Canada

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC - RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) this device may not cause interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

**Note:** *Changes or modifications, not expressly approved by the manufacturer, could void the user's authority to use the equipment.*

#### Type approval numbers

The 433 MHz TPMS Radio Frequency (RF) approval numbers for the USA and Canada are:

<b>USA FCC ID:</b>	KR5S180052020A
	5WK49096
<b>Canada IC:</b>	7812D-S180020A
	267T-5WK49096



## Tire repair system

### TIRE REPAIR SYSTEM

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure to read and fully understand the warnings in this section of the Owner's Handbook before attempting to repair a tire. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death. If in any doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions, contact a retailer/authorized repairer before attempting the repair.

**Note:** Vehicles supplied with a tire repair system may not have a jack and wrench tools fitted as standard equipment.

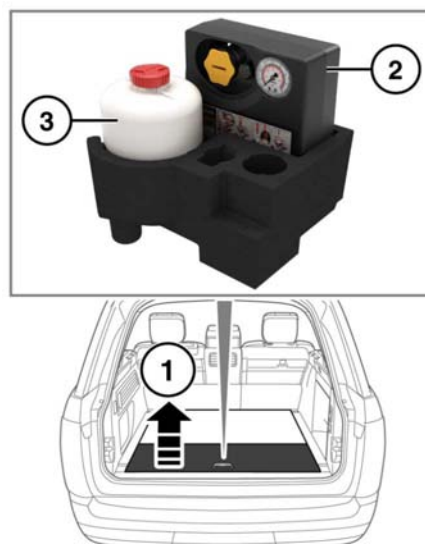
A tire repair system is supplied for vehicles without a spare wheel. The tire repair system is stored under the loadspace floor panel. See **449, TOOL KIT**.

The tire repair system can be used to repair one punctured tire.

The tire repair system seals most punctures with a maximum diameter of 6 mm, if the puncture is within the tread area (A). See **442, TIRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY INFORMATION**.

**Note:** The sealant used in the tire repair system has a shelf life. The expiration date is shown on the sealant bottle. Make sure that the sealant bottle is replaced before the expiry date. Also make sure that the sealant bottle is replaced after each use.

### Standard vehicles



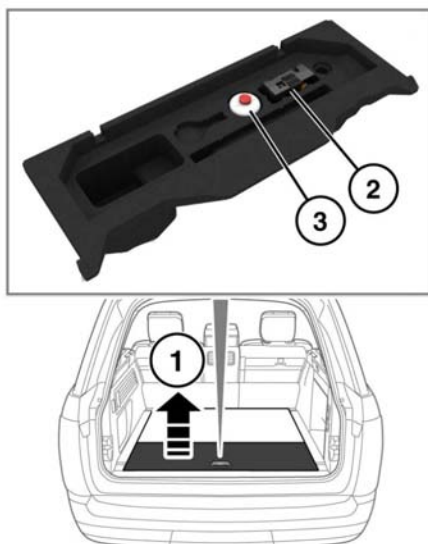
E223796

The tire repair system is located under the luggage compartment's floor panel.

1. Luggage compartment's floor panel.  
Lift to access the tire repair system.
2. Compressor.
3. Sealant bottle.

## Tire repair system

### PHEV vehicles



E223795

The tire repair system is located under the luggage compartment's floor panel.

1. Luggage compartment's floor panel.  
Lift to access the tire repair system.
2. Compressor.
3. Sealant bottle.

### TIRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY INFORMATION

#### ⚠ WARNING

Read and understand all the warnings carefully. Failure to comply may lead to serious injury or death. If in doubt or cannot follow all the warnings, seek qualified assistance.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Some tire damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tire pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety, which may lead to serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not use the tire repair system if the tire has been damaged by driving while under-inflated. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Only use the tire repair system to seal damage located within the tire tread area (A). Carrying out tire repairs outside of the tire tread area (A) could lead to serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not use the tire repair system to seal damage to the tire's sidewall. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a repaired tire is fitted to the vehicle. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tire is fitted is 124 miles (200 km). Exceeding this distance could lead to serious injury or death.

## Tire repair system

### ⚠ WARNING

When a repaired tire is fitted, drive with caution. Avoid sudden braking or steering maneuvers. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

### ⚠ WARNING

Only use the tire repair system for the vehicle with which it was supplied. Using a tire repair system from another vehicle could lead to serious injury or death.

### ⚠ WARNING

Do not use the tire repair system for any other purpose than tire repair. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

### ⚠ WARNING

Only use the tire repair system within the -22°F to 158°F (-30°C to +70°C) temperature range. Using the tire repair system in temperatures outside of the stated range could lead to serious injury or death.

### ⚠ WARNING

Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the tire repair system, when in use. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

### ⚠ WARNING

Always monitor the tire repair system at a safe distance from the compressor. Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

### ⚠ WARNING

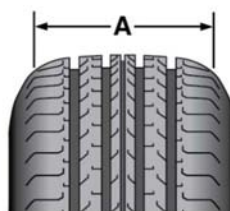
Never leave the tire repair system unattended when in use. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

### ⚠ WARNING

Check the tire's sidewall before inflating the tire. If any cracks, damage, or deformities are apparent, do not inflate the tire. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

### ⚠ WARNING

Watch the tire's sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, bumps, or similar damage or deformities appear, switch off the compressor and deflate the tire. Do not continue to use the tire. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.



E149963

A: Tire tread area.

## USING THE TIRE REPAIR SYSTEM

### ⚠ WARNING

Avoid skin contact with the sealant, as it contains natural rubber latex. Failure to do so could result in personal injury or death.

### ⚠ WARNING

Before attempting a tire repair, make sure that the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from passing traffic as possible. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.



## Tire repair system

### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and Park (P) is engaged. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

While using a compressor, make sure that the hazard warning lights are switched on and that the smart key is removed from the vehicle. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not attempt to remove foreign objects, such as nails, screws, etc., from the tire. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

While using a compressor, make sure that there is sufficient ventilation when running the engine. Never start the engine and leave it running when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

### **⚠ WARNING**

All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tire fitted to the vehicle. All vehicle drivers and occupants should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tire. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

### **NOTICE**

*To prevent overheating, do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than 10 minutes. Doing so could cause damage to the compressor.*

## REPAIR PROCEDURE

### **⚠ WARNING**

Before attempting to repair a tire, refer to all of the warnings in the tire repair system safety information section of the Owner's Handbook. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

See 442, TIRE REPAIR SYSTEM SAFETY INFORMATION.

### **⚠ WARNING**

If in any doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions, or if the warnings in this section cannot be complied with, seek qualified assistance. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Check the tire's sidewall before inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps, or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Watch the tire's sidewall. If any cracks, bumps, or similar damage appear, switch off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue to use the tire. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

## Tire repair system

### **⚠ WARNING**

If the tire's inflation pressure does not reach 26 psi (1.8 bar, 180 kPa) within 7 minutes, the tire may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair is not possible. Do not drive the vehicle until the tire has been replaced. Attempting a repair on the tire could lead to serious injury or death.

To carry out the repair procedure:

1. Open the tire repair system. Peel off the warning label. Attach the label to the windshield in a visible location, but not obstructing the driver's field of vision.

**Note:** The speed and mileage recommendations for a repaired tire are mandated and must be observed. The speed and mileage recommendations are stated on the warning label.

2. Uncoil the inflation hose and the compressor's power cable.
3. Unscrew the orange cap from the sealant bottle receiver and the sealant bottle cap.
4. Screw the sealant bottle into the receiver clockwise, until it is completely tight.

**Note:** Do not pierce the sealant bottle before fitting it to the receiver.

**Note:** Screwing the sealant bottle onto the receiver pierces the sealant bottle's seal. Once the sealant bottle has been fitted onto the receiver, a ratchet prevents it from being removed.

5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.

**Note:** Make sure that the valve cap is stored in a known location for future use.

6. Remove the protective cap from the inflation hose and connect the inflation hose to the tire valve.

**Note:** Make sure that the inflation hose is fully screwed on to the tire valve.

7. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the off (0) position. Insert the power cable connector into a power socket marked 12V. See **126, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**.

**Note:** Do not use the cigar lighter socket for this purpose.

8. Start the engine. See **169, STARTING THE ENGINE**.
9. Switch the compressor to the on (I) position. Run the compressor for no longer than 10 minutes.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not exceed the maximum tire pressure stated on the sidewall of the tire. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

### **NOTICE**

When pumping the sealant through the tire valve, sealant may leak from the puncture location. Remove any excess sealant immediately. Failure to do so may result in a surface residue that is difficult to remove.



## Tire repair system

**Note:** When pumping the sealant through the tire valve, the compressor's pressure gauge may rise up to 87 psi (6 bar, 600 kPa). The measurement at this point is the pressure within the compressor and not the pressure within the tire. This is normal and should not cause alarm. The pressure drops again after approximately 30 seconds.

10. Switch off the compressor.

11. Check the inflation pressure on the compressor's pressure gauge.

- If the pressure is greater than 26 psi (1.8 bar, 180 kPa), continue with the repair procedure.
- If the pressure is less than 26 psi (1.8 bar, 180 kPa), do not attempt to drive the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance.

12. Unscrew the inflation hose. Replace the hose cap. Securely store the tire repair system in the vehicle.

**Note:** Drive the vehicle as soon as possible and within 1 minute of completing the tire pressure check.

13. Drive the vehicle 2 to 6 miles (3 to 10 km) or for 10 minutes. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

14. After driving 2 to 6 miles (3 to 10 km) or for 10 minutes, stop the vehicle in a safe place. Connect the compressor's inflation hose to the tire valve and check the tire pressure.

- If the tire pressure is greater than 32 psi (2.2 bar, 220 kPa), the vehicle may be driven for up to 120 miles (200 km) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). It is recommended to drive to the nearest tire repair center or retailer/authorised repairer for a replacement tire to be fitted. Be sure to make the repair center aware that the tire repair system has been used, before the tire is removed. Proceed to step 16.

- If the tire pressure is less than 19 psi (1.3 bar, 130 kPa), do not attempt to drive the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance.

- If the tire pressure is greater than 19 psi (1.3 bar, 130 kPa) and less than 32 psi (2.2 bar, 220 kPa), switch on the compressor. Run the compressor for no longer than 10 minutes. Do not exceed the maximum tire pressure stated on the sidewall of the tire. If a tire pressure of 32 psi (2.2 bar, 220 kPa) is not achieved, seek qualified assistance.

If the tire pressure is greater than 32 psi (2.2 bar, 220 kPa), proceed to step 14.

15. Drive the vehicle 2 to 6 miles (3 to 10 km) or for 10 minutes. Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).

16. After driving 2 to 6 miles (3 to 10 km) or for 10 minutes, stop the vehicle in a safe place. Connect the compressor's inflation hose to the tire valve and check the tire pressure.

## Tire repair system

- If the tire pressure is less than 32 psi (2.2 bar, 220 kPa), do not attempt to drive the vehicle. Seek qualified assistance.
  - If the tire pressure is greater than 32 psi (2.2 bar, 220 kPa), the vehicle may be driven for up to 120 miles (200 km) at a maximum speed of 50 mph (80 km/h). It is recommended to drive to the nearest tire repair center or retailer/authorized repairer for a replacement tire to be fitted. Be sure to make the repair center aware that the tire repair system has been used, before the tire is removed.
17. Securely store the compressor and sealant bottle in the correct storage positions. See **449, TOOL KIT**.
  18. Replace the tire inflation hose, the receiver, and the sealant bottle once a new tire has been fitted.

### AFTER USING THE TIRE REPAIR SYSTEM

#### **⚠ WARNING**

When driving the vehicle, if vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises are experienced, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution, at reduced speed, to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tire and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tire, or the tire pressure is below 19 psi (1.3 bar, 130 kPa), do not continue driving. Doing so could lead to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Consult a tire repair center or a retailer/authorized repairer for advice concerning the replacement of a tire after using a tire repair system. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.**



Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste. Sealant bottles and the tire inflation hose, which contain some sealant, should be disposed of by a tire specialist or a retailer/authorized repairer. Sealant bottles and the tire inflation hose, which contain some sealant, should be disposed of in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

## Wheel changing

### WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death. If in any doubt regarding the ability to carry out the instructions or to comply with the warnings, seek assistance.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway and away from traffic.

Switch on the hazard warning lights to alert all traffic of the obstruction.

Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) and engage Park (P). Switch the engine off and remove the smart key from the vehicle. Failure to do so can result in unexpected movement of the vehicle, potentially causing serious injury or death.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Make sure that all passengers and animals are out of the vehicle and in a safe place, away from the highway.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

If available, place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing toward oncoming traffic.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Disconnect any trailer from the vehicle.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Make sure that the vehicle and jack are both on firm level ground. Do not jack the vehicle if it is over a metal grating or manhole cover.

Make sure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position and engage the steering lock.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Always use the complete jacking lever assembly throughout the wheel changing process, to minimize any chance of injury.

Position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in line with the appropriate jacking point.

Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or between the jack and the vehicle.

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

Warning - That no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

#### **⚠️WARNING**

The jack is designed for wheel changing only.

Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.



## Wheel changing

### **⚠ WARNING**

When jacking the vehicle, make sure that all precautions are taken to prevent vehicle movement. As an additional precaution, it is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Always chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed. Chock the front of a front wheel, or the rear of a rear wheel.

### **⚠ WARNING**

If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. An additional chock will be needed.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Take care when slackening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached, and the wheel nuts may give way suddenly. Either unexpected movement may cause an injury.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilizing the vehicle when raised.

Take care when lifting the spare wheel, and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy, and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.

After wheel changing, always secure the tools, jack, and the replaced wheel in the correct storage positions. Such objects, if not properly stored, can become propelled objects in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.

### **⚠ WARNING**

For vehicles fitted with an electronic air suspension, select off-road height before jacking the vehicle. See 181, OFF-ROAD HEIGHT.

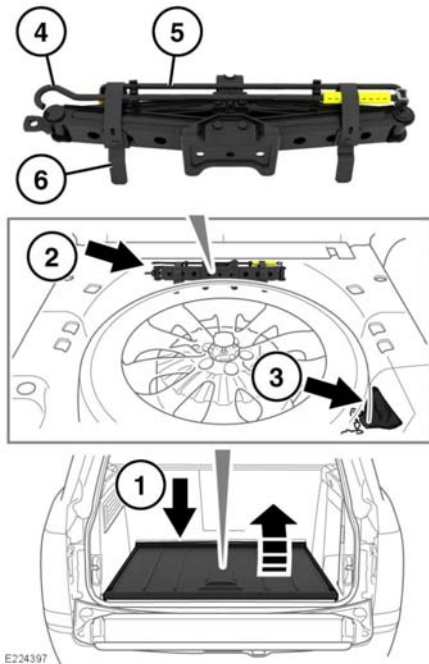
### **TOOL KIT**

### **⚠ WARNING**

Before changing a wheel, make sure to read and fully understand all warnings at the beginning of this section of the Owner's Handbook. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

To access the spare wheel, raise the deployable loadspace floor to the open position. See 135, **DEPLOYABLE LOADSPACE FLOOR**.

## Wheel changing



**Note:** Tool types and positions may vary from the illustration.

**Note:** Note the fitted position of tool kit before removal.

1. Loadspace floor panel.
2. Jack and tools: Located under the spare wheel. See **450, REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL.**
3. Spare wheel's lift assist tool.
4. Jack handle.
5. Wrench tool.
6. Jack strap.

**Note:** Take careful note of the storage position for each tool, as it is important to return the tools to the correct position after use.

### REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

#### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions may result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilizing the vehicle when raised.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Wheels are heavy and, if handled incorrectly, may cause injury. Use extreme caution when lifting, lowering, and maneuvering the wheels.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Always secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position, using the securing bolt. During an accident or sudden maneuver, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Do not store the wheel while the vehicle is raised on the jack. Doing so may result in serious injury.

#### ⚠ WARNING

After wheel changing, always secure the tools, jack, and the replaced wheel in the correct storage positions. Such objects, if not properly stored, can become propelled objects in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.

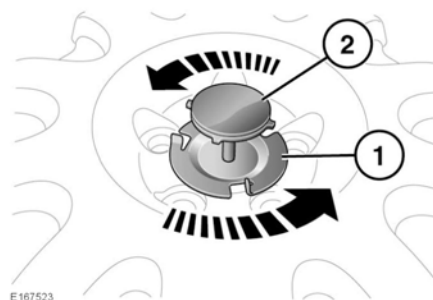
## Wheel changing

### NOTICE

Always use the lift assist strap when removing the wheel. Avoid contact with the expansion chamber of the air supply unit, as it may result in damage to the compressor.

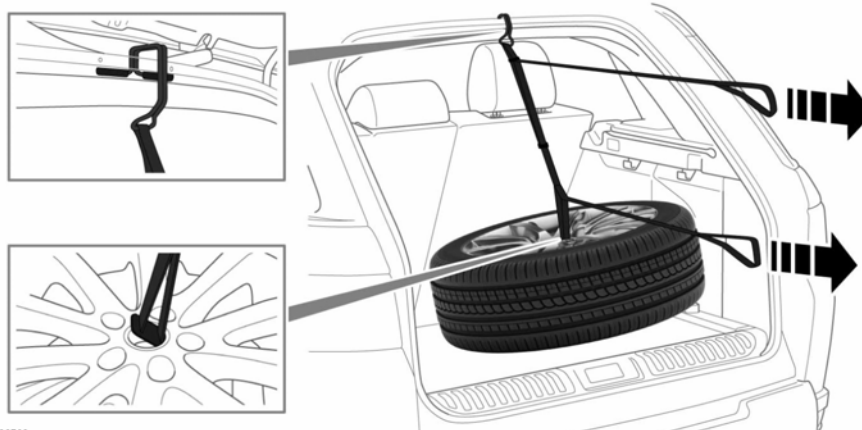
**Note:** Before removing the spare wheel, take note of its storage position. The wheel to be changed must be correctly stored and secured in its place.

**Note:** The spare wheel's lift assist tool is not fitted to all vehicles. For more information, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.



E167523

- Continually rotate the center clamp plate on the spare wheel counter-clockwise to release.
- Continually rotate the top plate of the center bolt counter-clockwise to completely remove.



E168799

To remove the spare wheel from under the loadspace floor panel:

- Open the tailgate. See **16, OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE**.
- Remove the loadspace floor panel.
- Remove the spare wheel's securing bolt.
- Remove the vehicle's jack and the spare wheel's lift assist tool. See **449, TOOL KIT**.
- Attach the lift assist tool, as shown.



## Wheel changing

- Pull the upper strap to lift up the spare wheel.
  - Pull the lower strap to place the spare wheel on the tailgate.
6. Remove the lift assist tool. Carefully lift the spare wheel from the vehicle.

**Note:** Reverse the order to store the changed wheel.

### IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TIRE

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Adhere to the instructions on the temporary-use spare wheel's warning label, affixed to the wheel. Failure to do so may cause vehicle instability and/or tire failure.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Where fitted, the temporary-use spare wheel is for temporary use only.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Drive with caution while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Make sure that an original size wheel and tire are fitted as soon as possible.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not fit more than one temporary-use spare wheel at any one time.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The temporary-use spare wheel must be inflated to 60 psi (4.2 bar, 420 kPa) and cannot be repaired.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched on while the temporary-use spare wheel is in use.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

TracDSC must be switched off while the temporary-use spare wheel is in use.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Traction devices, such as snow chains, cannot be used with a temporary-use spare wheel.

### USING WHEEL CHOCKS

A wheel chock is stored in the vehicle's spare wheel tool kit. See **449, TOOL KIT**.

**Note:** Not all vehicles have wheel chocks supplied as part of the tool kit. Wheel chocks are a useful addition to a vehicle's tool kit.

Make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Always chock the wheels using suitable wheel chocks. Place the chocks on both sides of the wheel, diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed.

## Wheel changing

### **WARNING**

Before raising the vehicle, the wheel diagonally opposite the one to be removed must be chocked.

### **WARNING**

If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. An extra chock is needed.

### **WHEEL CHANGING**

Before changing a wheel, refer to all warnings at the beginning of this section of the Owner's Handbook. See **448, WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY**.

### **WARNING**

Before raising the vehicle, make sure to read and fully understand the following warnings. Failure to comply with the safety instructions could result in an accident, leading to serious injury or death.

### **WARNING**

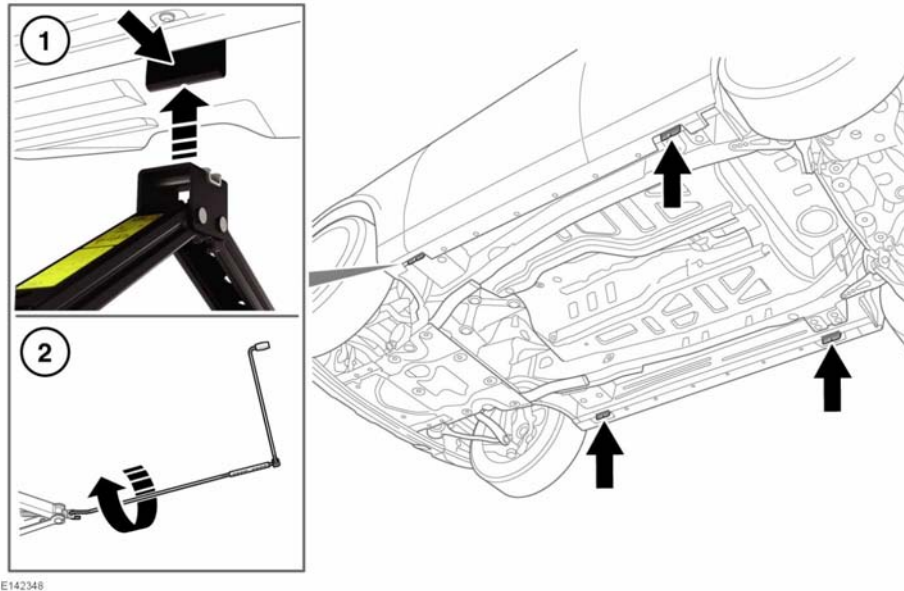
Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilizing the vehicle when raised.

**Note:** The vehicle may be fitted with a tilt sensor, which activates the alarm if the vehicle is tilted in any direction after it has been locked. To lock the doors while changing the wheel, and avoid the alarm activating, the tilt sensor can be temporarily disabled. See **75, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

**Note:** If side steps or tubes are fitted, the jacking points are located on the underside of the side step or tube brackets.

**Note:** Before raising the vehicle, correctly position the wheel chocks. See **452, USING WHEEL CHOCKS**.

## Wheel changing



E142348

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, make sure to read and comply with the following warnings.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.

### **⚠ WARNING**

The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands before placing any part of the body beneath the vehicle.

### **NOTICE**

Only jack the vehicle using the jacking points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

1. Before raising the vehicle, use the wheel nut brace to slacken the wheel nuts of the wheel to be replaced. Turn half a turn counter-clockwise.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not remove the wheel nuts until the vehicle has been safely and securely raised with the jack.

2. Open the tailgate. See **16, OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE**.
3. Lift the rear edge and pull to remove the loadspace floor panel and secure it to the vehicle's body.

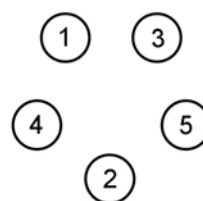
## Wheel changing

4. Continually rotate the spare wheel's securing center clamp plate counter-clockwise to release. Continually rotate the top plate of the center bolt counter-clockwise to completely remove the securing bolt assembly.
5. Remove the spare wheel and the vehicle's tool kit.
6. Use the wheel brace to slacken the wheel nuts, by turning half a turn counter-clockwise.
7. Position the jack under the relevant jacking point (1) under the floor.
14. Refit the wheel nuts. Lightly tighten them in the sequence shown in the illustration. Make sure that the wheel is correctly and evenly fitted to the hub. Check that each wheel nut is in a similar position.
15. Make sure that the area under the vehicle is clear of obstructions. Lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.
16. With all of the wheels on the ground, and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts. Tighten the wheel nuts, in the sequence shown in the illustration, to the correct torque of 140 Nm.

### NOTICE

*Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point, as damage may result.*

8. Turn the jack lever (2) clockwise to raise, until the jack head locates into the jacking point. Make sure that the base of the jack is in full contact with the road surface.
9. Raise the vehicle using the jack, with a slow steady operation. Avoid rapid, jerky actions as they may cause the vehicle and jack to become unstable.
10. Stop when the tire is just clear of the ground.
11. Remove the slackened wheel nuts and place them together where they cannot roll away.
12. Remove the wheel and place to one side. Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.
13. Fit the spare wheel to the vehicle by aligning the spare wheel with the vehicle's wheel studs and slide onto the hub.



E132675

**Note:** *If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is replaced, they should be set to the correct torque as soon as possible.*

If an alloy spare wheel is to be fitted, using a suitable blunt tool, knock the center cap out of the removed wheel. Using hand pressure only, press the center cap into the newly fitted spare.

Check and adjust the tire pressure as soon as possible.

### **Vehicles with fixed side steps, deployable side steps, or side tubes**

If the vehicle is fitted with deployable side steps, fixed side steps, or side tubes, the standard vehicle jacking points are obscured.

## Wheel changing

### ⚠ WARNING

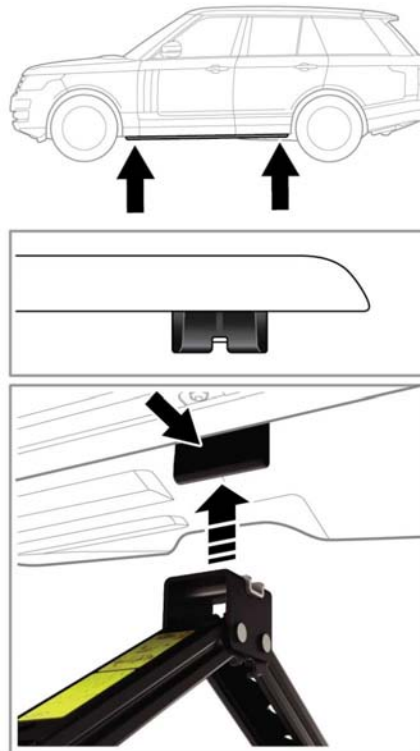
Do not jack the vehicle under the side steps or side tubes.

### ⚠ WARNING

The deployable side steps must be in the stored position and the system switched off, when raising the vehicle. Do not raise the vehicle with the deployable side steps in the deployed position.

**Note:** If the vehicle is fitted with deployable side steps, the side steps must be in deployed position to allow access to the jacking points.

**Note:** Examine the jack occasionally. Clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.



E161699

The wheel changing procedure for hybrid vehicles is the same as for non-hybrid vehicles. However, please note the following information.

**Note:** The wheels differ in design between the left side and right side of the vehicle, as viewed from the rear of the vehicle. **LH** for the left side or **RH** for the right side is marked on the inner face of each wheel. Always make sure that the correct handed wheel is re-fitted on the vehicle.



## Wheel changing

In the event of a puncture, the spare wheel can be used on either side of the vehicle. Make sure that the original wheel is replaced in its correct location as soon as possible.

## Vehicle recovery

### FRONT TOWING EYE

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The front towing eye is designed for on-road recovery only. If the towing eye is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and can cause serious injury or death.

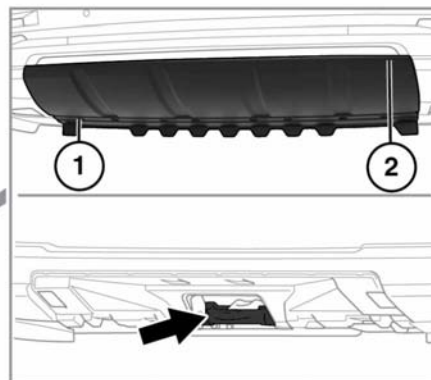
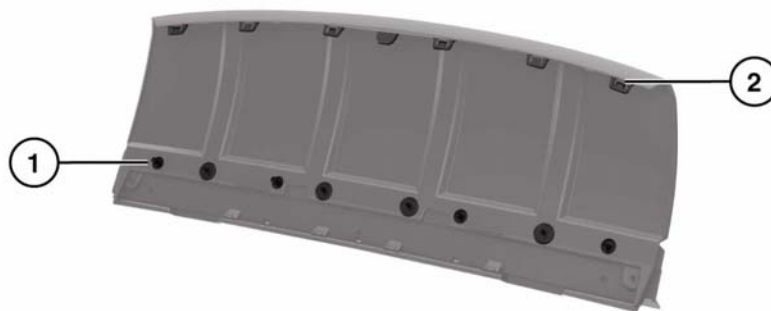
#### **NOTICE**

Remove the front towing eye cover before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss. The cover must be replaced before driving on the road.

#### **NOTICE**

Make sure that the cover is correctly fitted before driving the vehicle. An incorrectly fitted cover may become detached from the vehicle and may become damaged.

**Note:** Note the fitted position of the cover before removal.



E219762

## Vehicle recovery

The front towing point is located behind a removable cover in the lower front bumper.

To remove the cover:

1. Rotate each of the four fasteners 90 degrees counter-clockwise with a coin, or a similar object, to release the lower edge.
2. Starting at one end, pull the cover forward from the back lower edge to release the center tab and six clips on the top edge of the cover.

To refit the cover:

1. Locate the cover and make sure the center tab and six clip at the top edge engage with the holes in the bumper.
2. To secure the cover, rotate each of the four fasteners 90 degrees clockwise.

### REAR TOWING EYE

#### **WARNING**

The rear towing eye is designed for on-road recovery only. If the towing eye is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and can cause serious injury or death.

#### **WARNING**

Do not use the tow ball for recovering the vehicle. Doing so may result in serious injury or death.

#### **NOTICE**

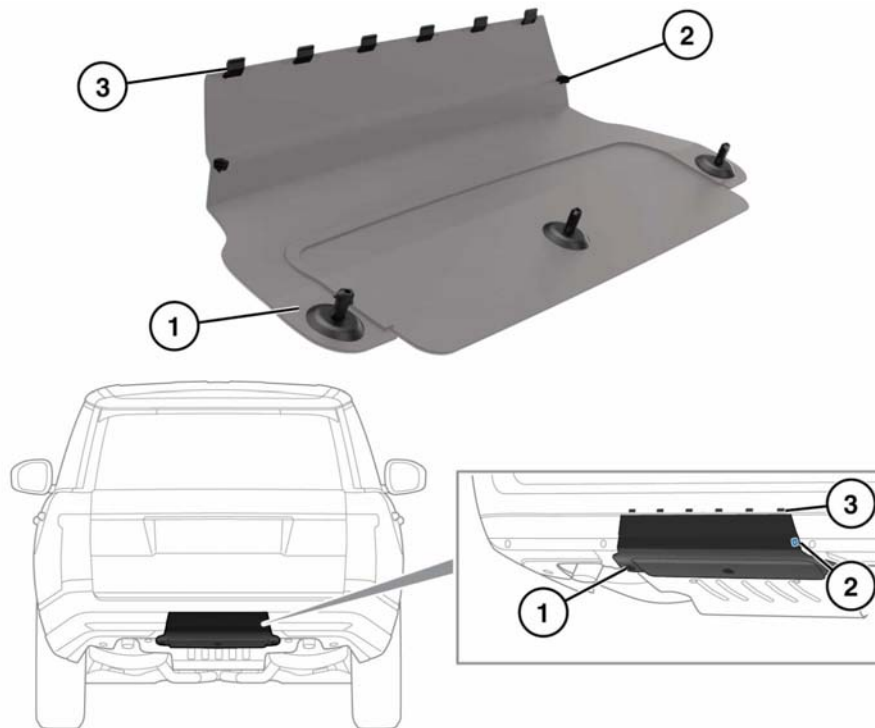
*Remove the rear towing eye cover before driving off-road, to prevent damage or loss. The cover must be replaced before driving on the road.*

**Note:** Note the fitted position of the cover before removal.

**Note:** The rear towing eye may be used to tow another vehicle, if required.

## Vehicle recovery

### Vehicles without a tow ball



E219763

The rear towing point is located behind a removable cover in the rear bumper.

To remove the cover:

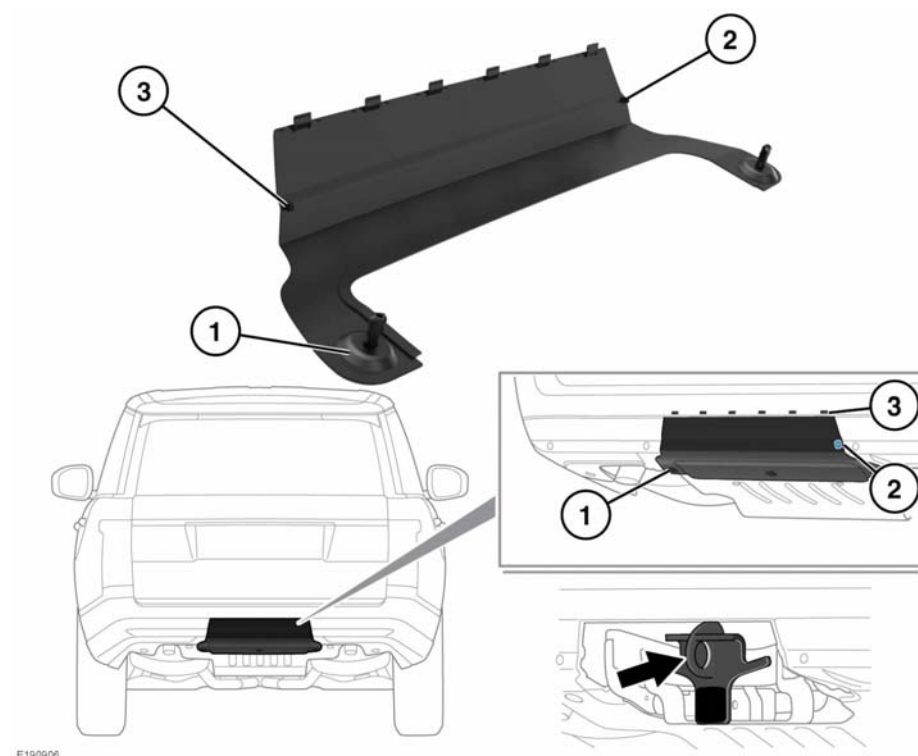
1. Rotate each of the three fasteners 90 degrees counter-clockwise with a coin, or a similar object, to release the lower edge.
2. Rotate the cover to release the two side tabs.
3. Release the six tabs at the top.

To refit the cover:

1. Locate the cover in place and make sure that the six tabs on the top edge engage in the bumper.
2. Locate the two side tabs.
3. Rotate the three fasteners 90 degrees clockwise to secure the cover.

## Vehicle recovery

### Vehicles with a fixed tow ball



E190906

The rear towing point is located behind a removable cover in the rear bumper.

To remove the cover:

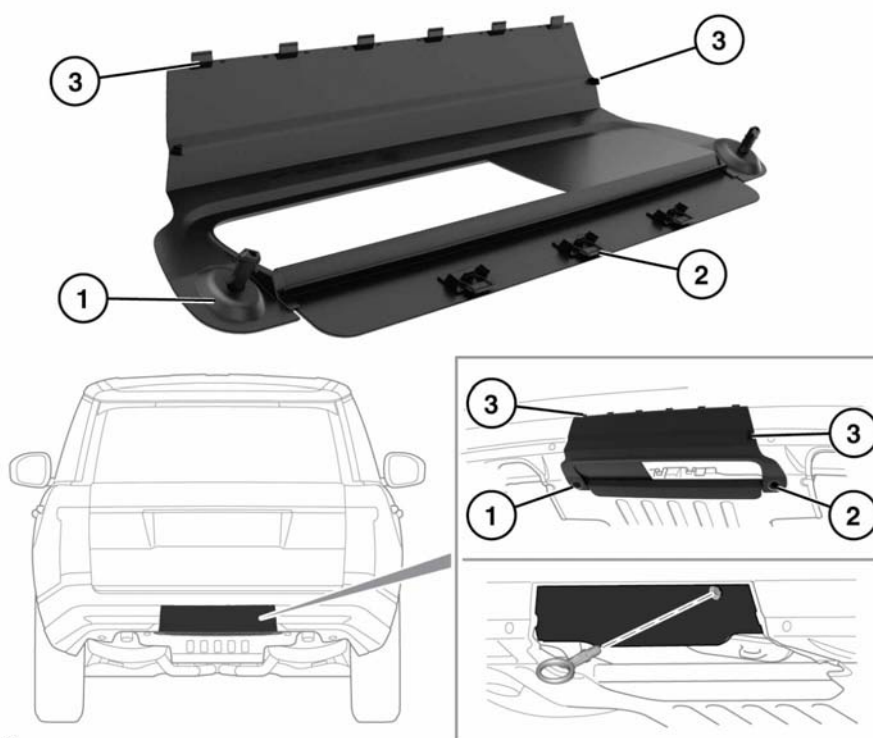
1. Rotate each of the two fasteners 90 degrees counter-clockwise with a coin, or a similar object, to release the lower edge.
2. Rotate the cover to release the two side tabs.
3. Release the six tabs at the top.

To refit the cover:

1. Locate the cover in place and make sure that the six tabs on the top edge engage in the bumper.
2. Locate the two side tabs.
3. Rotate the two fasteners 90 degrees clockwise to secure the cover.

## Vehicle recovery

### Vehicles with a powered tow ball



E190907

The rear towing point is located behind a removable cover in the rear bumper. The towing eye is stored in the tool kit, located in the underfloor area of the loadspace.

To remove the cover:

1. Rotate each of the two fasteners 90 degrees counter-clockwise with a coin, or a similar object, to release the lower edge.
2. Pull the lower edge of the cover rearward to release the three tabs at the lower edge.

3. Rotate the cover to release the six upper tabs and the two side tabs.

4. Screw the towing eye counter-clockwise into its fixing, until secure.

To refit the cover:

1. Locate the six upper tabs and the two side tabs.
2. Locate the three lower tabs.
3. Rotate the two fasteners 90 degrees clockwise to secure the cover.

## Vehicle recovery

### OFF-ROAD RECOVERY

#### **⚠ WARNING**

If the towing points are to be used for off-road recovery, it is essential that off-road driver training, covering recovery techniques is undertaken.

Further information on off-road driver training can be found at:  
[www.landroverexperience.com](http://www.landroverexperience.com).

### TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The front and rear tie down points must be used only for securing the vehicle during transportation. If they are used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

The recommended method for recovery/transporting the vehicle is by a trailer designed for that purpose.

Always use qualified persons to perform recovery and to make sure that the vehicle is secured correctly.

#### **NOTICE**

*If the vehicle's electronics are operational, the air suspension must be set to access height, before securing the vehicle to a recovery vehicle or trailer. Failure to do so can result in damage to the vehicle.*

### TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS

The vehicle should be recovered with all four wheels clear of the ground, i.e., on a trailer. However, if the vehicle cannot be recovered by using the correct method, in an emergency, the vehicle can be towed on all four wheels for a short distance. Please adhere to the following guidelines.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The recovery agent **MUST** activate the Emergency park release before towing commences. This procedure is covered in a separate publication for service personnel.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

If transmission Neutral (N) is selected and the engine is then switched off, the transmission will automatically select Park (P) after 10 minutes has elapsed. At this point, if the Emergency park release has not been activated and the vehicle is being towed, serious damage to the transmission will result. There is also a danger to personal safety.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

If the engine cannot be used during towing, there will be no power assistance to the braking or steering systems. This will result in much greater effort to steer and stop the vehicle and in a greatly increased stopping distance.

#### **NOTICE**

*Only tow the vehicle in a forward direction with all four wheels on the ground. Towing in a reverse direction or with only two wheels on the ground, can cause serious damage to the transmission.*



## Vehicle recovery

### NOTICE

*Do not tow the vehicle for more than 30 miles (50 km). Do not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h). Towing for a greater distance, or at a higher speed, may result in serious damage to the transmission.*

### NOTICE

*Do not tow the vehicle if the transmission cannot be set in Neutral (N), or if the rear electronic differential has failed in the locked position. Doing so can cause serious damage to the transmission.*

The following procedure must be carried out carefully to prevent damage to the vehicle:

1. Secure the towing attachment from the recovery vehicle to the front towing eye. See **458, FRONT TOWING EYE**.
2. With the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) applied, switch on the ignition.
3. Apply the brake pedal and rotate the selector to Neutral (N).
4. Activate the Emergency park release.
5. Switch off the ignition and leave the Smart key in a secure place inside the vehicle.
6. The ignition may be switched on to allow operation of the turn signals, brake lamps, etc.
7. Release the EPB before towing the vehicle.

### NOTICE

*Leaving the ignition switched on for extended periods will drain the vehicle's battery.*

### AFTER TOWING ON FOUR WHEELS

1. Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB).
2. Switch on the ignition and apply the brake pedal.
3. Rotate the gear selector to Park (P).
4. Deactivate the Emergency Park Release.
5. Switch off the ignition and remove the Smart key from the vehicle.
6. Remove the recovery vehicle's towing attachment from the front towing eye and refit the cover.

### ⚠ WARNING

**Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible which can result in serious injury.**



## After a collision

### BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING

#### WARNING

If the vehicle is involved in a collision, it should be checked by a retailer/authorized repairer, or suitably qualified personnel, before starting or driving.

**Note:** The vehicle may have an SOS emergency call button and an optimized assistance call button. See **350, REMOTE & PROTECT™**.

### SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in the vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about the vehicle. Potentially, this includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as the engine, accelerator pedal, steering, or brakes.

In order to properly diagnose and service the vehicle, a retailer/authorized repairer may access the vehicle's diagnostic information through a direct connection to the vehicle.

### EVENT DATA RECORDING

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

**Note:** EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

## Vehicle labels

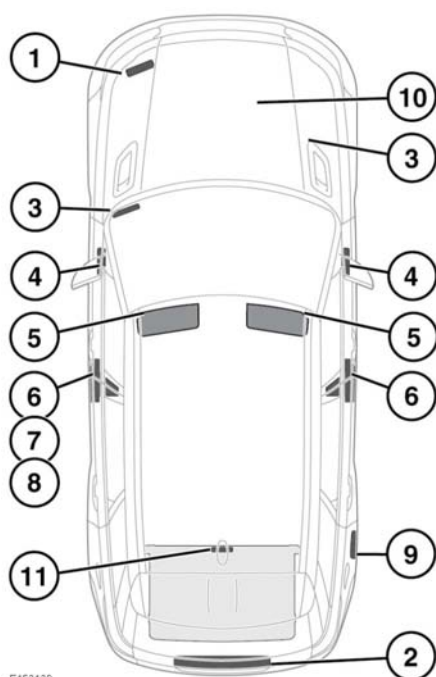
### LABEL LOCATIONS



Warning labels attached to your vehicle showing this symbol mean: Do not touch or adjust components before reading the relevant instructions in the handbook.



Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilizes very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the starter switch is switched on.



E153139

1. Hood locking platform: Air conditioning label.
2. Top of the battery: Battery warning symbols.

3. The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is stamped on a plate, visible through the lowest part of the left side of the windshield. The number is also stamped into the right-side suspension tower.

**Note:** The VIN number may need to be quoted when communicating with a retailer/authorised repairer.

4. End of the dashboard (passenger side): Passenger air bag label.
5. Sun visor: Air bag label and the vehicle handling label.
6. Base of the B pillar: VIN number.
7. Base of the B pillar, or inside base of the front door: Tire pressure label, air bag warning label.
8. Mid-way up the B pillar: Side air bag warning label.
9. Inside the fuel filler flap: Fuel label.
10. Engine number: V6 and V8 petrol. The number is located on the right-side camshaft cover.  
V6 Diesel - The number is located on the front of the left-side camshaft cover.
11. Loadspace cover warning label: Located on the underside of the loadspace cover.

It is important that you are familiar with these subjects, to make sure that your vehicle and its features are used safely.

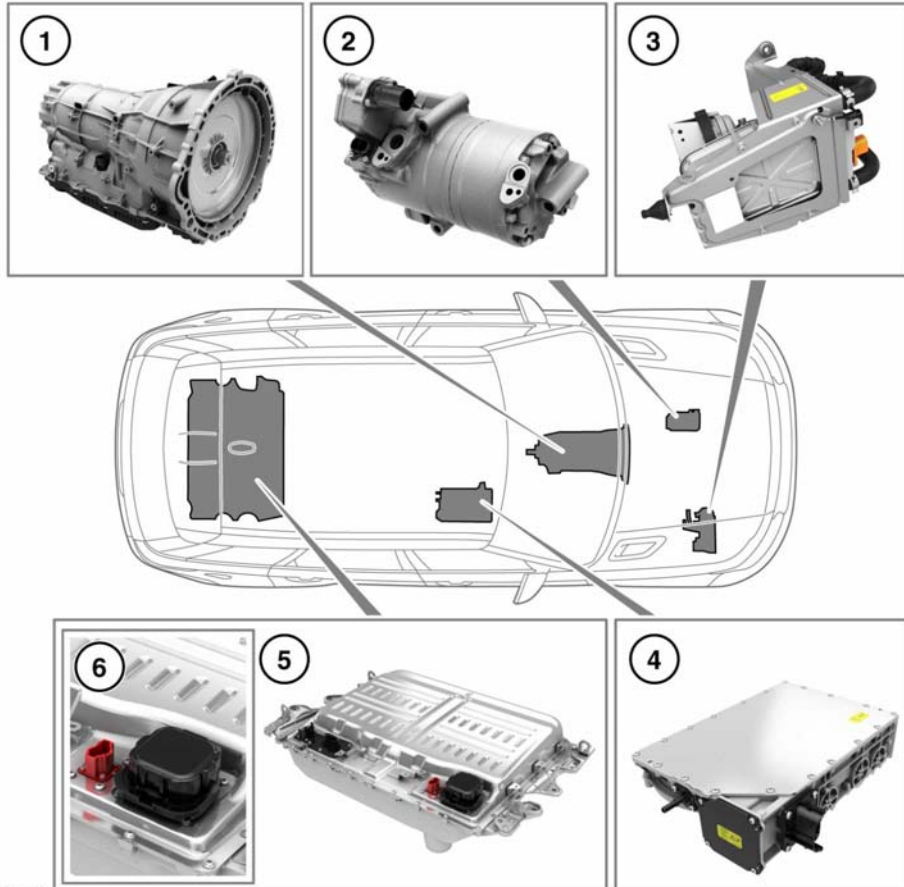
## Vehicle labels



E208797

Labels showing this symbol indicate that the hybrid vehicle system utilizes very high voltages. Do not touch any component that has this label or is colored orange.

The high voltage warning labels are stamped on the following components of the Hybrid Electric Vehicles:



E208426



## Vehicle labels

1. Automatic transmission.
2. Heating, ventilation and air conditioning (HVAC) compressor.
3. High voltage heater.
4. High voltage inverter: The high voltage warning label is located on the top of the inverter.
5. High voltage battery: The high voltage warning label is located on the top of the battery.
6. Master switch disconnect (MSD) connector.

## Technical specifications

### TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Some technical specification information in the Owner's Handbook is not available at the time of print, or is subject to updates after printing. Please visit the online Owner's Handbook at:

**www.ownerinfo.landrover.com**, or contact a retailer/authorized repairer, for the latest data.

### ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

	Capacity - cubic inch (cc)	Number of cylinders
2.0 L Gasoline	122 (1 997)	4
3.0 L Gasoline	183 (2 995)	6
5.0 L Gasoline	305 (4 999)	8
3.0 L Diesel	183 (2 993)	6

**Note:** For further information, contact a retailer/authorized repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See **466, LABEL LOCATIONS**.

### LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Part	Variant	Specification
Engine oil	Gasoline vehicles	SAE 0W-20 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.51.5122.
	Diesel vehicles	SAE 5W-30 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5005.
Diesel exhaust fluid	Diesel vehicles with DEF	AdBlue® meeting ISO 22241 and ISO 22241-1. Diesel Exhaust Fluid is also known as DEF, AdBlue, AUS 32 and ARLA 32.
Dynamic response fluid	Vehicles with dynamic response	It is recommended to use Texaco Cold Climate PAS fluid 33270.



## Technical specifications

Part	Variant	Specification
Brake fluid	565 PS vehicles	Non-petroleum based DOT4 ISO 4925 Class 4 specially designed for motor sport requiring an exceptionally high vapor lock point. It is recommended to use Castrol React SRF Racing.
	All other vehicles	It is recommended to use Land Rover brake fluid. If unavailable, then a non-petroleum based brake fluid meeting specification DOT4 ISO 4925 Class 6 may be used.
Windshield washer fluid	All vehicles	Windshield wash with frost protection, diluted with clean water as specified on the bottle.
Coolant fluid	All vehicles	Mixture of 50% water and 50% Havoline XLC anti-freeze, meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.651.5003.
Air conditioning refrigerant	All vehicles	R1234yf
Air conditioning compressor oil	All vehicles	Polyalkylene Glycol SP-A2

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the Verband der Automobilindustrie e.V. (VDA).

If in doubt about the required specification of a lubricant or fluid, seek advice from a retailer/authorized repairer.



E176576

**Castrol EDGE Professional** exclusively recommended by Land Rover.

## Technical specifications

### CAPACITIES

Item	Variant	Capacity
Fuel tank (usable)	Standard wheelbase vehicles	22.7 U.S. gallons (86 liters)
	Long wheelbase vehicles	27.6 U.S. gallons (104.3 liters)
Engine oil refill and filter change	2.0 L Gasoline PHEV.	7.4 U.S. quart (7 liters)
	Gasoline vehicles except 2.0 L Gasoline PHEV.	8.5 U.S. quart (8 liters)
	Diesel vehicles	6.3 U.S. quart (5.9 liters)
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)	Diesel vehicles	38.0 U.S. pints (18.4 liters)
Washer fluid reservoir	All vehicles	13.2 U.S. pints (6.25 liters)
	Cold Climate vehicles with a supplemental reservoir	4.4 U.S. pints (2.1 liters)
Refrigerant charge weight	2.0 L Gasoline PHEV 2 and 3 zone.	2.1 pounds (950 grams)
	2.0 L Gasoline PHEV 4 zone.	2.4 pounds (1 100 grams)
	Gasoline vehicles except 2.0 L Gasoline PHEV 2 and 3 zone.	1.8 pounds (800 grams)
	Gasoline vehicles except 2.0 L Gasoline PHEV 4 zone.	2.4 pounds (1 100 grams)
	Diesel vehicles 2 and 3 zone.	1.8 pounds (800 grams)
	Diesel vehicles 4 zone.	2.2 pounds (1 000 grams)
Air conditioning compressor oil	2.0 L Gasoline PHEV.	2.7 ounces (80 milliliters)
	All vehicles except 2.0 L Gasoline PHEV 2 and 3 zone.	4.7 ounces (140 milliliters)
	All vehicles except 2.0 L Gasoline PHEV 4 zone.	4.1 ounces (120 milliliters)

The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All levels must be checked using level marks, or information displayed in the message center, as applicable.

#### **NOTICE**

*Do not overfill the DEF reservoir, or damage to the vehicle may occur.*



## Technical specifications

### WEIGHTS

Variant	Curb weight lb (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) <sup>1</sup> lb (kg)	Gross Train Weight (GTW) <sup>2</sup> lb (kg)
Standard wheelbase vehicles.			
3.0 L Diesel.	4 940 (2 241)	6 834 (3 100)	14 550 (6 600)
2.0 L Gasoline Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle - (PHEV).	5 515 (2 502)	7 077 (3 210)	12 588 (5 710)
3.0 L Gasoline.	4 955 (2 249)	6 768 (3 070)	14 484 (6 570)
5.0 L Gasoline.	5 235 (2 375)	6 967 (3 160)	14 682 (6 660)
5.0 L Gasoline - SV Autobiography.	5 545 (2 516)	6 967 (3 160)	14 682 (6 660)
Long wheelbase vehicles.			
5.0 L Gasoline.	5 385 (2 443)	7 055 (3 200)	14 770 (6 700)
5.0 L Gasoline - SV Autobiography.	5 727 (2 598)	7 055 (3 200)	14 770 (6 700)

<sup>1</sup> The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle, including passengers and load.

<sup>2</sup> The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle and braked trailer, including their respective loads.

Variant	Maximum front axle load <sup>1</sup> (kg)	Maximum rear axle load <sup>1</sup> (kg)	Maximum roof crossbar load <sup>2</sup> (kg)
3.0 L Diesel. Standard wheelbase vehicles.	3 417 (1 550)	3 913 (1 775)	220 (100)
2.0 L Gasoline Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle - (PHEV). Standard wheelbase vehicles.	3 307 (1 500)	4 189 (1 900)	220 (100)
All other standard wheelbase vehicles.	3 307 (1 500)	3 913 (1 775)	220 (100)
Long wheelbase vehicles.	3 417 (1 550)	3 913 (1 775)	220 (100)



## Technical specifications

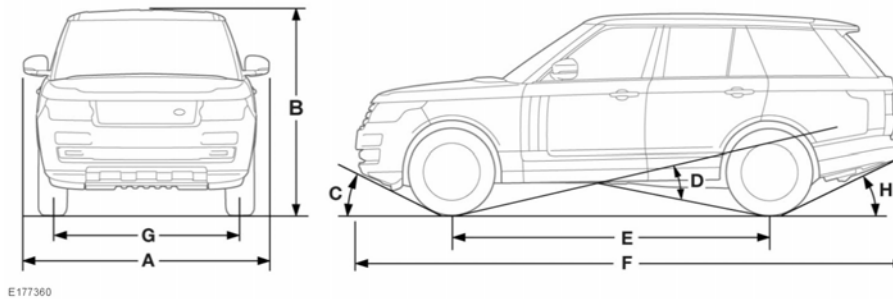
<sup>1</sup> The front and rear axle maximum loads cannot be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.

<sup>2</sup> This figure includes the weight of the roof rails and crossbars.



## Technical specifications

### DIMENSIONS



E177360

Item	Description	Variant	inches (mm)	Degrees
A	Width (including mirrors)	All vehicles	87.4 (2 220)	-
	Body width	All vehicles	78.1 (1 983)	-
B	Height	Standard wheelbase	72.3 (1 836)	-
		Long wheelbase vehicles	72.4 (1 840)	-
C	Approach angle - standard height	All vehicles	-	26.0
D	Ramp breakover angle - standard height	All vehicles	-	20.1
E	Wheelbase	Standard wheelbase	115 (2 922)	-
		Long wheelbase vehicles	122.9 (3 122)	-
F	Overall length	Standard wheelbase	196.8 (5 000)	-
		Long wheelbase vehicles	204.7 (5 200)	-
G	Track - front	All vehicles	66.5 (1 690)	-

## Technical specifications

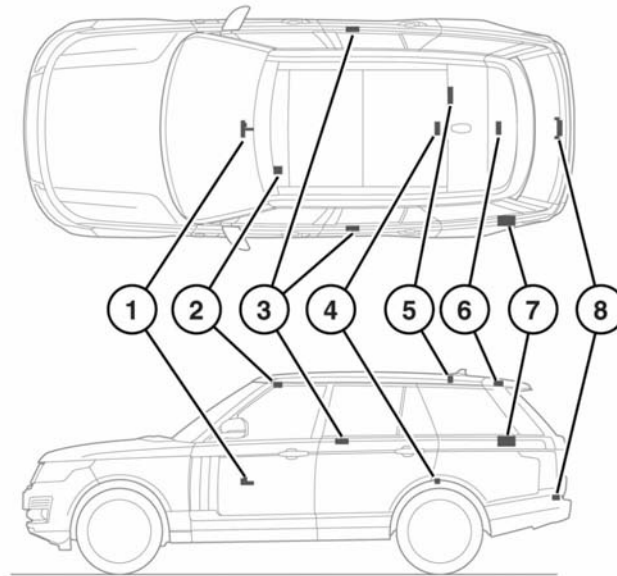
Item	Description	Variant	inches (mm)	Degrees
	Track - rear	All vehicles	66.3 (1 683)	-
H	Departure angle - standard height	All vehicles	-	24.6
-	Wading depth (off road height)*	All vehicles	29.5 (750)	-
-	Minimum ground clearance - standard height	All vehicles	8.7 (220)	-
-	Turning circle (kerb to kerb)	SV Autobiography standard wheel base	40.7 feet (12.4 meters)	-
		All other standard wheelbase vehicles	40.5 feet (12.33 metres)	-
		Long wheelbase vehicles	42.8 (13.05 meters)	-

\*Maximum wading speed is 4 mph (7 km/h).



## Technical specifications

### SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS



E213057

1. Cabin front transmitter.
2. Satellite transceiver.
3. Door transmitters.
4. Cabin middle transmitter.
5. External receiver.
6. Satellite transmitter.
7. Loadspace interior receiver.
8. Loadspace exterior transmitter.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure the device is kept at a distance of at least 8.7 inches (22 cm) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.**

#### **RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS USA**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### **Canada**

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC - RSS-210: Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

## Technical specifications

(1) this device may not cause interference,  
and

(2) this device must accept any  
interference, including interference that  
may cause undesired operation of the  
device.

The key system transmitter radio  
frequency approval numbers for the USA  
and Canada are shown below:

<b>USA FCC ID:</b>	KOBTJF10B
	KOBLR09A
	KOBBG10A
	KOBBG10B
<b>Canada IC:</b>	3521A-JTF10B
	3521-JLR09A
	3521-JBG10A
	3521-JBG10B

**Note:** *The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio interference or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

### **NOTICE**

*The Smart key may suffer interference from other legal users of this radio frequency band, such as radio amateurs, medical equipment, remote controls or alarm systems. To lock or unlock the vehicle in such a situation, either use a key or operate the key transmitter as close to the security antenna as possible.*



## Type approval

### DECLARATIONS OF CONFORMITY

The digital handbook can be viewed at: **[www.ownerinfo.landrover.com](http://www.ownerinfo.landrover.com)** and is updated with the latest available information.

## Index

- 4x4i
  - 4WD information.....243
  - vehicle dimensions.....244
  - 4WD information drive assist.....245
  - 4WD information low traction launch.....244
  - 4WD information wade sensing.....245
  - off-road information terrain response information.....243
- 4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....244
- A**
- About this handbook.....2
- ACC
  - follow mode off.....214
  - performance.....212
- Access height (air suspension).....182
- Accessories.....381
- Acoustic vehicle alert system (AVAS)
  - hybrid system.....166
- Active differential control.....194
- Activity key
  - unlocking.....14
- Adaptive cruise control.....210
  - adaptive cruise control gap change.....215
  - follow mode performance.....215
  - queue assist.....216
  - steering assist performance.....218
  - stop and go.....216
  - type approval.....218
- Adaptive cruise control follow mode.....213
- Adaptive cruise control override.....213
- Adaptive cruise control with steering assist.....217
- Adaptive cruise control with steering assist active
  - warning lamps.....88
- Adaptive cruise control with steering assist not active
  - warning lamps.....89
- Adaptive driving beam.....94
- Adaptive dynamics.....186
- Adaptive front lighting system.....93
- Adaptive headlamps.....93
- AdBlue.....370
- Advanced tow assist
  - trailer reverse.....145
- Age degradation (tires).....429
- Air bag
  - driver's.....68
  - front passengers.....68
- Air bags
  - curtain.....68
  - curtain air bags.....68
  - deployment.....66, 68
  - disability modifications.....72
  - locations.....65
  - maintenance.....380
  - obstructions.....67
  - occupant sensing.....70
  - service information.....71
  - side air bags.....68
  - warning lamp.....69, 84
- Air conditioning
  - air quality sensor.....299
  - automatic recirculation.....299
  - front.....296
- Air conditioning (a/c)
  - fluid top up.....377
- Air suspension
  - access height.....182
  - auto access height.....183
  - DSC fault safety override.....187
  - extended mode.....182
  - locked access height.....184
  - off-road height.....181
  - rear height adjust.....185
  - safety override lowering height.....187
- Alarm.....380
  - automatic relocking and arming.....26
  - battery back-up sounder.....26
  - deactivating.....26
- All terrain progress control (ATPC)
  - overview settings.....233, 235



## Index

- AM/FM radio
  - radio data system.....271
- Amber exhaust fluid warning lamp.....86
- Ambient temperature changes
  - tire pressure compensation.....429
- Anchor points (luggage).....136
- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) warning lamp.....85
- Anti-theft system.....380
- Anti-trap protection
  - windows.....110
- App
  - comfort controller.....307
- Arduous driving conditions.....379
- ARLA 32.....370
- Armrest folding.....30
- Assisted steering
  - adaptive cruise control.....217
- ATPC
  - using.....233, 235
- Audio
  - AM/FM radio
    - radio data system.....271
  - AM/FM radio controls.....269
  - CD loading.....264
  - changing portable media device.....285
  - conversation assist.....265
  - full screen view.....288
  - HD radio controls.....272
  - licensing.....266–267
  - media controls.....260
  - portable media connections.....278
  - portable media controls.....281
  - portable media pairing.....284
  - portable media playing.....283
  - rear media touch screen control.....262
  - satellite radio controls.....274
  - satellite radio reception.....277
  - satellite subscription.....277
  - settings.....263
  - sound settings.....263
- Audio settings.....263
- AUS 32.....370
- Auto access height.....183
- Auto hybrid fuel economy.....163
- Automatic locking.....20, 26
- Automatic speed limiter
  - warning lamp.....84–85
- Automatic transmission.....176
  - gear shift warning lamp.....88
  - high and low range.....178
- Auto program.....196
- Auto start.....173
- Auto stop.....173
- Auto zoom (navigation).....343
- Auxiliary device connection.....284
- Auxiliary power sockets.....126
- Avoiding tire flat spots.....429
- B**
- Battery
  - boost starting.....408
  - care.....404
  - charging.....408
  - connecting jump leads.....405
  - disconnection.....409
  - effects of disconnection.....409
  - maintenance.....404
  - monitoring system.....409
  - removing.....408
  - replacing.....408
  - using a starting aid.....408
  - warning lamp.....82
  - warning symbols.....404
- Battery back-up sounder.....26
- Belt rattle.....51
- Belts
  - seat, monitor.....55
- Blind
  - resetting the roof blind.....386
- Blinds.....110
  - rear window.....107
  - side windows.....109
- Blind spot monitor
  - closing vehicle sensing.....227
  - closing vehicle sensing performance.....227



## Index

- Bluetooth
  - compatibility.....328
  - general information.....335
  - pairing
    - via the phone.....328
  - phone
    - icons.....330
    - safety.....327
  - portable media
    - pairing.....284
    - playing.....283
- Bluetooth phone
  - call volume.....331
  - overview.....324
  - steering wheel controls.....330
- Booster seats for larger children.....60
- Boost starting.....408
- Brakes
  - ABS warning lamp.....85
  - control with ABS.....189
  - electronic brake force distribution...189
  - emergency brake assist.....189
  - fluid check.....400
  - fluid specification.....401
  - fluid top up.....401
  - handbrake.....189
  - hill start assist.....191
  - important information.....188
  - parking brake warning lamp.....83
  - steep slope control.....189
  - warning lamp (amber).....85
  - warning lamp (red).....83
- Brake temperature.....202
- Braking
  - AEB.....221
- Braking systems
  - AEB.....222
  - aEBA.....224
  - aEBA performance.....224
  - AEB performance.....223
  - collision avoidance.....220
  - high-speed emergency braking.....225
  - high-speed emergency braking
    - performance.....225
- Bulbs
  - changing a bulb.....385
- C**
  - Cable
    - charging indicators.....155
    - connecting charging.....152
    - disconnecting charging.....156
  - California proposition 65.....2
  - California proposition 65 second
    - warning.....404
  - Cameras
    - forward traffic detection.....228
    - forward vehicle guidance.....323
    - hitch assist.....144
    - proximity view.....320
    - rear camera.....319
    - reverse traffic detection.....230
    - touch screen menu.....320
  - Capacities.....471
  - Care points
    - driving aids.....238
    - speed limiter.....203
  - Carpets and mats.....392
  - CD player
    - CD loading.....264
    - portable media pairing.....284
    - portable media playing.....283
  - Cell phone
    - call volume.....331
    - icons.....330
    - overview.....324
    - steering wheel controls.....330
  - Centre console storage.....124
  - Changing a bulb.....385
  - Changing a fuse.....413
  - Changing a wheel
    - recommended process.....453
    - safety warnings.....448
    - spare wheel.....450
    - temporary spare wheel.....452
    - tool kit.....449



## Index

- Charging
  - cable connecting.....152
  - cable disconnecting.....156
  - cable indicators.....155
  - port indicators.....153
  - port location.....152
  - preferred time.....156
  - timed.....156
- Charging cable
  - emergency release.....157
- Charging introduction.....151
- Charging status
  - warning lamps.....83, 85, 87, 90
- Charging the vehicle battery.....408
- Chassis number.....466
- Check engine warning lamp.....85
- Child restraint information.....58
- Child safety
  - booster seats.....60
  - check list.....59
  - child seats.....56
  - larger children on booster seats.....60
  - LATCH installation.....60
  - lock and window inhibitor.....56
  - positioning.....58
  - tether straps.....62
- Cleaning
  - after off-road driving.....389
  - air bag covers.....392
  - alloy wheels.....390
  - carpets and mats.....392
  - engine compartment.....388
  - exterior.....387
  - interior.....390
  - leather.....391
  - park assist sensors.....388
  - parking aids sensors.....388
  - seat belts.....391
  - sensors and cameras.....388
  - under body.....388
  - washer jets.....393
  - wipers.....393
- Cleaning the wiper blades.....393
- Climate
  - temperature, differentiation.....307
- Climate and comfort
  - comfort controller.....307
- Climate and comfort settings.....298
- Climate control
  - automatic recirculation.....299
  - climate seats.....306
  - front.....296
  - heated seats.....305
  - rear.....300
  - seat comfort.....302
- Climate settings.....298
- Clock
  - setting the time and date
    - general settings.....258
- Closing the hood.....383
- Collision avoidance
  - AEB.....221–222
  - aEBA.....224
  - aEBA performance.....224
  - AEB performance.....223
  - blind spot assist.....228
  - blind spot assist performance.....228
  - blind spot monitor.....225
  - blind spot monitor performance.....226
  - closing vehicle sensing.....227
  - closing vehicle sensing
    - performance.....227
  - forward alert.....221
  - forward alert sensitivity.....221
  - forward traffic detection.....228
  - high-speed emergency braking.....225
  - high-speed emergency braking
    - performance.....225
  - reverse traffic detection.....230
- Comfort position
  - rear seats.....34
- Comfort program.....197
- Commandshift.....176
- Compact disc.....264
- Computer holder.....46
- Condensation (headlamps).....95

## Index

- Conformity declarations.....478
- Connecting
  - charging cable.....152
- Connecting jump leads.....405
- Connectivity
  - connecting a sim card.....363
  - mobile data connectivity.....364
  - overview.....363
  - status icons.....365
  - wi-Fi connectivity.....365
- Controls
  - adaptive speed limiter.....205
  - speed limiter.....204
- Controls cleaning.....390
- Convenience mode.....16
- Coolant
  - checking the level.....398
  - specification.....399
  - top up.....399
- Courtesy delay.....92
- Covers
  - under hood.....384
- Critical warning messages.....83
- Cruise control.....207
  - adaptive.....211
  - adaptive cruise control.....210
  - adaptive cruise control gap
    - change.....215
    - stop and go.....216
  - warning lamp.....88
- Cruise control safety.....209
- Curtain air bags.....68
- D**
- Data recording.....465
- Daytime running lamps.....92
- DCM performance.....241
- Declaration of conformity.....332
- Declarations of conformity.....478
- DEF.....370
- DEF warning lamp.....83, 86
- Diesel
  - anti misfuel device active.....376
  - fuel.....368
  - glow plugs
    - warning lamp.....87
  - sulfur content.....369
  - water in fuel.....373
- Diesel engines.....373
- Diesel exhaust fluid (DEF)
  - consumption rate.....370
- Diesel particulate filter (DPF)
  - sulfur content.....369
- Differential control.....194
- Differentiation
  - temperature, climate.....307
- Dimensions.....474
- Dipped beam
  - warning lamps.....88
- Direction indicators.....91
- Disability modifications
  - air bags.....72
- Disconnecting
  - charging cable.....156
- Displays.....392
- Display settings
  - lower touch screen.....259
  - touch screen.....258
- Door mirrors.....101
- Door transceiver
  - assistance.....106
  - erase all programming.....105
  - frequency regulations.....106
  - programming.....103
  - programming a single button.....105
  - programming the garage door
    - opener.....104
- Downloading from the internet
  - InControl hotspot.....359
- DPF.....83, 86, 88, 379
- Drive assist
  - 4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....245
- Drive away locking.....20
- Driver condition monitor
  - warning lamps.....86, 90
- Driver drowsiness performance.....241



## Index

- Driver exit
  - deactivating intelligent stop/start....174
- Driver fatigue monitoring.....241
- Driver modes
  - comfort program.....197
- Driving
  - activating intelligent stop/start.....173
  - active differential.....194
  - adaptive cruise control.....210
  - adaptive cruise control gap change.....215
  - after a collision.....465
  - arduous conditions.....379
  - before starting.....465
  - brake control with ABS.....189
  - brakes important information.....188
  - breaking-in.....377
  - daily checks.....378
  - deactivating intelligent stop/start....174
  - DSC active warning lamp.....86
  - electronic brake force distribution...189
  - emergency brake assist.....189
  - follow mode.....213
  - gear shift warning lamp.....88
  - hill start assist.....191
  - lane departure warning lamp (green).....88
  - lane departure warning lamp (red)....84
  - low oil pressure.....84
  - overriding ACC.....213
  - queue assist (adaptive cruise control).....216
  - rain sensor.....99
  - sitting correctly.....29
  - steep slope control with ABS.....189
  - switching follow mode off.....214
  - using cruise control.....207
  - weekly checks.....378
- Driving aids
  - collision avoidance.....220
  - forward alert.....221
  - lane departure warning.....239
  - traffic sign recognition.....241
- Driving assist.....240
- Driving behaviour.....241
- Driving programs
  - auto.....196
  - dynamic program.....199
  - grass gravel snow.....197
  - mud/ruts.....197
  - override options.....199
  - rock crawl.....198
  - sand.....197
  - system difficulties.....199
- Driving Style
  - ECO data score.....78
- Driving style
  - ECO efficiency for accelerator speed and brake.....78
- Drowsiness monitoring.....241
- Dynamic program.....199
- Dynamic response
  - fluid level.....402
  - fluid specification.....403
  - fluid top up.....403
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).....192
  - DSC active warning lamp.....86
  - DSC off warning lamp.....86
  - switching off.....192
  - switching on.....193
- E**
- ECO data driving style
  - driving style.....78
- Eco program
  - fuel saving.....197
- Effects of battery disconnection.....409
- Electric mode.....166
- Electric parking brake.....189
- Electric rear seats
  - reclining.....32
- Electric seats.....28
  - passenger seat away.....35
  - position memory.....30
  - restricted front seat travel.....29
- Electric windows
  - operation.....107

## Index

- Electronic air suspension.....180
- Electronic brake force distribution.....189
- Electronic data.....465
- Email
  - InControl hotspot.....359
- Emergency brake assist.....189, 224
- Emergency brake assist
  - performance.....224
- Emergency braking.....222, 225
- Emergency braking
  - performance.....223, 225
- Emergency key locking.....26
- Emergency release
  - charging cable.....157
- Engine
  - antifreeze level.....398
  - coolant level.....398
  - diesel.....373
  - diesel fuel.....368
  - engine compartment
    - poisonous fluids.....382
  - fuel types.....367
  - oil level.....396
  - specifications.....469
  - switching off.....169
- Engine compartment cleaning.....388
- Engine pre-heater
  - antifreeze.....172
  - cold starting.....172
  - connecting to mains supply.....172
- Engine starting.....169
- failure to start.....171
- Engine starting safety.....169
- Engine temperature warning lamp.....84
- Entering the vehicle
  - activity key.....14
  - entry and exit mode.....47
  - global opening.....15
  - passive entry.....14
  - unlocking mode.....13
  - unlocking the steering column.....48
- Ethanol.....368
- Event data recording.....465
- Executive class rear seats.....33
  - massage.....35
  - remote seats.....38
- Executive class seat recline.....34
- Exhaust filter.....83, 86, 88, 369, 379
- Exhaust fluid
  - diesel.....370
- Exit detection.....25
- Exiting the vehicle
  - arming the alarm.....26
  - closing mislock.....24
  - door locks and handles.....24
  - emergency locking.....26
  - interior locks.....24
  - keyless locking.....23
  - lock confirmation.....24
  - single locking.....23
- Extended mode (air suspension).....182
- Exterior cleaning.....387
- Exterior lamps
  - bulb changing.....385
- Exterior lighting
  - laser.....95
- Exterior mirrors
  - electric.....101
  - manual.....101
  - mirror dip when reversing.....102
- External synthesized sound.....166
- External temperature
  - warning lamp.....86
- F**
  - Fatigue monitoring.....241
  - Filler locations.....394
  - Flat spots.....429
  - Fluids
    - air conditioning (a/c) fluid.....377
    - brake
      - check.....400
      - specification.....401
      - top up.....401
    - capacities.....471
    - coolant
      - specification.....399



## Index

- top up.....399
  - dynamic response.....403
    - check.....402
    - specification.....403
  - engine oil
    - check.....396
  - filler locations.....394
  - oil
    - top up.....398
    - specifications.....469
  - washer fluid.....402
    - check.....401
    - specification.....402
  - Fog lamps
    - warning lamps
      - front.....88
      - rear.....87
  - Following another vehicle.....213
  - Follow mode
    - gap change.....215
    - gap changing.....215
    - off.....90
  - Follow mode off.....214
  - Follow mode override.....213
  - Forward alert sensitivity.....221
  - Frequency spectrum regulation statement bSM.....226
  - Front
    - seats massage.....31
  - Front air bags.....68
  - Front climate control
    - automatic recirculation.....299
  - Front head restraint
    - removal.....42
  - Front towing eye.....458
  - Fuel and refueling.....375
    - anti misfuel device active.....376
    - diesel.....368
    - diesel fuel sulfur content.....369
    - ethanol.....368
    - filler flap.....375
    - fuel filler flap.....374
    - fuel types.....367
    - methanol.....368
    - MTBE (Methyl tertiary butyl ether).....368
    - octane rating.....367
    - reformulated gasoline.....372
    - running out.....372
    - safety precautions.....367
    - tank capacity.....376
    - water in fuel.....373
  - Fuel can.....372
  - Fuel filler flap.....374
    - locked.....374
  - Fuel saving
    - eco program.....197
  - Fuel system.....385
  - Full screen view for video.....288
  - Fuses
    - changing.....413
    - engine compartment fuse box.....414
    - loadspace fuse box.....419
    - locations.....411
    - luggage compartment.....419
    - passenger compartment fuse box.....417
- ## G
- Garage door opener.....103
    - assistance.....106
    - erase all programming.....105
    - frequency regulations.....106
    - programming.....103–104
    - programming a single button.....105
  - Garage door transceiver.....103
  - Gasoline
    - fuel types.....367
  - Gearbox
    - automatic.....176
    - gear shift warning lamp.....88
    - high and low range.....178
    - limp home mode.....179
  - Gesture roof blind.....109
  - Gesture tailgate.....19
  - Global opening.....15
  - Glow plugs
    - warning lamp.....87
  - GPF.....83, 86, 88, 379

## Index

- Gradient release control
  - ascent brake release.....202
- Grass gravel snow.....197
- H**
- Handbook symbols.....3
- Handbrake.....189
- Hands free tailgate opening.....19
- Headlamps.....91
  - adaptive.....93
  - adaptive driving beam.....94
  - bulb changing.....385
  - condensation.....95
  - courtesy delay.....92
  - daytime running lamps.....92
  - high beam assist.....92
  - high beam assist warning lamp.....87
  - high beam warning lamp.....89
  - washers.....100
- Headlight
  - washers.....100
- Headlights
  - laser.....95
- Head restraint overview.....40
- Head restraint removal
  - front.....42
- Head restraints
  - adjustment.....41
  - front seats.....40
  - rear seats.....41
  - removing.....42
  - wings.....41
- Head restraint warnings.....40
- Head up display.....79
- Heated steering wheel.....48
- Heating and ventilation
  - air quality sensor.....299
  - automatic recirculation.....299
  - climate seats.....306
  - front.....296
  - heated seats.....305
  - rear.....300
- High beam assist.....92
- Hill descent control.....200
- brake release control.....202
- brake temperature.....202
- warning lamp.....88
- Hill start assist.....191
- Hitch assist
  - cameras.....144
- Hold hybrid charge
  - save, MY EV.....163
- Homelink.....103
  - assistance.....106
  - erase all programming.....105
  - frequency regulations.....106
  - programming.....103
  - programming a single button.....105
  - programming the garage door opener.....104
- Homepage
  - internet.....361
  - web browser.....361
- Hood
  - closing.....383
  - opening.....383
- Hybrid charging.....151
- Hybrid preferred charging time.....156
- Hybrid safety
  - hybrid vehicle.....165
- Hybrid timed charging.....156
- Hybrid timed charging overview.....155
- Hybrid vehicle
  - electric mode.....166
  - hybrid safety.....165
  - instrument panel.....74
  - power gauge.....74
  - storing.....378
  - system overview.....165
  - warning messages.....168
- I**
- IEB.....225
- Ignition
  - rolling restart.....170
  - switching on.....170
- Important points
  - engine starting.....169



## Index

- InControl.....356
  - apps.....355
  - connected navigation.....347, 357
  - overview.....350
  - remote premium.....350
  - wi-fi hotspot.....359
- InControl navigation account.....356
- Indicator lamps.....80
- Indicators
  - charging cable.....155
  - charging port.....153
- Information messages.....76, 87
- Infotainment
  - CD loading.....264
  - connecting a media device.....279
  - conversation assist.....265
  - DVD player controls.....289
  - full screen view.....288
  - headphones.....291
  - importing/ripping media.....285
  - licensing.....267
  - lower touch screen
    - home menu.....251
  - media controls.....260
  - media player controls.....286
  - portable media
    - changing.....285
    - connecting multiple devices.....284
    - connections.....278
    - controls.....281
    - pairing.....284
    - playing.....283
  - radio controls.....269
  - rear media touch screen control.....262
  - satellite radio.....274
    - reception.....277
    - subscription.....277
  - settings.....263
  - sound settings.....263
  - touch screen
    - care.....255
    - extra features.....256
    - home menu.....248
    - my home screen.....253
    - operating.....254
- Instrument panel.....73, 392
  - fuel range.....78
  - head up display.....79
  - hybrid vehicles.....74
  - lamp test.....82
  - menu.....75
    - driving features.....75
    - instrument display.....75
    - trip computer.....75
    - vehicle set-up.....75
  - recommended tire pressures.....439
  - service indicator.....78
  - tire pressure check.....438
  - warning lamps.....82
  - warning messages.....76
- Instrument panel menu
  - navigation information.....347
- Intelligent emergency braking.....225
- Intelligent seat cargo mode.....38
- Intelligent stop/start.....173
  - activating.....173
  - deactivating.....174
- Intelligent stop/start inhibit lamp.....89
- Intelligent stop/start warning lamp.....87, 90
- Interior cleaning.....390
  - air bag covers.....392
  - carpets and mats.....392
- Interior lamps.....96
  - bulb changing.....385
  - intensity.....97
  - interior mood lighting.....97
  - stealth mode.....97
  - types.....96
- Interior locking.....24
- Internet
  - homepage.....361
- Internet browsing
  - InControl hotspot.....359



## Index

- J**  
 Jump starting  
   connecting a starting aid.....408  
   connecting jump leads.....405
- K**  
 Keyless entry.....14  
 Keyless locking.....23  
 Keyless start backup.....170  
 Key transmitters.....16  
 Kick gesture tailgate opening.....19
- L**  
 Label locations.....466  
 Lamps.....91  
   bulb changing.....385  
   condensation.....95  
   test.....82  
   TPMS warning lamp.....87  
   warning lamps.....82  
 Lane departure warning.....239  
 Lane departure warning lamp (green)...88  
 Lane departure warning lamp (red)....84  
 Lane drifting.....240  
 Lane keep assist.....217  
 Laser  
   lighting.....95  
 LATCH Installation.....60  
 LDW performance.....239  
 Leather cleaning.....391  
 Licensing  
   audio/video.....266  
 Lighting  
   interior lamps intensity.....97  
   interior lamps locations.....96  
   interior mood lighting.....97  
   stealth mode.....97  
 Limiter performance.....204  
   adaptive speed limiter.....206  
 Limiting vehicle speed.....204  
 Limp home mode.....179  
 LKA performance.....240  
 Load carrying  
   luggage divider.....138  
   securing a load.....132  
 Load securing.....136  
 Loadspace cover.....132  
 Loadspace floor  
   deployable.....135  
 Location  
   charging port.....152  
 Locked access height.....184  
 Locking  
   automatic relocking.....26  
   confirmation.....24  
   door locks and handles.....24  
   drive away.....20  
   emergency locking.....26  
   in an emergency.....26  
   keyless.....23  
   mislock.....24  
   single.....23  
   transmitter effects on medical  
   devices.....16  
   with the emergency key.....26  
 Lower touch screen  
   display settings.....259  
 Low fuel warning lamp.....87  
 Low oil pressure warning lamp.....84  
 Low range transmission warning  
 lamp.....89  
 Low traction launch  
   4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....244  
 Lubricants specifications.....469  
 Luggage  
   loadspace area.....132  
 Luggage compartment  
   anchor points.....136  
   divider and rails.....138  
   loadspace cover.....132  
 Luggage compartment hatch.....140  
 Luggage compartment sliding floor...135
- M**  
 Maintenance  
   after off-road driving.....389  
   air conditioning (a/c).....377  
   arduous driving conditions.....379



## Index

- brake fluid level.....400
  - breaking-in.....377
  - bulb changing.....385
  - capacities.....471
  - changing a fuse.....413
  - checking tire pressure after a repair.....447
  - cleaning
    - alloy wheels.....390
    - exterior.....387
    - interior.....390
    - leather.....391
    - seat belts.....391
    - sensors and cameras.....388
    - the engine compartment.....388
    - under body.....388
  - closing the hood.....383
  - daily checks.....378
  - dynamic response fluid level.....402
  - engine compartment fuse box.....414
  - engine coolant level.....398
  - engine oil level.....396
  - fuel system.....385
  - fuse box (passenger compartment).....417
  - jump starting.....408
  - label locations.....466
  - loadspace fuse box.....419
  - lubricants and fluid specifications....469
  - oil top up.....398
  - paintwork repair.....393
  - smart key battery.....21
  - tire repair procedure.....444
  - tire repair system.....441
  - using a starting aid.....408
  - washer fluid level.....401
  - weekly checks.....378
  - Map
    - auto zoom.....343
    - split screen.....343
    - updates.....346
  - Massage
    - front seats.....31
    - Massage seats.....306
  - Media
    - AM/FM radio
      - radio data system.....271
    - DVD player controls.....289
    - HD radio controls.....272
    - portable media
      - connecting a media device.....279
      - importing/ripping media.....285
    - radio controls.....269
    - rear media
      - headphones.....291
      - home screen.....294
    - video media player controls.....286
  - Media controls.....260
    - side panel.....249
  - Memory seats.....30
  - Methanol.....368
  - Minor paintwork repairs.....393
  - Mirrors
    - blind spot assist.....228
    - blind spot assist performance.....228
    - blind spot monitor.....225
    - blind spot monitor performance.....226
    - dip when reversing.....102
    - exterior mirrors.....101
  - Misfuel device active.....376
  - Monitor
    - blind spot.....225
    - clear exit.....25
    - seat, belts.....55
  - Monitoring driver behaviour.....241
  - Mud/ruts.....197
  - MY EV
    - energy flow
      - save: charge.....163
      - save, hold hybrid charge.....163
- ## N
- Navigation
    - address entry.....340
    - adjusting the volume.....344
    - alerts.....345
    - connected navigation.....347

## Index

- edit route.....345
- favorites.....346
- from the rear seats.....343
- fuel finder.....347
- instrument panel view.....347
- main menu
  - places.....341
  - search.....341
- map
  - auto zoom.....343
  - split screen.....343
  - updates.....346
- menu.....339
- operating.....336
- overview.....336
- places.....341
- search.....341
- settings.....344
- side panel.....249
- view options.....345
- News
  - side panel.....249
- O**
- Obstructing an air bag.....67
- Occupant safety
  - child seat tether straps.....62
  - cleaning seat belts.....391
  - seat belt checks.....53
  - seat belt locking.....54
  - seat belt pre-tensioners.....52
  - seat belt reminder warning.....54
  - seat belt safety.....52
  - seat belts warning lamp.....84
  - using seat belts.....49
- Octane rating.....367
- Off-road driving
  - auto program.....196
  - cleaning after.....389
  - comfort program.....197
  - dynamic program.....199
  - grass gravel snow.....197
  - mud/ruts.....197
  - override options.....199
  - recovery.....463
  - rock crawl.....198
  - sand program.....197
  - system difficulties.....199
- Off-road height.....181
- Off-road information
  - 4x4i.....243
- Oil
  - engine oil specification.....398
  - poisonous fluids.....382
  - top up.....398
  - used engine oil.....382
- Opening the hood.....383
- Operation
  - adaptive cruise control.....211
- Oversteer.....192
- Over the air
  - software updates.....365
- Overview
  - head restraints.....40
  - hybrid vehicle system.....165
  - InControl mobile technology.....350
  - indicator lamps.....80
  - preconditioning.....158
  - timed charging.....155
  - warning lamps.....80
- Owner maintenance.....378
- P**
- Paintwork
  - repair.....393
- Pairing
  - via the phone.....328
- Panoramic
  - reset.....386
- Panoramic roof
  - windows.....386
- Panoramic roof blind
  - resetting the roof blind.....386
- Park assist
  - cleaning sensors and cameras.....388
  - limitations.....317
  - options.....311
  - selecting.....313



## Index

- troubleshooting.....318
- using.....314
- warning lamps.....89
- Parking aid
  - limitations.....311
- Parking aids
  - adjusting the volume.....310
  - cleaning sensors and cameras.....388
  - rear camera.....319
  - system fault.....311
- Parking brake.....189
- warning lamp.....83
- Parking features
  - park assist.....311
    - limitations.....317
    - selecting.....313
    - troubleshooting.....318
    - using.....314
  - using.....308
- Particle filter.....379
- Particulate filter.....83, 86, 88
- Parts.....381
- Passenger compartment fuse box.....417
- Passengers air bag
  - front.....68
- Passenger seat away
  - control from rear.....35
- Passive entry.....14
- Pedestrian audible alert.....166
- Performance
  - adaptive cruise control.....212
  - adaptive speed limiter.....206
  - blind spot monitor.....226
  - closing vehicle sensing.....227
  - cruise control.....208
  - driver condition monitor.....241
  - follow mode.....215
  - lane departure warning.....239
  - lane keep assist.....240
  - speed limiter.....204
  - steering assist.....218
  - traffic sign recognition.....242
- PHEV charging.....151
- PHEV preferred charging time.....156
- PHEV timed charging.....156
- PHEV timed charging overview.....155
- Phone
  - Bluetooth compatibility.....328
  - call volume.....331
  - compatibility list.....328
  - contacts.....331
  - icons.....330
  - InControl.....350
  - managing two calls.....329
  - merge calls.....320
  - microphone volume.....331
  - overview.....324
  - pairing via the phone.....328
  - receiving text messages.....333
  - side panel.....249
  - steering wheel controls.....330
- Phone app
  - comfort controller.....307
- Phone safety.....327
- Port
  - charging indicators.....153
  - charging location.....152
- Portable media
  - Bluetooth wireless technology.....335
  - changing device.....285
  - connecting a media device.....279
  - connecting multiple devices.....284
  - connections.....278
  - controls.....281
  - importing/ripping media.....285
  - pairing.....284
  - playing.....283
- Powered tailgate.....16
  - opening height.....18
  - resetting the memory.....18
- Power sockets.....126
- Preconditioning
  - departure times.....158
  - overview.....158
  - safety.....158
  - timed charging.....158

## Index

- timed climate.....158
- Predictive energy optimisation
  - mY EV.....163
- Pregnancy
  - using seat belts.....51
- Pressure checking (tires)
  - checking after a repair.....447
- Pressure compensation
  - ambient temperature changes.....429
- Progress control warning lamp.....85
- Proposition 65 second warning.....404
- Puncture repair system.....441
  - instructions for use.....443
  - repair procedure.....444
  - safety.....442
- Push button start backup.....170
- Q**
- Queue assist
  - adaptive cruise control.....216
  - stop and go.....216
- R**
- Radio
  - satellite radio controls.....274
  - satellite radio reception.....277
- Radio frequency ID (RFID).....111
- Radio frequency regulations.....476
- Radio frequency statement
  - bSM.....226
- Radio reception
  - satellite radio.....277
- Rain sensor.....99
- Rattle
  - seat belts.....51
- Rear camera
  - hitch assist.....144
- Rear fog lamps warning lamp.....87
- Rear height adjust (air suspension).....185
- Rear media
  - headphones.....291
  - home screen.....294
  - remote control
    - batteries.....294
- remote control use.....293
- screens overview.....295
- touch screen control.....262
- Rear seat entertainment
  - headphones.....291
  - home screen.....294
  - remote control.....293
  - remote control batteries.....294
- Rear seat hatch.....140
- Rear seat recline.....34
- Rear seats
  - executive class.....33
  - massage seats.....35
  - remote seats.....38
  - folding.....38
  - folding and raising.....36
  - manual adjustment.....32
  - passenger seat away.....35
  - position memory.....34
  - restricted travel.....39
- Rear seat screens
  - home menu.....294
  - navigation.....343
  - overview.....295
  - rear climate.....300
- Rear towing eye.....459
- Rear window blind.....107
- Receiving text messages
  - phone.....333
- Recommended tire pressures.....439
- Recording
  - event data.....465
  - service data.....465
- Recovery
  - off-road.....463
  - towing on four wheels.....463–464
  - transporting.....463
- Red exhaust fluid warning lamp.....83
- Reformulated gasoline.....372
- Refueling
  - diesel.....368
  - diesel fuel sulfur content.....369
  - ethanol.....368



## Index

- fuel filler flap.....374
  - fuels.....367
  - methanol.....368
  - MTBE.....368
  - octane rating.....367
  - reformulated gasoline.....372
  - running out of fuel.....372
  - safety precautions.....367
  - unlocking the fuel filler flap.....374
  - Regulation statement
    - bSM.....226
  - Release
    - charging cable emergency.....157
  - Remaining charge time
    - warning lamps.....90
  - Reminder (seat belt).....54
  - Remote control
    - batteries.....294
    - care.....21
    - rear media.....293
    - single locking.....23
    - smart key battery.....21
    - system transmitters.....476
  - Removal
    - front head restraint.....42
  - Removing a rear head restraint.....42
  - Removing the spare wheel.....450
  - Removing the vehicle battery.....408
  - Repairing paintwork damage.....393
  - Replacement tires.....428
  - Reporting safety defects.....8
  - Resetting the windows.....386
  - Restarting the engine while moving...170
  - Restraint safety information.....58
  - Restricted front seat travel.....29
  - Restricted seat travel
    - obstructions.....39
  - Reverse gear
    - rear camera selection.....319
  - Reverse parking aids
    - adjusting the volume.....310
    - parking aid system fault.....311
    - using.....308
  - Reverse trailer.....144
  - Reversing
    - parking aid limitations.....311
  - Road sign recognition.....241
  - Rock crawl.....198
  - Rolling restart.....170
  - Rolling roads.....381
  - Roof blind
    - operation.....110
  - Running-in.....377
  - Running out of fuel.....372
- ## S
- ### Safety
- adaptive cruise control.....209
  - AEB.....221
  - child safety locks.....56
  - cleaning seat belts.....391
  - collision avoidance.....220
  - cruise control.....207
  - driving aids.....238
  - fuel and refueling.....367
  - preconditioning.....158
  - seat belt checks.....53
  - seat belt locking mechanism.....54
  - seat belt pre-tensioners.....52
  - seat belt reminder warning.....54
  - seat belts.....52
  - seat belts warning lamp.....84
  - seats for larger children.....60
  - sitting correctly.....29
  - speed limiter.....203
  - starting.....169
  - tire care.....423
  - tire degradation.....429
  - tire load limit.....435
  - tire pressures.....425
  - tire temperature.....434
  - tire tread wear.....433
  - traction devices.....431
  - used engine oil.....382
  - use seat belts during pregnancy.....51
  - using seat belts.....49
  - using the phone.....327

## Index

- winter tires.....429
- Safety camera alert
  - adjusting the volume.....344
- Safety defect reporting.....8
- Safety in the garage.....382
- Sand program.....197
- Satellite navigation
  - address entry.....340
  - alerts.....345
  - connected navigation.....347
  - edit route.....345
  - favorites.....346
  - fuel finder.....347
  - instrument panel view.....347
  - map
    - auto zoom.....343
    - split screen.....343
    - updates.....346
  - menu.....339
  - operating.....336
  - overview.....336
  - places.....341
  - search.....341
  - settings.....344
  - view options.....345
- Satellite radio
  - controls.....274
  - reception.....277
  - subscription.....277
- SAVE
  - hold hybrid charge, MY EV.....163
- Screen wash
  - check.....401
  - topping up.....402
- Seat
  - monitor, belts.....55
- Seat belts.....49, 391
  - adjusting.....49
  - checks.....53
  - locking mechanism.....54
  - pre-tensioners.....52
  - reminder warning.....54
  - safety.....52
  - use during pregnancy.....51
  - warning lamp.....84
- Seats
  - child restraint check list.....59
  - child seat positioning.....58
  - child seats.....56
  - child seat tether straps.....62
  - cleaning seat belts.....391
  - climate seats.....306
  - comfort and adjustment.....302
  - electric front.....28
  - executive class rear.....33
    - massage seats.....35
    - remote seats.....38
  - folding armrest.....30
  - front head restraints.....40
  - front massage.....31
  - heated.....305
  - LATCH installation.....60
  - position memory.....30
  - rear control of front passenger seat.....35
  - rear head restraints.....41
  - rear seat adjustments.....32
  - rear seat folding.....38
  - rear seat folding and raising.....36
  - rear seat position memory.....34
  - rear seat restricted movement.....39
  - rear seat screens overview.....295
  - reclining rear seats.....32
  - remote seats
    - settings.....307
  - removing a rear head restraint.....42
  - restricted front seat travel.....29
  - seat belts warning lamp.....84
  - seat massage.....306
  - sitting correctly.....29
- Securing luggage.....132, 136
- Security
  - alarm.....380
  - automatic relocking and arming.....26
  - battery back-up sounder.....26
  - closing mislock.....24
  - deactivating the alarm.....26



## Index

- lock confirmation.....24
- locking with the emergency key.....26
- single locking.....23
- Sensing
  - clear exit detection.....25
- Sensitivity
  - forward alert.....221
- Sequential shift.....176
- Service interval indicator.....78
- Service position
  - wipers service position.....385
- Servicing
  - air bags.....71
  - data recording.....465
- Settings
  - customisable.....259
  - general.....258
  - guidance
    - navigation system.....344
  - system.....258
  - timed charging.....160
  - timed climate.....160
  - vehicle preconditioning.....160
  - web browser.....362
- Settings menu.....75
- Setting the heating and ventilation.....298
- Side lamps warning lamp.....89
- Sidewall information (tires).....422
- Side window blinds.....110
- Sign recognition.....241
- Silencing the alarm.....26
- Sim card
  - connecting.....363
- Sitting correctly.....29
- Sliding loadspace floor.....135
- Smart key
  - battery changing.....21
  - care.....21
  - single locking.....23
  - transmitters.....476
- Smartphone
  - InControl.....350
  - InControl app.....355
- Snow chains.....431
- Socket
  - auxiliary power.....46
- Software
  - updates.....365
- Solar attenuating glass.....111
- Sound settings.....263
- Spare wheel.....450
  - using wheel chocks.....452
- Specifications
  - capacities.....471
  - dimensions.....474
  - engine.....469
  - ethanol.....368
  - fluids.....469
  - fuel tank capacity.....376
  - label locations.....466
  - lubricants.....469
  - methanol.....368
  - MTBE.....368
  - updates.....469
  - weight.....472
- Speed-dependent wipers.....100
- Speed limiter
  - adaptive speed limiter.....205
  - automatic speed limiter.....203
  - intelligent speed limiter.....203
  - overview.....203
- Speedometer.....73
- Speed ratings for tires.....423
- Split screen map.....343
- SRS
  - air bag warning lamp.....84
- Stability control
  - active differential.....194
  - DSC.....192
    - switching on.....193
    - switching off.....192
- Starting after a collision.....465
- Starting the engine.....169, 173
  - engine pre-heater.....172
  - failure to start.....171
  - push button start backup.....170



## Index

- Status icons
  - touch screen.....253
- Stealth mode.....97
- Steering column lock.....48
- Steering correction.....240
- Steering wheel
  - adjusting.....47
  - AUTO position.....47
  - heated.....48
- Steering wheel air bag.....68
- Stop/start
  - activating.....173
  - deactivating.....174
- Stopping the engine.....173
- Storage
  - rear centre console.....124
  - seat belts.....51
- Storage compartments.....112
  - cup holders.....112
  - front cubby box.....112
  - rear armrest.....112
- Storage compartments areas
  - glove box.....112
- Subscription
  - satellite radio.....277
- Sun blind.....107, 109
- Sun blinds
  - side windows.....110
- Sunroof
  - anti-trap protection.....110
- Sun roof
  - gesture roof blind.....109
- Supplementary restraint system (SRS)
  - air bag deployment.....68
  - air bag locations.....65
  - air bags maintenance.....380
  - air bag warning lamp.....69, 84
  - curtain air bags.....68
  - obstructing an air bag.....67
  - occupant sensing.....70
  - side air bags.....68
- Surround camera.....144–145
  - forward vehicle guidance.....323
- Surround cameras.....320
  - touch screen menu.....320
- Suspension.....180
  - access height.....182
  - adaptive dynamics.....186
  - electronic air suspension.....180
  - extended mode.....182
  - height adjustment.....180
  - locked access height.....184
  - off-road height.....181
  - rear height adjust.....185
  - safety override lowering height.....187
- Switch cleaning.....390
- Switching off the engine.....169
- Switching on the ignition.....170
- T**
  - Tachometer.....73
  - Tailgate
    - gesture.....19
    - opening and closing.....16
    - powered opening height.....18
    - resetting the powered tailgate
      - memory.....18
  - Tailgate hands free opening.....19
  - Technical specifications
    - capacities.....471
    - dimensions.....474
    - engine.....469
    - radio frequency regulations.....476
    - updates.....469
    - weights.....472
  - Telephone
    - Bluetooth compatibility.....328
    - Bluetooth wireless technology.....335
    - call volume.....331
    - contacts.....331
    - icons.....330
    - managing two calls.....329
    - merge calls.....330
    - microphone volume.....331
    - overview.....324
    - pairing
      - via the phone.....328



## Index

- steering wheel controls.....330
- Telephone safety.....327
- Temperature
  - differentiation, climate.....307
- Terrain response.....195
- Terrain response information
  - 4x4i.....243
- Time and date
  - general settings.....258
- Timed charging (blue)
  - warning lamps.....89
- Tinted front screen.....111
- Tire grading system.....432
- Tire pressure checking after a repair...447
- Tire pressure compensation.....429
- Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....437
  - full size replacements.....439
  - type approval information.....440
  - valves.....427
  - warning lamp.....87
- Tire pressures.....439
- Tire repair system
  - checking pressures.....447
  - repair procedure.....444
  - safety information.....442
  - using.....443
- Tires
  - age degradation.....429
  - care.....423
  - changing.....440
  - degradation.....429
  - flat spots.....429
  - full size replacements.....439
  - glossary of terms.....434
  - grading system.....432
  - important information.....452
  - information label.....424
  - load limit.....435
  - pressure check.....438
  - pressure compensation.....429
  - pressures.....425
  - recommended tire pressure
    - look-up.....439
    - repair procedure.....444
    - repair system.....441
    - repair system use.....443
    - replacements.....428
    - replacing.....428
    - speed ratings.....423
    - temperature resistance.....434
    - temporary use spare.....440
  - tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....437
    - warning lamp.....87
  - tire repair safety.....442
  - traction devices.....431
  - tread wear.....433
  - ultra high performance
    - specification.....431
  - uniform tire quality grading.....433
  - use of spare tire.....452
  - valves.....427
  - vehicle loading.....439
  - winter tires.....429
- Toll road payment.....111
- Tool kit.....449
- Topping up fluids
  - filler locations.....394
- Touch pro navigation profile.....356
- Touch screen.....392
  - changing portable media device.....285
  - connecting multiple portable media devices.....284
  - customisable settings.....259
  - display settings.....258
  - eco-data.....197
  - editing screens.....254
  - editing shortcuts.....254
  - editing widgets.....254
  - extra features.....256
  - fuel economy facts.....197
  - general settings.....258
  - heated seats.....305
  - home menu.....248

## Index

- inhibited display.....288
- lower home menu.....251
- massage seats.....306
- my home screen.....253
- operating.....254
- portable media
  - controls.....281
- portable media connections.....278
- portable media pairing.....284
- portable media playing.....283
- seat settings.....307
- side panel.....249
- status icons.....253
- surround cameras.....320
- system settings.....258
- touch screen care.....255
- valet mode.....256
  - deselecting.....257
- video player controls.....286
- Tow hitch receiver
  - towing.....143
- Towing
  - a trailer.....149
  - calculating weight.....149
  - checks
    - breakaway cable.....149
    - lights.....149
    - nose weight limit.....149
    - tow ball.....149
  - essential checks.....149
  - hitch assist.....144
  - on four wheels.....463
  - stability assist.....143
  - tow assist.....144–145
  - tow hitch.....143
  - tow hitch receiver.....143
  - trailer electrical connections.....147
  - trailer sway.....143
  - weights.....142
- Towing eyes
  - front.....458
  - rear.....459
- Traction control
  - switching off.....192
  - switching on.....193
- Traction devices.....431
- Traffic detection
  - forward.....228
  - reverse.....230
- Traffic sign recognition.....241
- Trailer
  - electrical connections.....147
  - sway.....143
  - towing weights.....142
- Trailer rear view.....144–145
- Trailer reverse.....145
- Trailer turn signals green warning lamp.....89
- Transfer case
  - high and low range.....178
- Transmission
  - automatic.....176
  - gear shift warning lamp.....88
  - limp home mode.....179
- Transmitters
  - smart key.....476
- Transporting the vehicle.....463
- Tread wear.....433
- Trip computer.....77
  - fuel range.....78
- TSR performance.....242
- Turning adaptive cruise control follow mode off.....90
- Turn signals.....95
  - warning lamp.....89
- Type approval
  - adaptive cruise control.....218
- Type approvals.....332
- U**
  - Ultra high performance (UHP) tires.....431
  - Under body cleaning.....388
  - Under hood covers.....384
  - Understeer.....192
  - Uniform tire quality grading.....433
  - Unlocking.....24



## Index

- activity key.....14
- all doors.....11
- driver's door.....11
- entry and exit mode.....47
- fuel filler flap.....374
- global opening.....11, 15
- mode.....11
- multi point entry.....11, 13
- opening the tailgate.....16
- passive entry.....14
- single point entry.....11, 13
- steering column.....48
- transmitter effects on medical devices.....16
- Updates
  - software.....365
  - specifications.....469
- USB devices
  - connecting multiple devices.....284
- Used engine oil.....382
- Using cruise control.....207
- Using the spare tire
  - important information.....452
- Using wheel chocks.....452
- V**
- Valet mode.....256
  - deselecting.....257
- Vehicle alarm.....380
- Vehicle battery
  - battery monitoring system.....409
  - connecting jump leads.....405
  - effects of disconnection.....409
  - removing.....408
  - replacing.....408
  - warning symbols.....404
- Vehicle battery care.....404
- Vehicle cleaning
  - after driving off-road.....389
  - air bag covers.....392
  - alloy wheels.....390
  - carpets and mats.....392
  - engine compartment.....388
  - interior.....390
  - under body.....388
  - washer jets.....393
- Vehicle data recording.....465
- Vehicle dimensions.....244
- Vehicle guidance.....323
- Vehicle loading tire pressures.....439
- Vehicle preconditioning
  - overview.....158
  - safety.....158
- Vehicle recovery
  - front towing eye.....458
  - off-road.....463
  - rear towing eye.....459
  - towing on four wheels.....463–464
  - transporting the vehicle.....463
- Vehicle stability.....7
- Vehicle storage.....378
- Vehicle testing on rolling roads.....381
- Video media player
  - controls.....286
  - full screen view.....288
  - inhibited display.....288
  - rear media touch screen control.....262
- VIN number.....466
- Voice control.....348
  - settings
    - command list.....349
    - operating guide.....349
    - preferences.....349
    - voicetags.....349
    - voice training.....349
  - tutorial.....349
  - voicetags.....349
- W**
- Wade sensing
  - 4x4i 4 wheel drive information.....245
- Warning lamp
  - AdBlue.....83, 86
- Warning lamps.....80, 82, 87–88
  - ABS.....85
  - adaptive cruise control follow mode.....87, 90

## Index

- adaptive cruise control with steering assist active.....88
- adaptive cruise control with steering assist not active.....89
- air bags.....69, 84
- automatic speed limiter.....84–85
- battery charge.....82
- brake.....83, 85
- charging status.....83, 85, 87, 90
- check engine.....85
- critical warning message.....83
- cruise control.....88
- diesel glow plugs.....87
- dipped beam.....88
- driver condition monitor.....86, 90
- DSC active.....86
- engine temperature.....84
- external temperature.....86
- gear shift warning lamp.....88
- HDC.....88
- headlamp high beam.....89
- high beam assist.....87
- intelligent stop/start (green).....87
- intelligent stop/start (white).....89–90
- lamp test.....82
- lane departure (green).....88
- lane departure (red).....84
- low fuel.....87
- low oil pressure.....84
- low range selected.....89
- park assist.....89
- parking brake.....83
- progress control system.....85
- rear fog lamps.....87
- remaining charge time.....90
- seat belt.....84
- side lights.....89
- timed charging (blue).....89
- tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....87
- trailer turn signals.....89
- turn signals.....89
- Warning messages.....76
- hybrid vehicles.....168
- Warnings
  - adaptive cruise control.....209
  - driving aids.....238
  - head restraints.....40
  - speed limiter.....203
- Washer jets.....393
- Washers.....98
  - fluid specification.....402
  - fluid top up.....402
  - headlamps.....100
  - headlight.....100
- Water in fuel.....373
- Weather
  - side panel.....249
- Web browser
  - homepage.....361
  - settings.....362
- Web browsing
  - InControl hotspot.....359
- Weights
  - gross vehicle weights.....472
  - roof load.....472
  - roof rack weight.....472
  - tow ball/hitch.....142
  - towing.....142
  - vehicle weights.....472
- Wheel changing
  - important information.....452
  - recommended process.....453
  - safety warnings.....448
  - spare wheel.....450
  - temporary spare wheel.....452
  - tilt sensor.....453
  - tool kit.....449
  - use of spare tire.....452
- Wheel chocks use.....452
- Wheels and tires
  - age degradation.....429
  - changing a tire.....440
  - checking the pressures after a repair.....447
  - flat spots.....429



## Index

- full size replacements.....439
- load limit.....435
- puncture repair.....441
- puncture repair safety.....442
- repair procedure.....444
- repair system.....441
- repair system use.....443
- replacements.....428
- temporary use spare.....440
- tire care.....423
- tire degradation.....429
- tire glossary of terms.....434
- tire grading system.....432
- tire markings.....422
- tire pressure compensation.....429
- tire pressure label.....424
- tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....437
- tire pressures.....425
- tire speed ratings.....423
- tire temperature.....434
- tire tread wear.....433
- TPMS warning lamp.....87
- traction devices.....431
- ultra high performance tires.....431
- uniform tire quality grading.....433
- valves.....427
- winter tires.....429
- Wheel spin.....192
- White auto stop/start lamp.....89
- Wi-Fi
  - InControl hotspot.....359
- Wi-Fi connection icons.....365
- Windows
  - anti-trap protection.....110
  - gesture roof blind.....109
  - operation.....107
  - panoramic roof.....386
  - reset.....386
  - resetting the roof blind.....386
  - side window blinds.....110
  - solar attenuating.....111
- Wings
  - head restraints.....41
- Winter tires.....429
- Wipers.....98
  - service position.....385
- Wipers and washers.....98
  - fluid level.....401
  - rain sensor.....99
  - speed-dependent mode.....100
  - winter park position.....100
- Wireless technology
  - Bluetooth.....335